

Springer Complexity

Springer Complexity is an interdisciplinary program publishing the best research and academic-level teaching on both fundamental and applied aspects of complex systems – cutting across all traditional disciplines of the natural and life sciences, engineering, economics, medicine, neuroscience, social and computer science.

Complex Systems are systems that comprise many interacting parts with the ability to generate a new quality of macroscopic collective behavior the manifestations of which are the spontaneous formation of distinctive temporal, spatial or functional structures. Models of such systems can be successfully mapped onto quite diverse “real-life” situations like the climate, the coherent emission of light from lasers, chemical reaction-diffusion systems, biological cellular networks, the dynamics of stock markets and of the internet, earthquake statistics and prediction, freeway traffic, the human brain, or the formation of opinions in social systems, to name just some of the popular applications.

Although their scope and methodologies overlap somewhat, one can distinguish the following main concepts and tools: self-organization, nonlinear dynamics, synergetics, turbulence, dynamical systems, catastrophes, instabilities, stochastic processes, chaos, graphs and networks, cellular automata, adaptive systems, genetic algorithms and computational intelligence.

The two major book publication platforms of the Springer Complexity program are the monograph series “Understanding Complex Systems” focusing on the various applications of complexity, and the “Springer Series in Synergetics”, which is devoted to the quantitative theoretical and methodological foundations. In addition to the books in these two core series, the program also incorporates individual titles ranging from textbooks to major reference works.

Editorial and Programme Advisory Board

Péter Érdi

Center for Complex Systems Studies, Kalamazoo College, USA,
and Hungarian Academy of Sciences, Budapest, Hungary

Karl J. Friston

Institute of Cognitive Neuroscience, University College London, London, UK

Hermann Haken

Center of Synergetics, University of Stuttgart, Stuttgart, Germany

Janusz Kacprzyk

System Research, Polish Academy of Sciences, Warsaw, Poland

Scott Kelso

Center for Complex Systems and Brain Sciences,
Florida Atlantic University, Boca Raton, USA

Jürgen Kurths

Nonlinear Dynamics Group, University of Potsdam,
Potsdam, Germany

Linda E. Reichl

Center for Complex Quantum Systems, University of Texas, Austin, USA

Peter Schuster

Theoretical Chemistry and Structural Biology, University of Vienna,
Vienna, Austria

Frank Schweitzer

Systems Design, ETH Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

Didier Sornette

Entrepreneurial Risk, ETH Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

Springer Series in Synergetics

Founding Editor: H. Haken

The Springer Series in Synergetics was founded by Herman Haken in 1977. Since then, the series has evolved into a substantial reference library for the quantitative, theoretical and methodological foundations of the science of complex systems.

Through many enduring classic texts, such as Haken's *Synergetics and Information and Self-Organization*, Gardiner's *Handbook of Stochastic Methods*, Risken's *The Fokker Planck-Equation* or Haake's *Quantum Signatures of Chaos*, the series has made, and continues to make, important contributions to shaping the foundations of the field.

The series publishes monographs and graduate-level textbooks of broad and general interest, with a pronounced emphasis on the physico-mathematical approach.

Hermann Haken

Brain Dynamics

An Introduction to Models and Simulations

Second Edition

 Springer

Professor Dr. Dr. h.c. mult. Hermann Haken

Universität Stuttgart
Zentrum Synergetik
Institut für theoretische Physik
Pfaffenwaldring 57/4
70569 Stuttgart, Germany

ISBN 978-3-540-75236-3

e-ISBN 978-3-540-75238-7

DOI 10.1007/978-3-540-75238-7

Library of Congress Control Number: 2007935993

© 2002, 2008 Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilm or in any other way, and storage in data banks. Duplication of this publication or parts thereof is permitted only under the provisions of the German Copyright Law of September 9, 1965, in its current version, and permission for use must always be obtained from Springer. Violations are liable to prosecution under the German Copyright Law.

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.

Typesetting and Production: LE-TeX Jelonek, Schmidt & Vöckler GbR, Leipzig, Germany
Cover design: WMX Design GmbH, Heidelberg, Germany

Printed on acid-free paper

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

springer.com

Foreword to the Second Edition

The great interest and favorable response this book has found among students, professors and other scientists working in a variety of disciplines related to brain dynamics has made a second edition necessary.

I use this opportunity to include some recent developments. In particular, I want to elucidate the relationship between synchronization of nerve pulses and pattern recognition, which is a fundamental question in brain research. To this end, I devote two additional chapters (now numbered 9 and 10) to a generalization of the model that I treated in the first edition. This new model is remarkable as it is nearly exactly tractable, while it captures essential features of a realistic neural network. It allows us to treat synchronization and pattern recognition on the same footing, and, incidentally, sheds new light on the relationship between these two phenomena. Both the old and the new chapters contain exercises that allow the reader to deepen his/her understanding. Also solutions are presented to all exercises.

I made some further improvements. In particular, following H. Wilson, I present a more detailed derivation of the famous Hodgkin–Huxley equations and their remarkable simplification.

It goes without saying that a number of minor misprints were corrected.

The first draft of the newly added chapters was typed by my former secretary Petra Mayer. The final considerably extended version of these chapters as well as the newly added exercises and their solutions were typed by my new secretary Ingeborg Maute. Both of them performed the miracle of combining great speed with utmost accuracy. I thank both of them for their tireless help.

I thank Christian Caron and Gabriele Hakuba of Springer-Verlag for their traditionally excellent cooperation.

Stuttgart, July 2007

Hermann Haken

Preface

Research on the human brain has become a truly interdisciplinary enterprise that no longer belongs to medicine, neurobiology and related fields alone. In fact, in our attempts to understand the functioning of the human brain, more and more concepts from physics, mathematics, computer science, mathematical biology and related fields are used. This list is by no means complete, but it reflects the aim of the present book. It will show how concepts and mathematical tools of these fields allow us to treat important aspects of the behavior of large networks of the building blocks of the brain, the neurons.

This book applies to graduate students, professors and researchers in the above-mentioned fields, whereby I aimed throughout at a pedagogical style. A basic knowledge of calculus should be sufficient. In view of the various backgrounds of the readers of my book, I wrote several introductory chapters. For those who have little or no knowledge of the basic facts of neurons that will be needed later I included two chapters. Readers from the field of neuroscience, but also from other disciplines, will find the chapter on mathematical concepts and tricks useful. It shows how to describe spiking neurons and contains material that cannot easily be found in conventional textbooks, e.g. on the handling of δ -functions. Noise in physical systems – and thus also in the brain – is inevitable. This is true for systems in thermal equilibrium, but still more so in active systems – and neuronal systems are indeed highly active. Therefore, I deal with the origin and effects of noise in such systems.

After these preparations, I will deal with large neural networks. A central issue is the spontaneous synchronization of the spiking of neurons. At least some authors consider it as a basic mechanism for the binding problem, where various features of a scene, that may even be processed in different parts of the brain, are composed to a unique perception. While this idea is not generally accepted, the problem of understanding the behavior of large nets, especially with respect to synchronization, is nevertheless a fundamental problem of contemporary research. For instance, synchronization among neurons seems to play a fundamental role in epileptic seizures and Parkinson's disease. Therefore, the main part of my book will be devoted to the synchronization problem and will expose various kinds of integrate and fire models as well as what I called the lighthouse model. My approach seems to be more

realistic than conventional neural net models in that it takes into account the detailed dynamics of axons, synapses and dendrites, whereby I consider arbitrary couplings between neurons, delays and the effect of noise. Experts will notice that this approach goes considerably beyond those that have been published so far in the literature.

I will treat different kinds of synaptic (dendritic) responses, determine the synchronized (phase-locked) state for all models and the limits of its stability. The role of non-synchronized states in associative memory will also be elucidated. To draw a more complete picture of present-day approaches to phase-locking and synchronization, I present also other phase-locking mechanisms and their relation, for instance, to movement coordination. When we average our basic neural equations over pulses, we reobtain the by now well-known Wilson–Cowan equations for axonal spike rates as well as the coupled equations for dendritic currents and axonal rates as derived by Nunez and extended by Jirsa and Haken. For the sake of completeness, I include a brief chapter on the equations describing a single neuron, i.e. on the Hodgkin–Huxley equations and generalizations thereof.

I had the opportunity of presenting my results in numerous plenary talks or lectures at international conferences and summer schools and could profit from the discussions. My thanks go, in particular, to Fanji Gu, Y. Kuramoto, H. Liljenström, P. McClintock, S. Nara, X.L. Qi, M. Robnik, H. Saito, I. Tsuda, M. Tsukada, and Yunjiu Wang. I hope that the readers of my book will find it enjoyable and useful as did the audience of my lectures. My book may be considered complementary to my former book on “Principles of Brain Functioning”. Whereas in that book the global aspects of brain functioning are elaborated using the interdisciplinary approach of synergetics, the present one starts from the neuronal level and studies modern and important aspects of neural networks. The other end is covered by Hugh R. Wilson’s book on “Spikes, Decisions and Actions” that deals with the single neuron and the action of a few of them. While his book provides readers from neuroscience with an excellent introduction to the mathematics of nonlinear dynamics, my earlier book “Synergetics. An Introduction” serves a similar purpose for mathematicians and physicists.

The tireless help of my secretary Ms. I. Möller has been pivotal for me in bringing this book to a good end. When typing the text and composing the formulas she – once again – performed the miracle of combining great speed with utmost accuracy. Most of the figures were drawn by Ms. Karin Hahn. Many thanks to her for her perfect work.

Last but not least I thank the team at Springer-Verlag for their traditionally excellent cooperation, in particular Prof. W. Beiglböck, Ms. S. Lehr and Ms. B. Reichel-Mayer.

Contents

Part I. Basic Experimental Facts and Theoretical Tools

1. Introduction	3
1.1 Goal	3
1.2 Brain: Structure and Functioning. A Brief Reminder	4
1.3 Network Models	5
1.4 How We Will Proceed	7
2. The Neuron – Building Block of the Brain	9
2.1 Structure and Basic Functions	9
2.2 Information Transmission in an Axon	10
2.3 Neural Code	12
2.4 Synapses – The Local Contacts	13
2.5 Naka–Rushton Relation	14
2.6 Learning and Memory	16
2.7 The Role of Dendrites	16
3. Neuronal Cooperativity	17
3.1 Structural Organization	17
3.2 Global Functional Studies. Location of Activity Centers	23
3.3 Interlude: A Minicourse on Correlations	25
3.4 Mesoscopic Neuronal Cooperativity	31
4. Spikes, Phases, Noise: How to Describe Them Mathematically?	
We Learn a Few Tricks and Some Important Concepts	37
4.1 The δ -Function and Its Properties	37
4.2 Perturbed Step Functions	43
4.3 Some More Technical Considerations*	46
4.4 Kicks	48
4.5 Many Kicks	51
4.6 Random Kicks or a Look at Soccer Games	52
4.7 Noise Is Inevitable. Brownian Motion and the Langevin Equation	54

4.8	Noise in Active Systems	56
4.8.1	Introductory Remarks	56
4.8.2	Two-State Systems	57
4.8.3	Many Two-State Systems: Many Ion Channels	58
4.9	The Concept of Phase	60
4.9.1	Some Elementary Considerations	60
4.9.2	Regular Spike Trains	63
4.9.3	How to Determine Phases From Experimental Data? Hilbert Transform	64
4.10	Phase Noise	68
4.11	Origin of Phase Noise*	71

Part II. Spiking in Neural Nets

5.	The Lighthouse Model. Two Coupled Neurons	77
5.1	Formulation of the Model	77
5.2	Basic Equations for the Phases of Two Coupled Neurons	80
5.3	Two Neurons: Solution of the Phase-Locked State	82
5.4	Frequency Pulling and Mutual Activation of Two Neurons	86
5.5	Stability Equations	89
5.6	Phase Relaxation and the Impact of Noise	94
5.7	Delay Between Two Neurons	98
5.8	An Alternative Interpretation of the Lighthouse Model	100
6.	The Lighthouse Model. Many Coupled Neurons	103
6.1	The Basic Equations	103
6.2	A Special Case. Equal Sensory Inputs. No Delay	105
6.3	A Further Special Case. Different Sensory Inputs, but No Delay and No Fluctuations	107
6.4	Associative Memory and Pattern Filter	109
6.5	Weak Associative Memory. General Case*	113
6.6	The Phase-Locked State of N Neurons. Two Delay Times	116
6.7	Stability of the Phase-Locked State. Two Delay Times*	118
6.8	Many Different Delay Times*	123
6.9	Phase Waves in a Two-Dimensional Neural Sheet	124
6.10	Stability Limits of Phase-Locked State	125
6.11	Phase Noise*	126
6.12	Strong Coupling Limit. The Nonsteady Phase-Locked State of Many Neurons	130
6.13	Fully Nonlinear Treatment of the Phase-Locked State*	134

7. Integrate and Fire Models (IFM)	141
7.1 The General Equations of IFM	141
7.2 Peskin's Model	143
7.3 A Model with Long Relaxation Times of Synaptic and Dendritic Responses	145
8. Many Neurons, General Case, Connection with Integrate and Fire Model	151
8.1 Introductory Remarks	151
8.2 Basic Equations Including Delay and Noise	151
8.3 Response of Dendritic Currents	153
8.4 The Phase-Locked State	155
8.5 Stability of the Phase-Locked State: Eigenvalue Equations ...	156
8.6 Example of the Solution of an Eigenvalue Equation of the Form of (8.59)	159
8.7 Stability of Phase-Locked State I: The Eigenvalues of the Lighthouse Model with $\gamma' \neq 0$	161
8.8 Stability of Phase-Locked State II: The Eigenvalues of the Integrate and Fire Model	162
8.9 Generalization to Several Delay Times	165
8.10 Time-Dependent Sensory Inputs	166
8.11 Impact of Noise and Delay	167
8.12 Partial Phase Locking	167
8.13 Derivation of Pulse-Averaged Equations	168
Appendix 1 to Chap. 8: Evaluation of (8.35)	173
Appendix 2 to Chap. 8: Fractal Derivatives	177
9. Pattern Recognition Versus Synchronization:	
Pattern Recognition	181
9.1 Introduction	181
9.2 Basic Equations	182
9.3 A Reminder of Pattern Recognition by the Synergetic Com- puter and an Alternative Approach	185
9.4 Properties of the Synergetic Computer of Type II	188
9.5 Limit of Dense Pulses	193
9.6 Pulse Rates Are Positive	198
9.7 Chopped Signals. Quasi-Attractors	200
9.8 Appendix to Sect. 9.5	203

10. Pattern Recognition Versus Synchronization:	
Synchronization and Phase Locking	207
10.1 The Synchronized State	207
10.2 Stability of the Synchronized State	212
10.3 Stability Analysis Continued:	
Solution of the Stability Equations	215
10.4 Generalization to More Complicated Dendritic Responses* . . .	219
10.5 Stability Analysis for the General Case	
of Dendritic Responses*	223
10.6 From Synchronization to Phase Locking	227
10.7 Conclusion to Chaps. 9 and 10:	
Two Pathways to Pattern Recognition	234

Part III. Phase Locking, Coordination and Spatio-Temporal Patterns

11. Phase Locking via Sinusoidal Couplings	239
11.1 Coupling Between Two Neurons	239
11.2 A Chain of Coupled-Phase Oscillators	242
11.3 Coupled Finger Movements	244
11.4 Quadruped Motion	247
11.5 Populations of Neural Phase Oscillators	249
11.5.1 Synchronization Patterns	249
11.5.2 Pulse Stimulation	249
11.5.3 Periodic Stimulation	250
12. Pulse-Averaged Equations	251
12.1 Survey	251
12.2 The Wilson–Cowan Equations	252
12.3 A Simple Example	253
12.4 Cortical Dynamics Described by Wilson–Cowan Equations . . .	258
12.5 Visual Hallucinations	260
12.6 Jirsa–Haken–Nunez Equations	261
12.7 An Application to Movement Control	265
12.7.1 The Kelso Experiment	265
12.7.2 The Sensory-Motor Feedback Loop	267
12.7.3 The Field Equation and Projection onto Modes	268
12.7.4 Some Conclusions	269

Part IV. Conclusion

13. The Single Neuron	273
13.1 Hodgkin–Huxley Equations	273
13.2 FitzHugh–Nagumo Equations	276
13.3 Some Generalizations of the Hodgkin–Huxley Equations	280
13.4 Dynamical Classes of Neurons	281
13.5 Some Conclusions on Network Models	282
14. Conclusion and Outlook	283
15. Solutions to Exercises	287
References	317
Index	329

1. Introduction

1.1 Goal

The human brain is the most complex system we know of. It consists of about 100 billion neurons that interact in a highly complicated fashion with each other. In my book I will conceive the brain as a physical system and study the behavior of large neural nets. Neurons are nonlinear elements. Most of them are able to produce trains of individual spikes, by which information between the neurons is exchanged. In addition, it is by now generally believed that correlations between spike trains play an important role in brain activity. One particular experimentally observed phenomenon is that of synchronization between the “firing” of neurons, where Fig. 1.1 shows an idealized case. A number of authors (see references) believe that synchronization is a fundamental mechanism that allows us to understand how the brain solves the binding problem. For instance, a lemon may be characterized by its shape, colour, smell, its name in various languages, and so on. Though all these aspects are processed in distinct parts of the brain, we nevertheless conceive the lemon as an entity. Synchronization may also help to identify individual parts of a scene as belonging to the same object. It must be noted, however, that these interpretations of the significance of synchronization are subject to ongoing critical discussions. On the other hand, synchronization among large groups of neurons may also be detrimental to healthy behavior. For instance, Parkinsonian tremor and epileptic seizures are believed to be caused by such a mechanism. At any rate, understanding synchronization and desynchronization are fundamental problems in modern brain research.

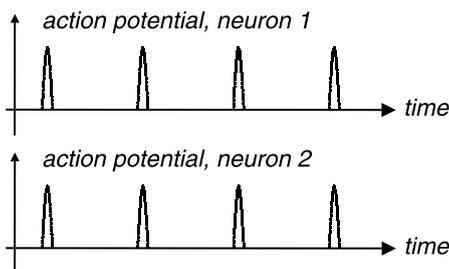


Fig. 1.1. Synchrony between two spike trains (schematic). For more details cf. Sects. 1.1 and 1.3

Studying networks of neurons means that we pick a specific level of investigation. In fact, each neuron is a complex system by itself, which at the microscopic level has a complicated structure and in which numerous complex chemical and electrochemical processes go on. Nevertheless, in order to model the behavior of a neural net, in general it is possible to treat the behavior of an individual neuron using a few characteristic features. The reason lies in the different time and length scales of the various activities, a fact that has found its detailed theoretical justification in the field of synergetics. Beyond that, for many practical purposes, the selection of the relevant neuronal variables and their equations largely depends on the experience and skill of the modeler as well as on his/her ability to solve the resulting network equations. Clearly, when we go beyond neural nets, new qualitative features appear, such as perception, motor-control, and so on. These must always be kept in mind by the reader, and in my book I will point at some of the corresponding links.

1.2 Brain: Structure and Functioning. A Brief Reminder

A complete survey of what science nowadays knows about the brain would fill a library. Therefore it may suffice here to mention a few relevant aspects. The white-gray matter of the brain is arranged in the form of a walnut (Fig. 1.2).

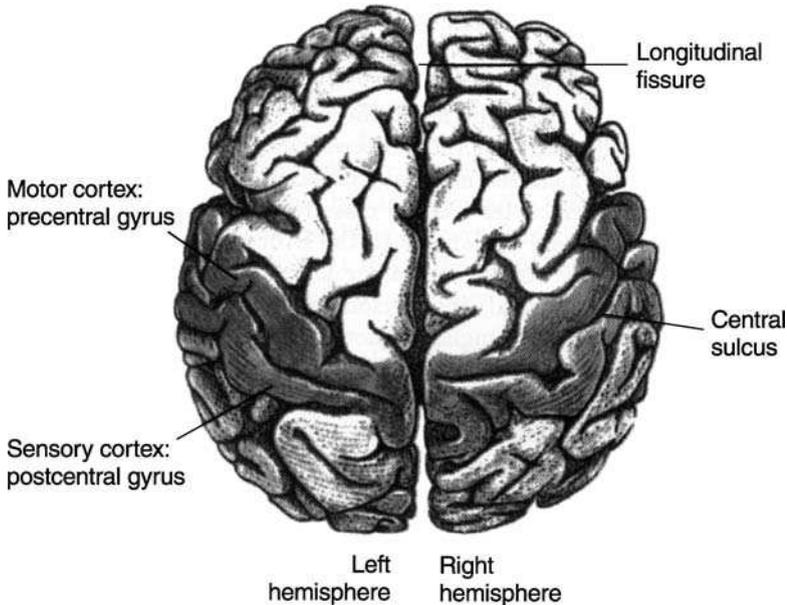


Fig. 1.2. The brain seen from above

As has been known for some time, through the effects of injuries or strokes, there are localized areas in the brain that can be considered as centers for specific processes, such as tactile sensations, movement control, seeing, hearing, speech production, etc. These early findings by medical doctors could not only be substantiated, but also extended by modern physical methods, such as magnetoencephalograms, electroencephalograms, positron emission spectroscopy, magnetic resonance imaging, and so on. Since I described these approaches in my book “Principles of Brain Functioning”, and since they may be found in other text books as well, I will not elaborate on these methods here. By means of these methods, it has become clear, however, that there are pronounced interconnections between the various regions of the brain, whereby learning and plasticity may play an important role. For instance, when a finger of the hand of a monkey is removed, the corresponding brain area shrinks and is largely taken over by the neuronal endings (“afferent nerve fibers”) corresponding to neighbouring fingers. Thus the concept of localized areas must be taken with a grain of salt. As may transpire from what I have just said, it must be left open what we consider as part of a neural network. So in the following, taking a broad view, we may think of a neural network as one that is contained in an individual area, but also as one that comprises parts of different areas as well. I believe that here much has to be done in future experimental and theoretical research.

After having said this, I may proceed to a preliminary discussion of individual network models.

1.3 Network Models

While the model of a single neuron is by now well established, being based on the fundamental work by Hodgkin and Huxley, modern theoretical work deals with the branching of the solutions of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations and their modifications and generalizations under the impact of external and internal parameters. In other words, an intense study of the bifurcations of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations and related equations is performed. When we proceed to two or few neurons, mostly computer models are invoked, including numbers of up to hundreds of neurons, whereby highly simplified dynamics must be used. Basically two kinds of couplings between neurons have been treated in the literature. One is the model of sinusoidal coupling, depending on the relative phase of two neurons. This theory is based on the concept of phase oscillators, i.e. on devices whose dynamics can be described by a single variable, the phase. Corresponding approaches have a long history in radio-engineering and later in laser physics, where the coupling between few oscillators is dealt with. The coupling between many biological or chemical phase oscillators has been treated in the pioneering works by Winfree and Kuramoto, respectively. An excellent survey of the development of this approach can be found in the article by Strogatz (see references). Applications to neural

nets have been implemented by Kuramoto and others. More recent and more realistic approaches rest on the study of the interaction between neuronal spike trains. A simple but equally important model has been developed by Mirollo and Strogatz and further continued by Geisel and coworkers. This model was originally introduced by Peskin to explain the self-synchronization of the cardiac pacemaker. More recent work on this class of models, called integrate and fire models, has been performed by Bresloff, Coombes and other authors.

The central part of this book will be devoted to networks composed of many neurons coupled by spike trains. Hereby I first develop what I call the lighthouse model, which can be treated in great detail and rather simply and yet allows us at the same time to take into account many different effects including delays between neurons and noise. As we will see, under typical initial conditions a steady synchronized state evolves, whose stability and instability we will study in detail. Depending on the interactions between the neurons, i.e. depending on their synaptic strengths, a change of modus from long spike intervals to short spike intervals may happen. We allow for arbitrary couplings with a special constraint, however, that allows for synchronized states. We will elucidate the relation between the lighthouse model and integrate and fire models in detail, whereby we perform in both cases a rather complete stability analysis that goes far beyond what has been known so far in the literature.

A hot topic in present days' brain research is the relation between synchronization and pattern recognition. As will be shown in this book, all models so far devised to explain synchronization can show only "weak associative memory," which does not allow a strict discrimination between patterns. This latter performance is achieved, however, by so-called attractor networks, among which the "synergetic computer" plays a prominent role because its properties can be explored in all detail. In order to elucidate the connection between synchronization and pattern recognition, we introduce and discuss an important extension of the lighthouse model.

For sake of completeness we include sinusoidal couplings at various levels of biological organisation, i.e. both at the neuronal level and that of limbs.

Finally, we will show how phase-averaged equations can be deduced from our basic equations, whereby we recover the fundamental equations of Wilson and Cowan as well as of Nunez, Jirsa and Haken. These equations have found widespread applications to the understanding of the formation of spatio-temporal activity patterns of neuronal nets. We illustrate the use of these equations in particular by means of the Kelso experiments on finger movements. This allows us to show how the present approach allows one to go from the individual neuronal level up to the macroscopic observable level of motion of limbs.

1.4 How We Will Proceed

We first give a descriptive outline on the structure and basic functions of an individual neuron. This will be followed by the presentation of typical and important effects of their cooperation, in particular the experimental evidence of their synchronization under specific conditions.

In Chap. 4 we will be concerned with theoretical concepts and mathematical tools. In particular we show how to represent spikes, what is meant by phase and how to determine it from experimental data. Furthermore we will show how the origin and effect of noise can be modelled.

Chapters 5 and 6 are devoted to the lighthouse model with its various aspects.

Chapter 7 provides a bridge between the lighthouse model and the integrate and fire models, where a broad view is taken.

In Chapter 8 we treat integrate and fire models of different kinds from a unifying point of view and explore in particular their stability and instability properties.

Chapters 9 and 10 present a unifying approach to pattern recognition and synchronization, where also the important concept of quasi-attractors is explained.

Chapter 11 is devoted to sinusoidal couplings and shows the usefulness of this kind of model by means of applications to neurons as well as to movement coordination.

As already mentioned, Chap. 12 deals with phase-averaged equations for axonal spike rates and dendritic currents, whereas Chap. 13 gives, for sake of completeness, an outline of Hodgkin–Huxley equations and related approaches, that means that this chapter deals with the individual neuronal level.

The book concludes with Chap. 14 “Conclusion and Outlook”.

2. The Neuron – Building Block of the Brain

2.1 Structure and Basic Functions

Though there are about 20 different types of neurons, their structure is basically the same. A neuron is composed of its soma, its dendrites that quite often form a treelike structure and the axon that, eventually, branches (Figs. 2.1 and 2.2). Information produced in other neurons is transferred to the neuron under consideration by means of localized contacts, the synapses, that are located on the dendrites and also on the cell body. Electrical charges produced at the synapses propagate to the soma and produce a net post-

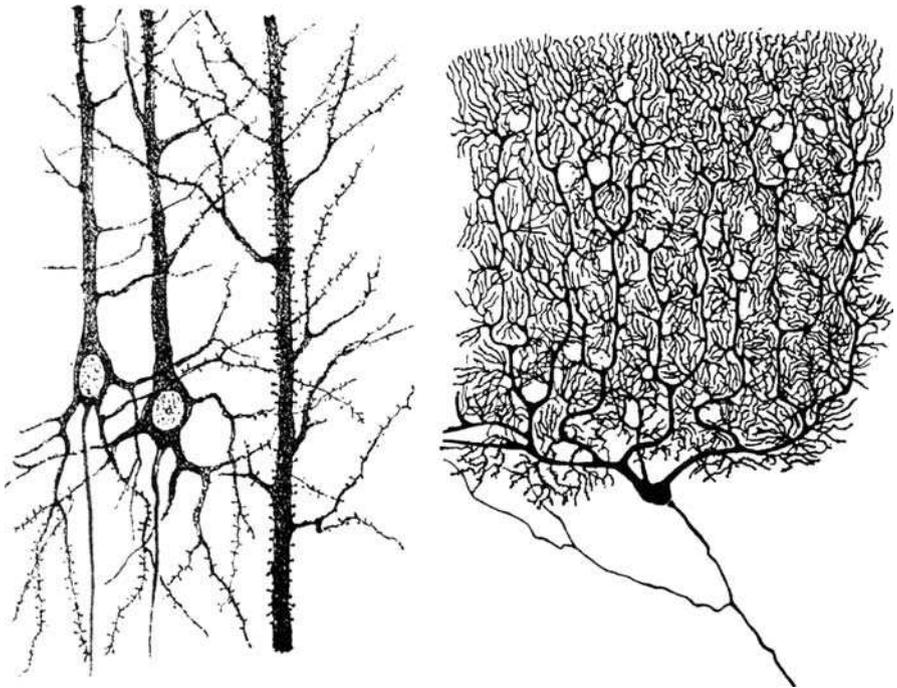


Fig. 2.1. Examples of neurons. L.h.s.: Pyramidal cell, r.h.s.: Purkinje cell (after Bullock et al., 1977)

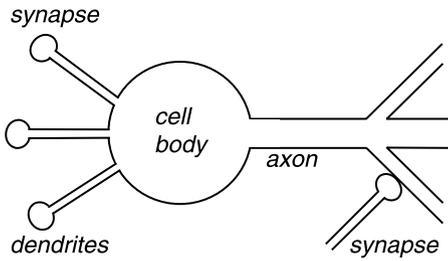


Fig. 2.2. Scheme of a neuron

synaptic potential. If the postsynaptic potential at the soma is sufficiently large to exceed a threshold value, typically a depolarisation of 10–15 mV, the neuron generates a brief electrical pulse that is called a spike or action potential, at its axon hillock. The axon hillock is the point of connection between the soma and the axon. The spikes run down the axon, finally reach the synapses that, in a way to be discussed below, transfer the information to another neuron. In order to be able to model the functioning of a neuron, we have to deal with these processes in more detail. In this chapter we will be satisfied by a qualitative discussion with only a few mathematical hints.

2.2 Information Transmission in an Axon

Information transmission in an axon is based on electrical processes that are, however, rather different from those in metallic conductors involving electric currents. While in metals the carriers of electric charge are electrons, in the axon they are ions. These electrically charged atoms are much heavier than electrons. Furthermore, a nerve fibre is much thinner than a conventional metallic wire. The diameter of an axon is only about 0.1–20 μm ($1 \mu\text{m} = 10^{-9} \text{ m}$). The longitudinal resistance of an axon of 1 m length is as high as the resistance of a copper wire more than 10^{10} miles long. Quite clearly, electrical processes in an axon must be quite different from those in wires. In order to understand the mechanism of information transfer, measurements were made both in isolated nerve preparations and in living organisms. The squid possesses particularly thick axons, the so-called giant axons. They are, therefore, particularly suited for such studies and all basic insights into the function of the nervous system were first found using these axons. In the meantime we know that the kind of information transmission is the same both within the same organism and for different organisms. Thus it does not play a role, whether pain from a limb to the brain is transmitted or an order from the brain to a limb is transmitted, for example. All animals and humans use basically only one kind of information transmission along their axons.

Experimentally it can be shown that at a resting nerve fiber that does not transmit information a small electric potential between its inner and outer side is present. This potential is called the *resting potential*. The inner

part of the nerve fibre is negatively charged as compared to the outer liquid in which the nerve fibre is embedded. This potential is about 70 mV. The reason for this resting potential is the unequal distribution of ions within and outside the axon and is due to special properties of the axon membrane, which has different permeabilities for different ions. An energy-consuming process, the sodium–potassium pump, maintains the unequal distribution of ions. What happens at an active neuron that transmits information? This can be understood by means of the following experiment (Fig. 2.3). If a small current is injected into the axon via an electrode (v_1), at the position (v_3) the resting potential is lowered, i.e. the potential difference between the inside and the outside is decreased. This is called depolarization. As can be expected from the electrical properties of the axon, this depolarization is only weakly registered at an electrode (v_2) that is further away. If the current through the electrode (v_1) is enhanced, the depolarization increases correspondingly. At a certain polarization (threshold), a new phenomenon appears. Suddenly a short reversal of charges occurs in a small area. In other words, for a short time the outer side of the axon becomes negative as compared to its inner side. Most remarkably, this change of potential is considerably larger than expected for the level of the injected current. Also the duration of the reversal of the potential is not influenced by the duration of the injected current pulse. Quite clearly, we are dealing with an active process of the axon. If the pulse at the electrode (v_1) is increased further, the level and duration of this reaction will not change. Thus, we are speaking of an *all or nothing signal*. In other words, this signal does not occur at a subthreshold electric excitation, but fully occurs at a superthreshold excitation. This change of potential can be registered at a distant third electrode with the full level and with only a small delay. Thus, the response migrates further, and with increasing distance no decrease of the potential occurs. Clearly, this property is important in the transfer of information from one neuron to another. The short reversal of voltage is called a *nerve pulse* or *action potential*. Its duration is about one thousandth of a second. Quite often, it is called a *spike*.

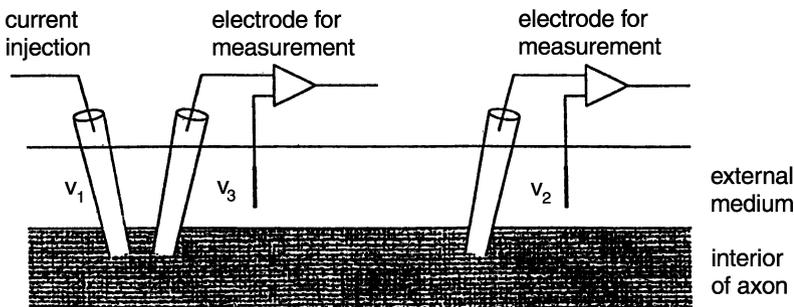


Fig. 2.3. Scheme of an experiment on the origin of a pulse

How can the formation of such a nerve pulse be explained? With depolarization, the membrane is electrically excited and ion channels open. Rapidly ions can migrate through these channels and thus cause the reversal of charge. But then the opening of other channels and thus the migration of other ions causes a decrease of this voltage reversal. The sodium–potassium pump maintains the unequal ionic distribution. A nerve pulse migrates in a nerve cell from the beginning of the axon, the axon hillock, in the direction of a synapse. Its velocity can be up to 100 m/s, corresponding to 360 km/h. In spite of the extremely high longitudinal resistance of an axon, the electric pulse can thus be transmitted via the axon extremely rapidly. This is made possible because the charge carriers, the ions, need not move along the axon, but perpendicularly through a very thin membrane. With modern methods (patch clamp experiments), it is possible to study even the processes at individual channels. We will not be concerned with these microscopic processes here. How are electrical excitations of axons produced in nature? Here, of course, no electrodes are introduced in the axon and no current will be injected artificially. In many cases, electric excitations stem from other nerve cells and are transferred via the synapses. Electric excitations originate in the sensory organs at receptors, which are special cells that transform external excitations into electrical excitations. For instance, light impinging on receptors in the retina is finally transformed into electric excitations that are then further transmitted.

2.3 Neural Code

How can information be transmitted by means of neural pulses? We have to remember that in a specific nerve fiber all nerve pulses have the same intensity and duration. Thus there is only one signal. In the nervous system, sequences of spikes are used, whose temporal distance, or, in other words, whose frequency, is variable. The stronger a nerve fiber is excited, the higher the frequency. Note that the meaning of a piece of information, whether for instance it is a piece of visual, acoustic or tactile information, cannot be encoded using the frequency of the nerve impulse. The meaning of a piece of impulse information in an organism is fixed by the origin and destination of its nerve fiber. This means for instance that all action potentials that are transmitted via nerve fibers stemming from the eye contain visual information. These nerve fibers finally lead, via several switching stations, to a special part of the brain, the visual cortex. The same is true for other nerve fibers. Also the quality of an excitation, for instance the color of an object, is determined by the kind of nerve fiber. For instance, separate fibers originate from different receptors for color in the eye. Sensory cells are specialized nerve cells that convert external excitations, such as light, temperature variations, sound, a.s.o. into electrical excitations. Sensory cells in a way are interpreters between the external world and the nervous system, but they react only quite

specifically to specific excitations. For our later modelling, these observations are of fundamental importance, because they lie at the root of the possible universality of network models.

2.4 Synapses – The Local Contacts

At most synapses information transmission is not achieved by means of electrical pulses but by means of chemical substances, the so-called neurotransmitters. Figure 2.4 shows a highly simplified sketch of the structure of a chemical synapse. Between the two nerve cells there is a small gap across which information is transmitted by the migration of chemical substances. In detail, the following processes go on. When an action potential reaches the synapse, transmitters are released from small vesicles and proceed from there to the synaptic gap. Here they diffuse to the other (postsynaptic) side and dock on specific molecules, the receptors. The transmitter molecules fit to the receptors like a key in a lock. As soon as the transmitter substances dock at the receptors, this influences specific ion channels, causing a migration of ions and thus a depolarization of the membrane. The higher the frequency of the incoming action potentials (pulses), the more transmitter substance is released and the larger the depolarization on the postsynaptic side. The transmitter molecules are relatively quickly decomposed and the individual parts return to the presynaptic side. There they are reconstructed to complete transmitter molecules and stored in the vesicles. The now unoccupied receptors can again be occupied by new transmitter molecules. If at the presynaptic sides no action potentials arrive, no more transmitter molecules are liberated from the vesicles and the receptors remain unoccupied. Thus the depolarization decreases. The transmission of the excitation via the synapses leads to a local potential at the cell body. Only if this potential exceeds a certain threshold at the axon hillock are action potentials generated that are

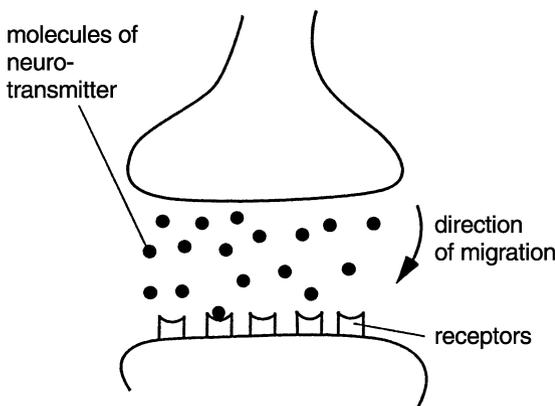


Fig. 2.4. Scheme of a synapse

then transmitted along the axon. In general, the transmission of excitation at a single synapse is not sufficient to produce a superthreshold depolarization. But nerve cells are connected with many other nerve cells, because on the dendrites and on the cell body of the nerve cell many synapses connecting with other nerve cells are located. The excitations which come in across all these synapses contribute to the local potential at the cell body. It is important to note that not all synapses are excitatory, but there are also inhibitory synapses that decrease the excitation of the local potential at the cell body. The actions of excitatory and inhibitory synapses are thus processed in the region of the cell body. As mentioned above, the corresponding nerve cell transmits nerve pulses across its axon only, when at the beginning of the axon, i.e. at the axon hillock, a superthreshold depolarization occurs. If the potential remains under this threshold, no nerve pulses will be carried on. The higher the superthreshold local potential, i.e. the higher the depolarization, the higher is the frequency with which the axon potentials are carried on from this nerve cell. Clearly, the threshold of the information transmission ensures that small random fluctuations at the cell body don't lead to information transmission via nerve pulses. The inhibitory synapses have an important function also, because they impede an extreme amplification of electric excitation in the nervous system.

2.5 Naka–Rushton Relation

For our models that we will formulate later, we need a quantitative relation between the stimulus intensity P that acts at the site of spike generation and the firing rate, i.e. the production rate of spikes. For quite a number of neurons this relation has a rather general form provided the stimulus intensity P is constant and we are considering the resulting steady state in which the firing rate is time-independent (Figs. 2.5 and 2.6).

The relation is the Naka–Rushton formula

$$S(P) = \begin{cases} rP^N/(\Theta^N + P^N) & \text{for } P \geq 0, \\ 0 & \text{for } P < 0. \end{cases} \quad (2.1)$$

The meanings of the constants r and Θ become clear if we consider special cases. If

$$P \gg \Theta, \quad (2.2)$$

we obtain

$$S(P) \approx r, \quad (2.3)$$

so that r is the maximum spike rate. If we choose, however,

$$P = \Theta, \quad (2.4)$$

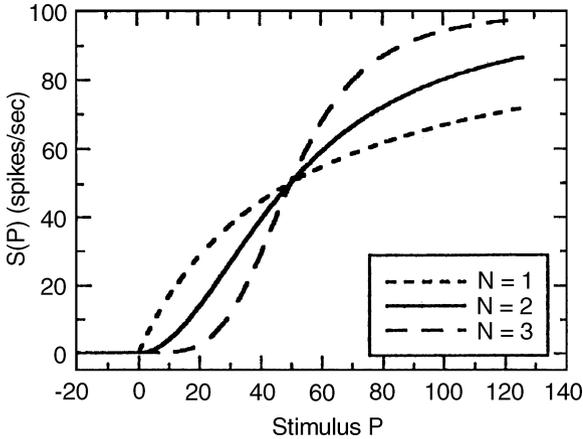


Fig. 2.5. The Naka–Rushton function for $N = 1, 2$ and 3 (after Wilson, 1999)

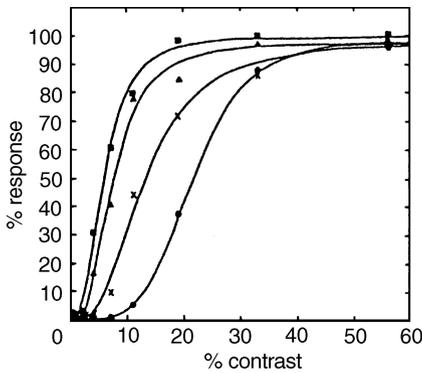


Fig. 2.6. Experimentally observed spike rates of four different neurons with fits of (2.1) (after Albrecht and Hamilton, 1982)

we obtain

$$S(P) = \frac{rP^N}{2P^N} = \frac{r}{2}, \quad (2.5)$$

i.e. (2.4) determines the point at which (2.1) reaches half its maximum. The exponent N is roughly a measure for the steepness of the curve $S(P)$. Typical values of N that match experimentally observed data range from 1.4 to 3.4. In the literature, a number of similar functions S are used in describing the spike rate. All of them have the following properties:

1. There is a threshold for P close to zero.
2. There is roughly a linear region in which

$$S(P) \propto P. \quad (2.6)$$

3. For large enough values (see (2.2)), S becomes constant, an effect called *saturation*.

For our later model we will be satisfied with the phenomenological relation (2.1). In order to penetrate more deeply into the mechanism of spike genera-

tion, the Hodgkin–Huxley equations are used (see Sect. 13.1). These equations describe the generation of action potentials caused by the in- and outflux of ions. Depending on the kind of ions and their channels, extensions of these equations have also been developed and we will briefly represent them in Chap. 13. There we will also discuss the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations that allow us to get some insight into the nonlinear dynamics that produces spikes. From a physicist’s point of view, neurons are by no means passive systems in thermal equilibrium. Rather they may be compared to machines that perform specific tasks, for instance the conversion of a constant signal into spikes, whereby the spike rate encodes information. When speaking of machines, we usually think of highly reliable performance; this is not the case with neurons, however. Due to fundamental physical principles, we must expect them to be rather noisy. We will study the generation of noise, both in dendrites and axons, in Sect. 4.8.

So far, in this chapter, we have been dealing with a single neuron. In Chap. 3 we will discuss some important aspects of their cooperation.

2.6 Learning and Memory

Though in our book we will not directly be concerned with processes of learning, a few comments may be in order, because they are linked with the existence of neurons. According to a widely accepted hypothesis due to D. O. Hebb, learning rests on a strengthening of the synapses that connect those neurons that are again and again simultaneously active, and similarly on a decrease of synaptic strengths if one or both neurons are inactive at the same time. In particular, Eric Kandel studied and elucidated the connection between the learning of behavioral patterns and changes at the neural level, in particular in sea slugs, such as *Aplysia* and *Hermisenda*.

Let us finally discuss the role of dendrites.

2.7 The Role of Dendrites

Dendrites are thin fibers along which ions may diffuse, thus generating an electric current. Such diffusion processes in one dimension are described by the cable equation. While it was originally assumed that the signal is transmitted from a synapse to the soma, more recent results show that back flows may also occur. Diffusion is a linear process. More recent theoretical approaches also consider nonlinear effects similar to the propagation of axonal pulses. Because of the transport of electric charges in dendrites, they give rise to electric and magnetic fields. Such fields stemming from groups of neurons can be measured using EEG (electroencephalograms) and MEG (magnetoencephalograms).

3. Neuronal Cooperativity

3.1 Structural Organization

The local arrangements of neurons and their connections are important for their cooperation. Probably the best studied neuronal system in the brain is the visual system. Since a number of important experiments that concern the cooperation of neurons have been performed on this system, we will briefly describe it in this section. At the same time, we will see how this organization processes visual information. So let us follow up the individual steps.

We will focus our main attention on the *human* visual system, but important experiments have been performed also on cats, monkeys and other mammals as well as on further animals, which we will not consider here, however. Light impinging on an eye is focussed by means of its lens on the retina. The latter contains rods and cones, whereby the rods are responsible for black and white vision, while the cones serve colour vision. In order to bring out the essentials, we present basic results on the rods. At their top, they contain membranes, which, in turn, contain a specific molecule called rhodopsin, which is composed of two parts. When light hits the molecule it decays, whereby a whole sequence of processes starts that, eventually, changes the permeability of the outer membrane of the rod. In this way, the potential between the inner and outer sides of the rod changes. Actually, even in darkness, i.e. when the rod is at rest, there is already a potential present. The inner side is slightly positively charged as compared to the outer side. The voltage is about 30–40 mV. When light impinges on the rod, its voltage is increased. Actually, this is in contrast to what is found in other sensory cells, where this potential is diminished. The more intense the impinging light, the stronger this voltage change, that continues until no more light comes in. The intensity of the impinging light is translated into an electrical excitation. This transformation requires energy that is delivered by chemical energy stored in the cells. By means of that energy, the degraded rhodopsin can be regenerated and is again available. Besides rods and cones, the retina contains further types of cells. We will not deal here with them in detail; may it suffice to mention that these cells interact with their neighbours both in the lateral as well the vertical direction of the retina, whereby information is carried on by means of voltage changes. The outer layer of the retina contains the *ganglion* cells that convert voltage changes into pulses. A certain array of

On-center neuron

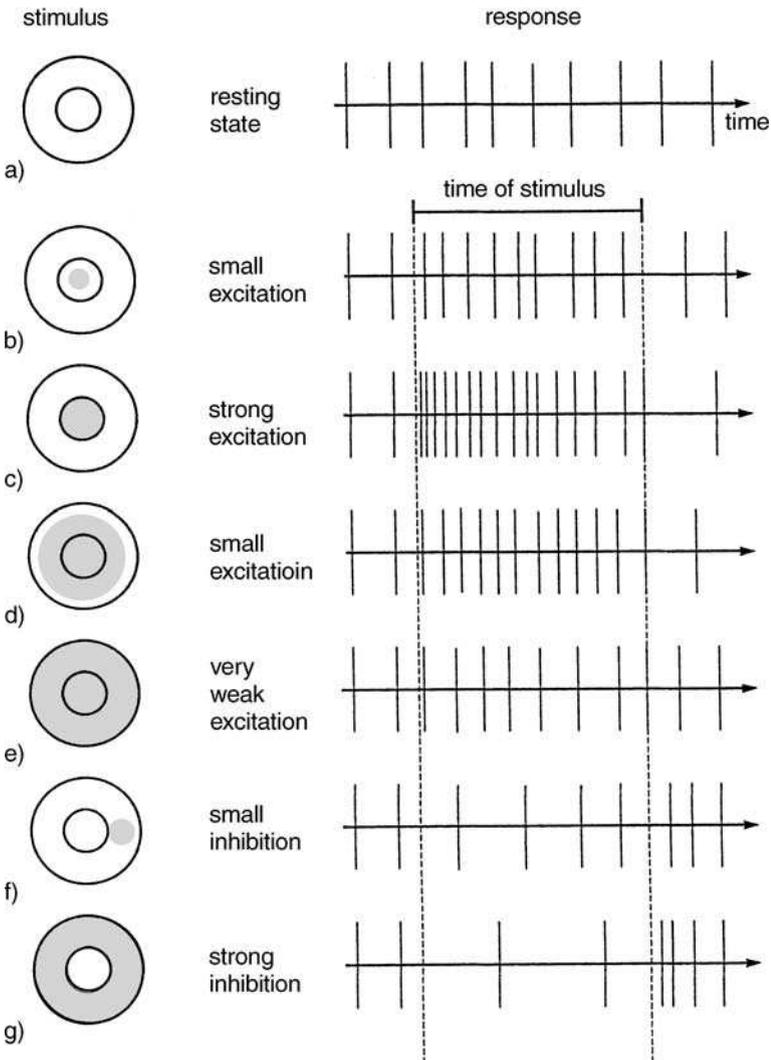


Fig. 3.1. Responses of on-center ganglion cell to different stimuli. On the l.h.s. the receptive field that consists of the center and surround. The light stimulus is represented *dark*. The r.h.s. represents the response of the neuron to the corresponding stimulus

rods contributes to the activity of a specific ganglion cell. The corresponding area covered by the rods is called the *receptive field* of the ganglion cell. The receptive fields of these cells are of a circular shape. *The receptive field* is a central concept that will accompany us through the whole visual system. Readers interested in the details of excitation and inhibition of ganglions are referred to Fig. 3.1 and its legend. While in the so-called on-cells the center of the receptive field leads to an excitation of the cell and an inhibition at its periphery, in off-cells just the opposite occurs.

The nerve pulses are conducted along nerve fibers to a change point, where some of the nerve fibers change from one side of the brain to the other (Fig. 3.2). Then they go on to the corpus geniculatum laterale. There some kind of switching occurs and the nerve fibers further proceed to the visual cortex at the rear part of the brain. Other fibers go to other parts of the brain. Behind the change point one half of the ongoing nerve consists of nerve fibers that stem from the right eye and the other half of nerve fibers from the left eye. Nerve fibers that stem from the left parts of the retinas of both eyes go on to the left brain, whereas nerve fibers that stem from the right parts of the retinas go on to the right half of the brain. When we take into account that the image that is perceived by humans on their retinas is mapped upside-down and the sides interchanged, it follows that on the right halves of the retinas the left part of the visual field is perceived and vice versa. For instance, when on the left-hand side of a table there is a ball and on its

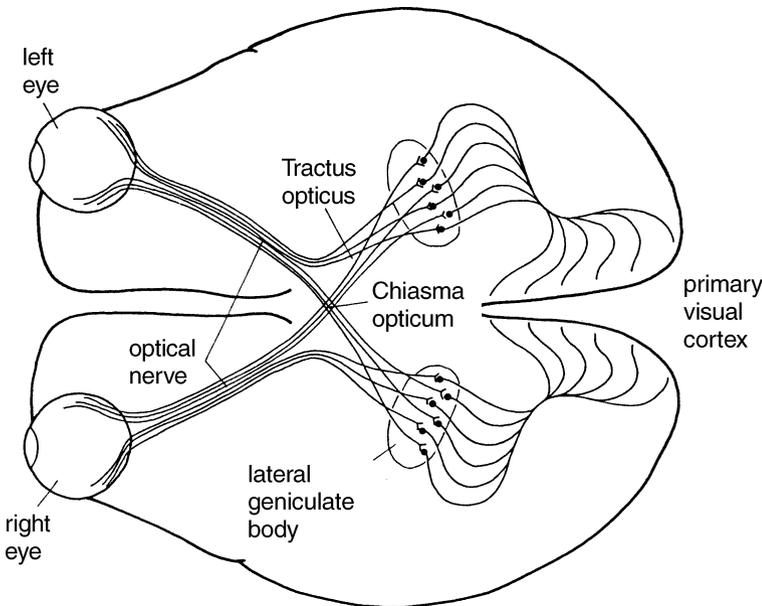


Fig. 3.2. Schematic representation of the visual pathway of a human

right-hand side a pencil, the pencil will be mapped onto both left retinas and the information is transferred into the left part of the brain. The ball lying on the right side is perceived by the right part of the brain. Both parts of the visual field are thus processed separately in both halves of the brain. On the other hand, each half of the brain receives information from both eyes. This actually serves stereovision, because in this way each half of the brain is able to process the images that stem from both eyes jointly.

It should be noted that the spatial order is conserved in the whole visual system; that is to say that nerve fibers that deliver information from neighbouring regions of their retina always remain neighbours. The local scales of these topological maps are not conserved, however. For instance, the map of the “yellow spot” of the retina possesses a comparatively large area in the corresponding part of the brain. The nerve fibers proceed from the corpus geniculatum laterale (Fig. 3.2) to the *primary visual cortex* from where connections exist to a number of layers. Numerous connections exist to other brain areas, for instance to a reading center from where information can be passed on to a speech center, and so on.

In the primary visual cortex a white stripe in the otherwise gray cortical substance is particularly easily visible. The stripe is named the Gennari stripe after its discoverer and the corresponding brain area is called the *striped cortex* or *area striata*. The visual cortex is a sheet of cells about 2 mm thick and with a surface of a few square centimeters. It contains about 200×10^6 cells. Neurologists distinguish between different subunits of the area of the cortex that processes visual perception. The first station, where the fibers of the lateral geniculate body terminate, is the so-called primary visual field. This is also called *area 17* or *V1*. This area is followed by areas that are called 18, 19, etc. or *V2*, *V3*, etc. For our purposes it will be sufficient to deal with a rough subdivision into a primary visual field and secondary or higher visual fields. It is important to note, however, that each visual field represents a more or less complete representation of the retina. In other words, excitation of a certain area of the retina causes a response in a definite area of this visual field. Thus, the visual field represents a map of the retina. Of course, we must be aware that in each half of the brain each time only half of the retinas of both eyes are mapped. Today it is estimated that the cortex of monkeys contains at least 15 different visual fields and possibly in humans there are still more. Only the primary visual field has been well studied up to now and we will present some of the results here. The cortex in the region of the primary visual field can be subdivided into six layers that differ with respect to the types of cells they contain and also with respect to the density of cells. These layers are numbered from I to VI with further subdivisions. Nearly all nerve fibers from the lateral geniculate body terminate in layer IVc. It must be noted that information is not only processed in one direction, but there are also a number of back propagations.

Let us discuss in which way neurons in the visual cortex react to receptive fields. Actually, there are quite a number of different cells that react to different excitations. Neurologists differentiate between simple and complex cells. As these notations indicate, the receptive fields of different cells differ with respect to their complexity. The receptive fields of nerve cells in the visual cortex were mainly studied in cats and monkeys. Remember that in each case the receptive fields refer to the retina, i.e. a small region of the retina influences the corresponding neuron in the visual cortex. In it there are cells that possess circular receptive fields with a center and an oppositely acting surround. These cells are located exclusively in area IVc and are all monocular, i.e. they are fed only from one eye. It is assumed that these cells represent the first station in the visual cortex. But most of the so-called simple cells don't possess circular receptive fields, they are actually rectangular (see Fig. 3.3). Basically, these cells are very sensitive to the direction of a bar. Only bars with a specific direction cause an optimal response in the cell. There are neurons for each direction, whereby, for instance, neither vertical nor horizontal is preferred. It is assumed that the properties of these cells are brought about by the cooperation of simpler cells with circular receptive fields. The simple cells have in common that they possess well-defined excitatory and well-defined inhibitory fields. In all cases excitations that don't change in time suffice to excite the simple cells.

The situation is quite different in complex cells. The receptive fields of complex cells are larger than those of the simple cells and they can't be divided into clearly defined excitatory and inhibitory zones. The *complex cells* are characterized by the fact that they react in particular to *moving excitations*, especially to light bars that move perpendicularly to their extension. Complex cells exhibit a specific orientation sensitivity, i.e. only a correctly oriented bar that is moving in the corresponding direction leads to a response in the corresponding cell.

So far we have got acquainted with the most important cells of the primary visual field. These cells are arranged in strict organization by means of columns. Each column is about 30–100 μm thick and 2 mm high. Each of these columns contains cells of the fourth layer with circular receptive fields. Above and below each, simple and also complex cells can be found. What is particularly interesting is the fact that all orientation-specific cells of a column react to the same orientation of a light bar (Fig. 3.4). Neighbouring columns differ with respect to their orientation specificities by about 10° . Thus going from one side to the other of a column, we find a slight change of orientation from initially vertical to finally horizontal orientation. We may distinguish between columns that are mainly served from the left or from the right eye so that they are called *ocular dominance columns*. Each small section of the retina thus possesses a corresponding set of columns with all possible directions and for both eyes. According to Hubel and Wiesel such a set is called a *hyper-column*. Nearly similar to a crystal, in the visual cortex

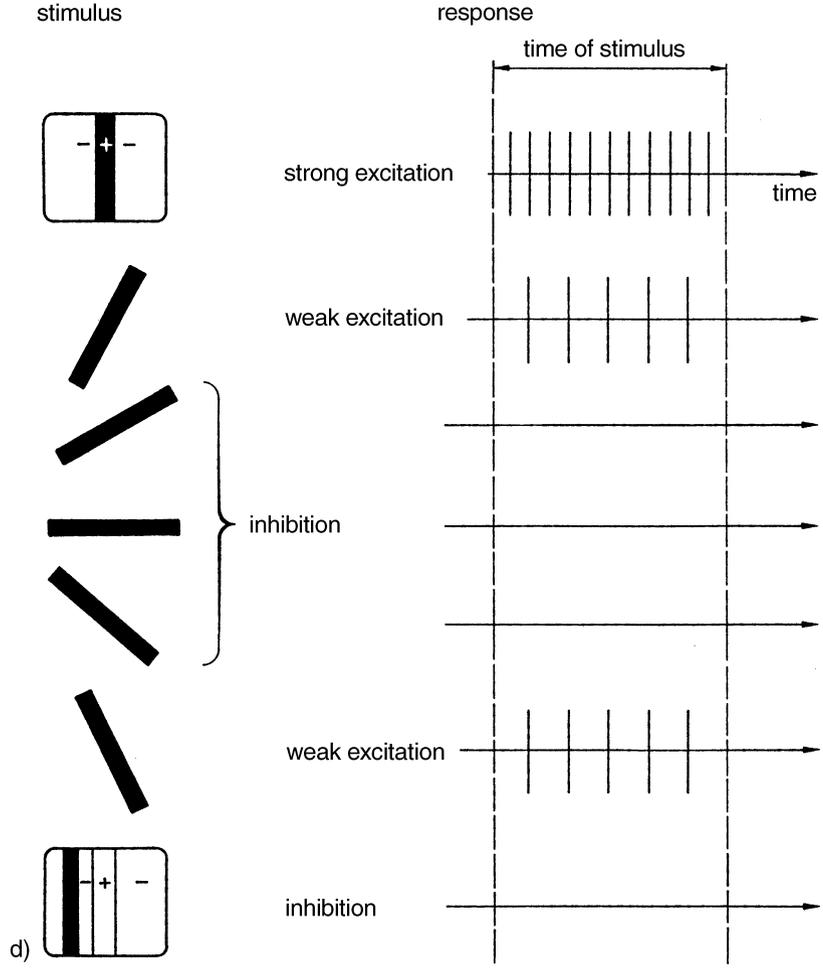
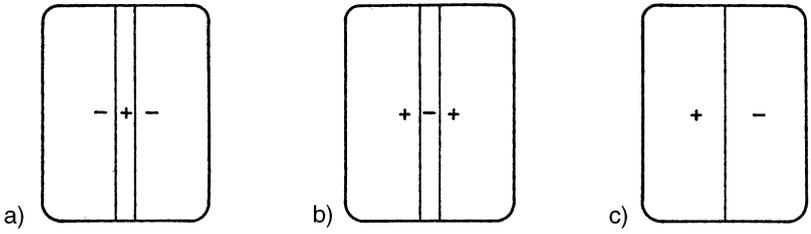


Fig. 3.3. Response of a neuron with a specific receptive field to a light bar with different orientations. The receptive field is shown in the *upper left square*. + marks the region of excitation, - that of inhibition in the case of illumination

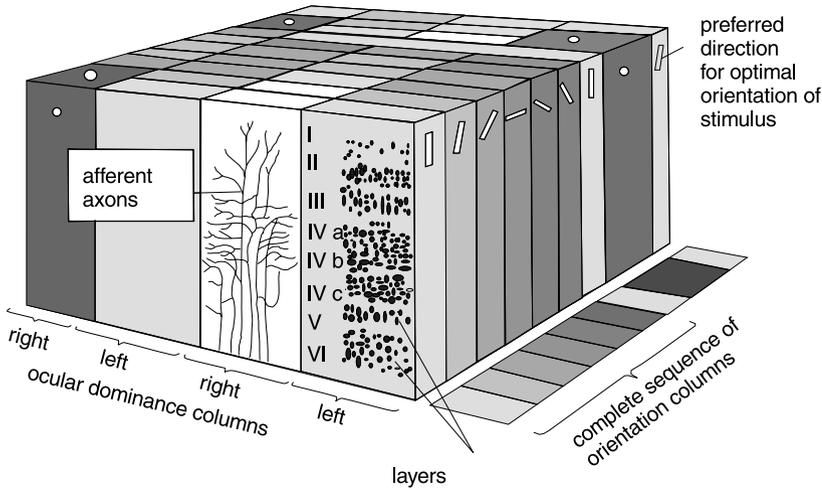


Fig. 3.4. Organisation of visual cortex in the form of columns

such hyper-columns are regularly arranged and can be attributed to a small area of the retina. A similar orientation in the form of columns can also be found in other parts of the cortex. Cells in still higher visual fields have still more complex properties; that is why they are called *hyper-complex*. Earlier hypotheses on brain functioning assumed that, eventually, there are specific cells that recognize specific objects and jokingly such cells were called *grandmother cells*. Now the conviction has won that such grandmother cells don't exist and that the recognition, say of a specific face, is the result of the cooperation of many individual cells. It is here where the question of neuronal cooperativity becomes especially important and we will discuss experiments and some hypotheses later in this chapter.

3.2 Global Functional Studies. Location of Activity Centers

There are a number of methods that allow us to study experimentally in which regions of the brain specific mental tasks are performed. These methods rest on the assumption that during increased mental activity, the blood flow in the active region is increased. Clearly, the time constants are rather large and lie in regions above seconds. This is a region that we are not interested in in our later models, so we mention the corresponding methods only briefly. These are positron emission tomography (PET), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), better known among physicists as nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR), and, with a higher temporal resolution, functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI). An interesting method that was introduced more recently by Grin-

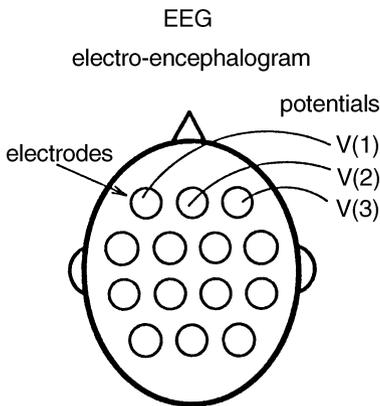


Fig. 3.5. Scheme of EEG measurement. Positions of electrodes on scalp

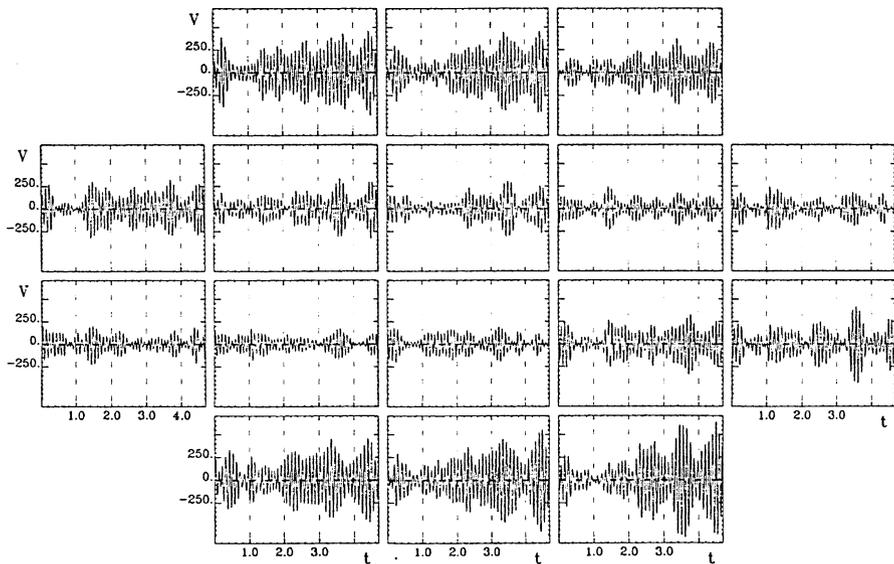


Fig. 3.6. Scheme of representation of EEG measurement. Each box is a plot of voltage V versus time, corresponding to the electrodes of Fig. 3.5 (after Lehmann, private communication)

vald is optical imaging of the visual cortex that requires, however, the opening of the skull of the animal. In view of the models we will discuss in our book, we first mention other methods that allow us to study rhythmic or oscillatory phenomena of large groups of neurons. These are the electroencephalogram (EEG) and the magnetoencephalogram (MEG). In the electroencephalogram electrodes are placed on the scalp and the voltages between these electrodes and a reference electrode are measured and plotted in ways shown in Figs. 3.5 and 3.6. Such EEGs may be measured either with respect to specific parts of

the brain, e.g. the sensory or the motor cortex, or with respect to the total scalp. In general, specific frequency bands are filtered out and studied, for instance the α -band in the region from about 8–12 Hz, or the γ -band, and so on. In general, these bands are associated with specific global activities of the brain, for instance sleep, attention, and so on. By means of squids (superconducting quantum interference devices) it is possible to measure very small magnetic fields.

3.3 Interlude: A Minicourse on Correlations

One of the most exciting developments in experimental brain research is the discovery of pronounced *temporal correlations* between the activity of neurons. Here it has been important that the experimental results can be represented in a rigorous mathematical form. Thus, before we describe the experimental results, we will have to discuss a number of basic concepts, whereby we focus our attention on spikes. The occurrence of a spike is, in a technical sense, an *event*. In the following, we will be concerned with the *statistics* of such events. We may record events either by measuring many neurons simultaneously or the same neuron in repeated experiments. Because the experimental time resolution is finite, we consider discrete time intervals Δ and define (Fig. 3.7)

$$t_n = n\Delta - \Delta/2, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \tag{3.1}$$

Experimentally, we may count the *number of events* in the interval Δ at time t_n (Fig. 3.8a) and call that number (Fig. 3.8b)

$$N(t_n) \equiv N_n. \tag{3.2}$$

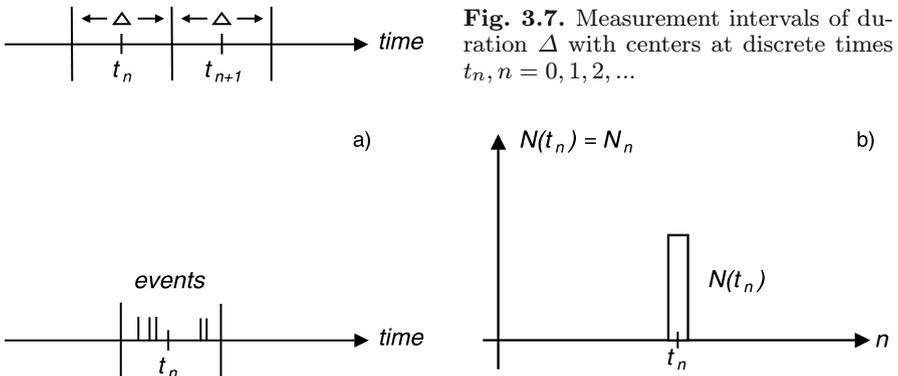


Fig. 3.8. a) Events within a measurement interval with center at t_n ; b) Number $N(t_n) = N_n$ of events within measurement interval with center at t_n

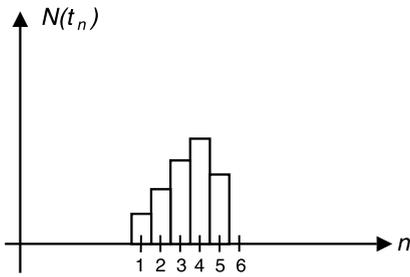


Fig. 3.9. Example of a histogram

The plot of (3.2) versus n is called a *histogram* (Fig. 3.9).

The number N_n is also called the *frequency of events*. When we divide it by the total number of events

$$N = \sum_n N_n, \quad (3.3)$$

we obtain the *relative frequency*

$$p_n = N_n/N. \quad (3.4)$$

We now remind the reader of the concept of the *average* of a quantity $x(t)$. For example, $x(t)$ may be the postsynaptic potential $x_j(t)$ measured at time t at neuron j , $j = 1, 2, \dots, J$. The ensemble average is defined by

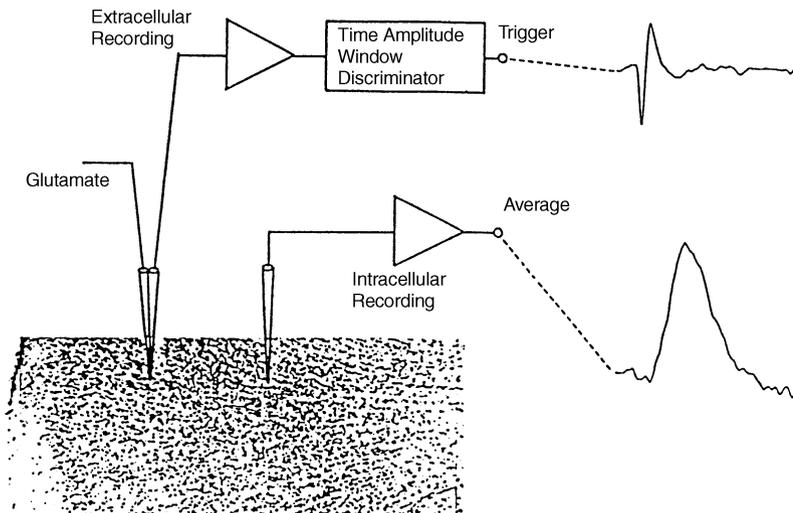


Fig. 3.10. A diagram illustrating the experimental arrangement for spike-triggered averaging in slice preparations of the visual cortex (after K. Toyama, in Krüger, 1991)

$$\langle x(t) \rangle = \frac{1}{J} \sum_{j=1}^J x_j(t). \quad (3.5)$$

This definition, which may either be applied to many neurons or to repeated experiments on the same neuron, leads to a difficulty in practical applications in neural science, because the individual curves $x_j(t)$ may be time-shifted with respect to each other so that the average is more or less wiped out, whereas the curves are of quite similar shape but differ just by time-shifts. Thus we need a marker, which can be given by a neuronal spike, so that the beginnings of the individual tracks refer to the same initial signal (Figs. 3.10 and 3.11). Such averages are called *spike-triggered averages*

$$\langle x(t) \rangle = \frac{1}{J} \sum_{j=1}^J x_j(t - \tau_{trigger}). \quad (3.6)$$

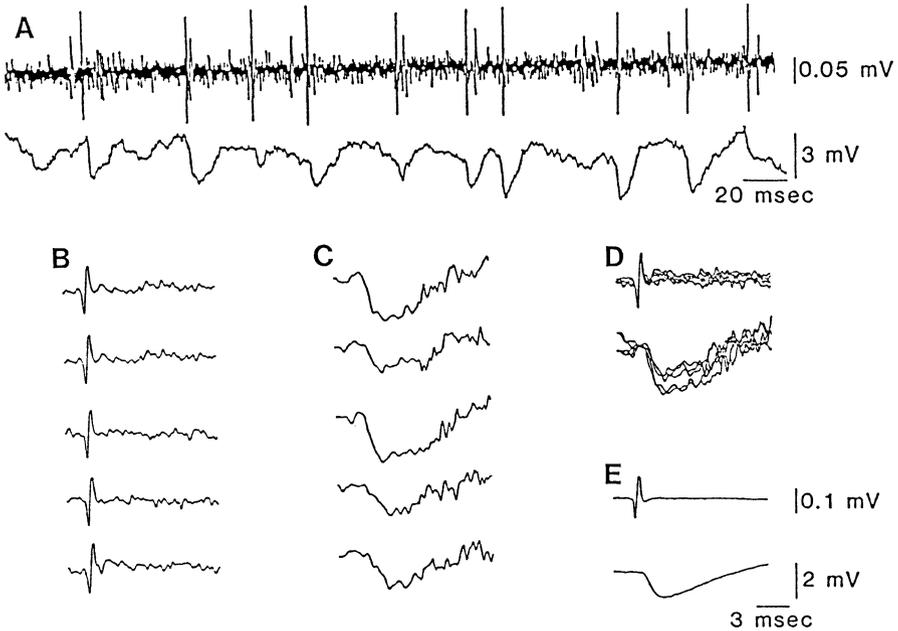


Fig. 3.11. Simultaneous recording from two visual cortical cells and spike triggered averaging.

A) Extracellular recording (*upper trace*) from juxta-granular (JG) layer; intracellular recording of postsynaptic potentials from the other cell in the supragranular layer (SG).

B) Extracellular impulses in a JG cell isolated by a time-amplitude window discriminator.

C) Intracellular traces in a SG cell triggered by the JG impulses.

D) and E) Superimposed and averaged traces in JG and SG cells (after Komatsu et al., 1988; reproduced by Toyoma, in Krüger, 1991)

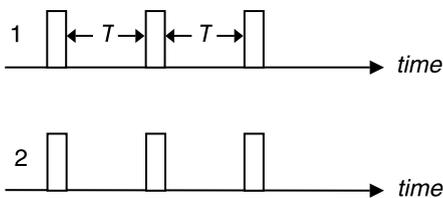


Fig. 3.12. Two synchronous spike trains with equal spike intervals T (schematic)

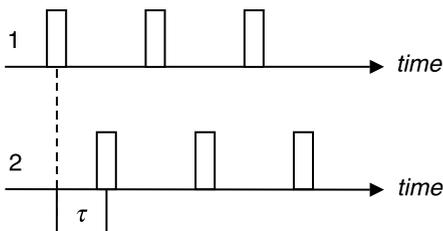


Fig. 3.13. Two time-shifted spike trains with equal spike intervals (schematic)

We now come to the central point of this section, namely how to deal with *correlations*. Let us consider the example of two neurons 1 and 2, which both produce spike trains (see Fig. 3.12). In the special case where the trains are regular and coincide, we have perfect *synchrony* or perfect correlation. If, on the other hand, the two spike trains don't perfectly coincide or don't coincide at all, the correlation is diminished. Clearly, the number of *coincidences* of spikes during the observation time t_{obs} is a measure of the correlations. As shown in Fig. 3.13, there may be no coincidences at all between the two time series, but there are coincidences if the time series are shifted with respect to each other by a time delay τ . Thus it suggests itself to consider the number of coincidences as a function of τ and plot this number N_τ^c against τ . In this way, we obtain a histogram that is also called a *correlogram*. Such a correlogram is evaluated according to the example of finite spike trains as shown in Fig. 3.14.

Let us study, as a further example, the correlogram that refers to a spike train and a signal that consists of many uncorrelated spikes so that practically a constant signal results. In the present context, this signal may stem from a *pool* of neurons. If the spike train and the constant signal last over a time

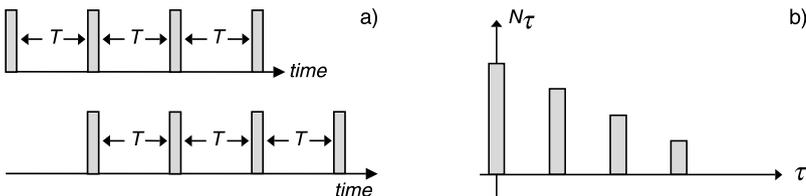


Fig. 3.14. **a)** Two time-shifted spike trains with equidistant spikes and finite length (schematic); **b)** Correlogram corresponding to a)

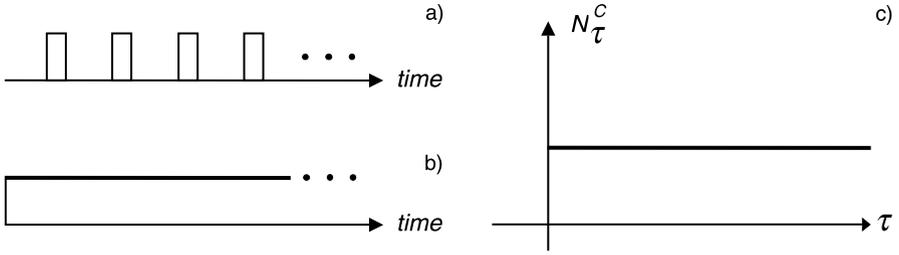


Fig. 3.15. a) infinite spike train with equidistant spikes (schematic); b) constant signal; c) Cross-correlogram corresponding to the above signals

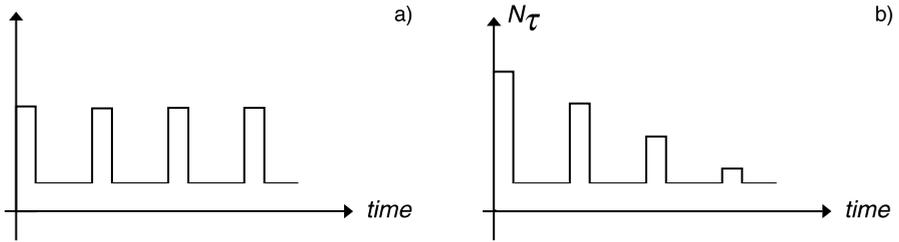


Fig. 3.16. a) Spike train of finite length with constant underground signal (mimicking noise) (schematic); b) (Auto-) Correlogram corresponding to a)

that is considerably larger than the delay τ , the number of coincidences is practically constant and the correlogram looks like that of Fig. 3.15c. An *autocorrelogram* is obtained if we correlate two timeshifted signals that stem from the *same pool*. If the signal is composed of regular spikes and the same background (Fig. 3.16a), the autocorrelogram of Fig. 3.16b results. Further important concepts are those of the *autocorrelation function* and the *cross-correlation function*. To pave a way to these concepts, we first show how we can calculate the number of coincidences between two spike trains in a more formal fashion. We divide the total observation time t_{obs} into intervals Δ so small that only *one* event (spike) or no spike falls into such an interval (Fig. 3.17a). We then state

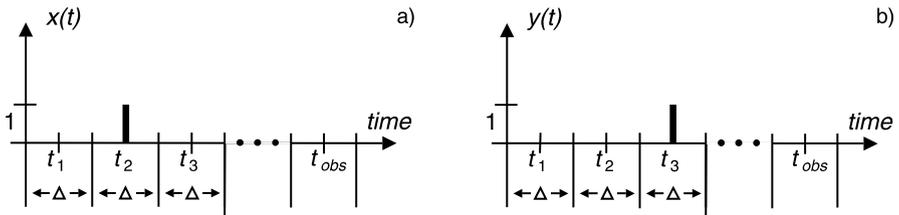


Fig. 3.17. Correlation of two spikes with heights $x(t)$ and $y(t)$, respectively. For details see text

$$x(t_n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if event in interval } \Delta \text{ around } t_n, \\ 0 & \text{if no event.} \end{cases} \quad (3.7)$$

If we observe a second spike train (Fig. 3.17b), we state correspondingly

$$y(t_n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if event in interval } \Delta \text{ around } t_n, \\ 0 & \text{if no event.} \end{cases} \quad (3.8)$$

Clearly, in the case of a coincidence in Δ , we obtain

$$x(t_n)y(t_n) = 1, \quad (3.9)$$

and

$$x(t_n)y(t_n) = 0 \quad (3.10)$$

otherwise. The total number of coincidences in observation time $t_{obs} = N\Delta$ is then obtained by the sum over t_n , i.e.

$$N^c = \sum_{n=1}^N x(t_n)y(t_n). \quad (3.11)$$

If $y(t)$ is time-shifted by an amount τ , the total number of coincidences in observation time t_{obs} becomes

$$N_\tau^c = \sum_{n=1}^N x(t_n)y(t_n + \tau), \quad (3.12)$$

where

$$y(t_n + \tau) = 0 \quad \text{if } t_n + \tau \text{ outside observation interval.} \quad (3.13)$$

In (3.11) and (3.12) the variables $x(t_n), y(t_n)$ can adopt only the values zero or one. If we allow these variables to adopt arbitrary real values, and normalize (3.11) and (3.12) properly, we arrive at the definition of the *crosscorrelation function* for discrete intervals

$$C(\tau) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{j=1}^N x(t_j)y(t_j + \tau). \quad (3.14)$$

Using $N = t_{obs}/\Delta$ and taking the limit $\Delta \rightarrow 0$, we may convert (3.14) into an integral

$$C(\tau) = \frac{1}{t_{obs}} \int_0^{t_{obs}} x(t)y(t + \tau)dt. \quad (3.15)$$

In the *stationary* case, (3.14) and (3.15) are independent of the position of the time window. More generally, when the time window starts at time t and extends to $t + t_{obs}$ in the nonstationary state, we obtain

$$C(t, \tau) = \frac{1}{t_{obs}} \int_t^{t+t_{obs}} x(\sigma)y(\sigma + \tau)d\sigma, \quad (3.16)$$

where C explicitly depends on t . In (3.14)–(3.16) the correlation function is defined by means of a time average, i.e. the sum or integral run over time. We may equally well define an ensemble average in analogy to (3.5) by means of

$$C(t, \tau) = \sum_j x_j(t)y_j(t + \tau). \quad (3.17)$$

The auto-correlation function is obtained as a special case from (3.14)–(3.17) by putting $y(t) = x(t)$ or $y_j(t) = x_j(t)$.

3.4 Mesoscopic Neuronal Cooperativity

In this section we want to present some of the fundamental experimental results on the synchronization among groups of neurons. Such synchronizations were discovered by Walter Freeman in the olfactory bulb of rats, but particularly striking experiments were performed by Singer et al. as well as by Eckhorn et al. on the visual cortex of anaesthetized cats and later on awake monkeys. Let us quote the discoverers. Singer (1991): “We have discovered that a large fraction of neurons in the cat striate cortex engage in oscillatory activity in a frequency range of 40 to 60 Hz when activated with light stimuli to which the neurons are tuned (Gray and Singer, 1987; Gray and Singer, 1989). This phenomenon is illustrated in Fig. 3.18. Units close enough to be recorded with a single electrode, if responsive to the same stimulus, always synchronize their respective oscillatory responses. In most instances, oscillatory responses are also in phase for neurons aligned along the vertical axis of a cortical column. Of particular interest in the present context is the finding that the oscillatory responses can also synchronize over considerable distances across spatially separate columns (Gray et al., 1989) and even between cortical areas (Eckhorn et al., 1988). Thus far, three parameters have been identified which determine the degree of synchrony within area 17: the distance between the units, the similarity of their orientation preference, and the coherence of the stimulus itself. When neurons are less than 2 mm apart, in which case the receptive fields are usually overlapping, they always synchronize their oscillatory responses when they show the same orientation preference, and they often synchronize even if the orientation preferences differ, as long as these differences are sufficiently small to allow activation of both neuron clusters with a single stimulus. At larger distances, when the receptive fields are no longer overlapping, cell clusters tend to synchronize their oscillatory responses only when they have similar orientation preferences and/or are activated by stimuli that have the same orientation and that move in the same direction. In such cases correlation breaks down when the three

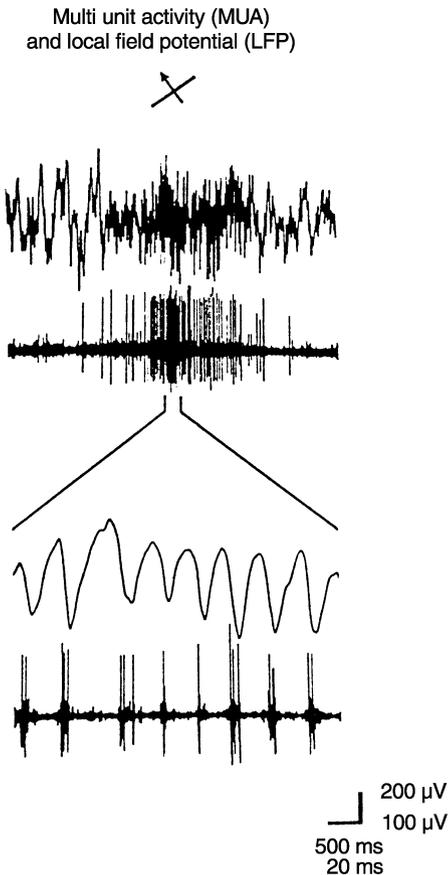


Fig. 3.18. Time series of multiunit activity (MUA) and local field potential (LFP) in the first and second row, respectively. The *lower two rows* show an enlarged section. The MUA and LFP responses were recorded from area 17 in an adult cat due to the presentation of an optimally oriented light bar moving across the receptive field. Oscilloscope records of a single trial showing the response of the preferred direction of movement. In the *upper two traces* at a slow time scale the onset of the neuronal response is associated with an increase in high-frequency activity in the LFP. The *lower two traces* display the activity of the peak of the response at an expanded timescale. Note the presence of rhythmic oscillations in the LFP and MUA (35–45 Hz) that are correlated in phase with the peak negativity of the LFP. Upper and lower voltage scales are for the LFP and MUA, respectively (from Gray and Singer, 1989)

stimuli pass in opposite directions over the two receptive fields and reaches its maximum when both neuron clusters are activated with a single continuous stimulus (Gray et al., 1989).

This phenomenon is illustrated in Fig. 3.19. Under each of the three stimulation conditions, the autocorrelations show a periodic modulation indicating that the local responses are oscillatory. However, when the two stimuli move in opposite directions, where they are perceived as two independent contours, the cross correlation function is flat implying that the respective oscillatory responses have no consistent phase relation. When the two stimuli move in the same direction, where they are perceived as related, the cross correlogram shows a periodic modulation indicating that the respective oscillatory responses are in phase. Synchronization improves further when the two stimuli are replaced by a single bar of light. This can be inferred from the deep modulation of the oscillatory cross correlogram in Fig. 3.19. Interestingly, if cross correlograms are periodically modulated, they are always centered

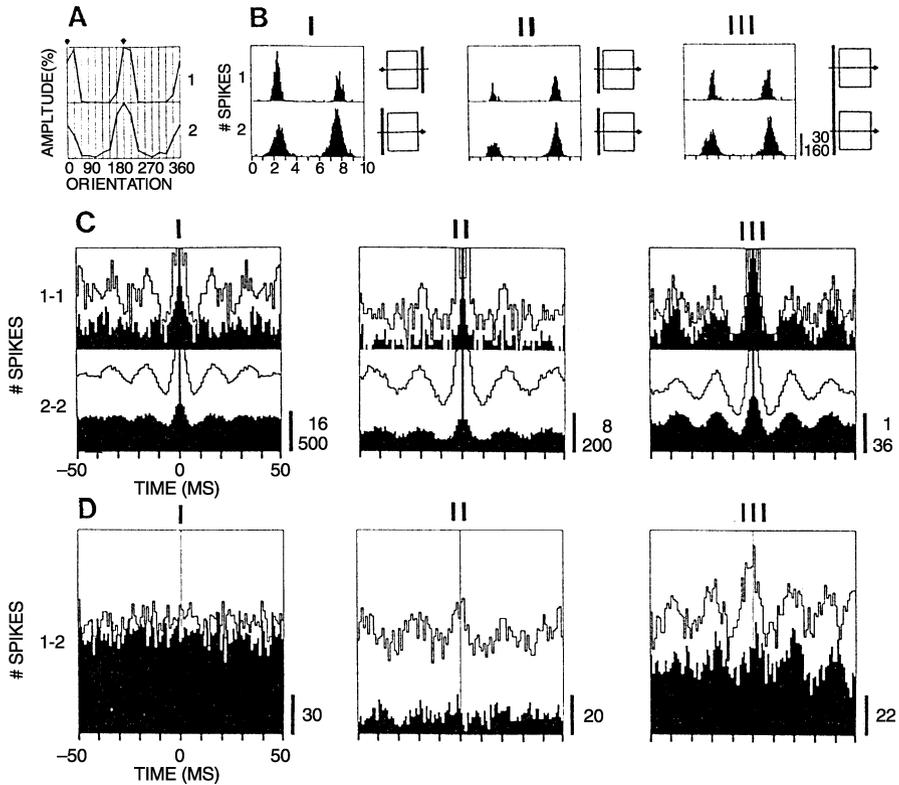


Fig. 3.19. Long range of oscillatory correlations reflect global stimulus properties. **A:** Orientation tuning curves of neuronal responses recorded by two electrodes (1,2) separated by 7 mm show a preference for vertical light bars (0 and 180°) at both recording sides.

B: Post-stimulus time histograms of the neuronal responses recorded at each site for each of three different stimulus conditions: (I) two light bars moved in opposite directions, (II) two light bars moved in the same direction and (III) one long light bar moved across both receptive fields. A schematic diagram of the receptive field locations and the stimulus configuration used is displayed to the right of each post-stimulus time histogram. **C, D:** autocorrelograms (C, 1-1, 2-2) and cross-correlograms (D, 1-2) computed for the neuronal responses at both sides (1 and 2 in A and B) for each of the three stimulus conditions (I, II, III) displayed in B. For each pair of correlograms, except the two displayed in C (I, 1-1) and D (I), the second direction of stimulus movement is shown with unfilled bars. Numbers on the vertical calibration correspond to the number of coincident events (spikes) in the respective auto- and crosscorrelograms (from Gray et al., 1989)

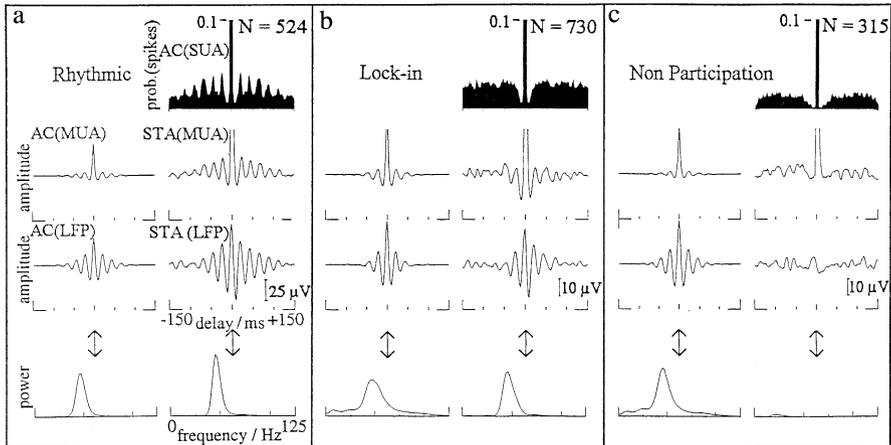


Fig. 3.20. The experiments by Eckhorn et al. were performed by showing a moving grid instead of the moving bar. The authors distinguish between three types of coupling dynamics, based on their observations of single cell spikes and oscillatory population activity of LFP and MUA in cats (Eckhorn and Obermueller, 1993) and monkey visual cortex (Frien et al., 1994) as well as on related neural network simulations (Juergens and Eckhorn, 1997).

- 1) rhythmic states. Single cell spike patterns had significant rhythmic modulation and spikes were significantly correlated with oscillatory population activity.
- 2) lock-in states. Rhythmic modulation was not present in single cell spike patterns, while spikes were significantly correlated with oscillatory population activity.
- 3) non-participation states. Rhythmic modulation was absent in spike trains and in addition the spikes were not correlated with the actually present oscillatory population activity.

This figure shows the results for the three different states of single cell couplings with oscillatory population activities in the primary visual cortex:

a) rhythmic;

b) lock-in;

c) non-participation states of three different neurons.

AC: autocorrelation histograms (correlograms) of single cell spikes (SUA), of multiple unit activity (MUA) and of local field potential (LFP). STA denotes spike-triggered averages of multiple unit activity or local field potentials. According to the classification, STAs have oscillatory modulations in the rhythmic and lock-in states and lack such modulations in the non-participation state. Note that in the rhythmic state (a) the single cell correlogram (*top*) is clearly modulated at 44 Hz, while in the lock-in (b) and the non-participation states (c) rhythmic modulations in the range 35–80 Hz are not visible (by definition).

Lower row of panels: power spectra for the above row of correlograms (figure modified from Eckhorn and Obermueller, 1993)

around zero phase angle. This indicates that oscillations tend to synchronize in phase if they synchronize at all”.

Eckhorn (2000) describes his experiments as follows: “Our experimental evidence is based on multiple microelectrode recordings from the visual cortex of anaesthetized cats and awake monkeys. We have used local population activities (multiple unit spike activity (MUA)) and local slow-wave field potentials (1:150 Hz) (LFP)) for the analysis of cortical synchrony, because they comprise the synchronized components of local populations (e.g. Eckhorn, 1992). In particular, LFPs are a local weighted average of the dendro-somatic postsynaptic signals, reflecting mainly the synchronized components at the inputs of the population within approximately 0.5 mm of the electrode tip (Mitzdorf, 1987). MUAs on the other hand, comprise, in their amplitudes, the simultaneity of spikes occurring at the outputs of a local population within approximately 0.05 mm of an electrode tip (Legatt et al., 1980, Gray et al., 1995). Both population signals are more suitable for detecting correlations among dispersed cortically recording locations than are single unit spike trains (Eckhorn et al., 1988, 1990, Eckhorn, 1992, Gray et al., 1989, 1990; Engel et al., 1990, 1991). Higher numbers of neurons contribute to LFP and to MUA due to their shallow spatial decay (Legatt et al., 1980; Mitzdorf, 1987)”.

Clearly, both from the experimental and theoretical point of view, it will be ideal to measure the correlation between spike trains of two single cells. Under present experimental conditions the probability of finding such significantly coupled spike trains is, however, small. However, according to Eckhorn, the easier finding of cooperating neural assemblies was dramatically increased by recording neural mass signals, such as MUA and LFP in parallel with single unit spike trains. This *triple recording* from each electrode opened up for the researchers the opportunity to investigate neural couplings on different levels of organization and specificity, and analyze all possible combinations of interactions between the different signal types. By these means, the researchers can study the interactions between single neurons, possessing well-defined tuning properties, the average mass activity of the local dendritic slow-wave potentials (LFPs), and the spike activity of the local assembly (multiple unit activity MUA). Thus, correlations between the mass activities of the same or different types were evaluated. Using these different signal combinations, the researchers generally found significant and often strong signal correlations. Figures 3.18, 3.20 and 3.21 present typical results of Gray et al. and Singer et al. on the one hand, and Eckhorn et al. on the other.

After these fundamental discoveries, many further experiments were performed by Eckhorn and Singer and their groups, as well as by other researchers, but for our purpose it is sufficient to have characterized the basic phenomenon.

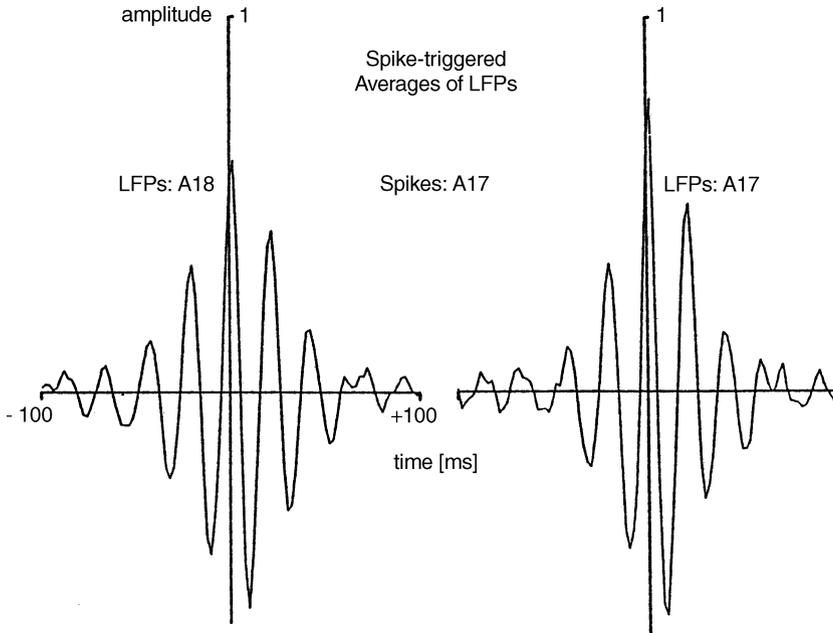


Fig. 3.21. Correlation between LFP oscillations and single cell spikes (SUA), calculated as spike-triggered average (STA) of LFPs normalized to the number of spikes and the energy of the respective LFPs. Negative LFP values plotted upwards; average oscillation frequency about 45 Hz. Spikes and LFPs were recorded in area 17 with the same electrode (right STA), and LFPs with another electrode in area 18 (left STA); i.e. the right STA shows the correlation between a single area 17 cell spike train and the LFPs from the direct neighborhood, while the left STA shows the correlation between the same area 17 cell and LFPs from area 18. (A 17 cell and A 18 receptive fields overlapped; stimulus: grating 0.7 cycles/ $^{\circ}$ drifting at 8 $^{\circ}$ /s in and against preferred direction of cells in the area 17/area 18 recording positions.) (From experiments of R. Eckhorn, M. Munks, W. Kruse and M. Brosch quoted in Eckhorn, 1991)

Before I present several models of neural nets in which synchronization between the individual neurons may happen, I will outline important theoretical concepts and tools that will be needed in Part III in particular.

4. Spikes, Phases, Noise: How to Describe Them Mathematically? We Learn a Few Tricks and Some Important Concepts

In this chapter we present the ingredients that we will need to formulate our model on pulse-coupled neural networks. There are two ways of reading this chapter. The speedy reader will read Sect. 4.1 that shows how to mathematically describe spikes (or short pulses). Section 4.4 deals with a simple model of how the conversion of axonal spikes into dendritic currents at a synapse can be modeled. Finally, we will need the fundamental concept of phase that will be presented in Sects. 4.9.1 and 4.9.2. Combined with a knowledge of Chaps. 3 and 3 the reader will then easily understand the *lighthouse model* of Chap. 5 and its extensions. Later he or she may like to return to read the other sections of Chap. 4.

I personally believe that there is another class of readers who appreciate the systematic exposition and they will read all sections of Chap. 4. They will find details on how to solve the model equations (Sects. 4.2 and 4.3), how to model important phenomena of noise (Sects. 4.4–4.8), and how to extract phases from experimental data (Sect. 4.9).

4.1 The δ -Function and Its Properties

In this section we want to find a way to describe short pulses or, to use a different word, spikes. To this end, we will use an idealization that leads us to the δ -function originally introduced by Dirac. Let us first consider a pulse that has the form of a Gaussian bell-shaped curve (see Fig. 4.1). It is described

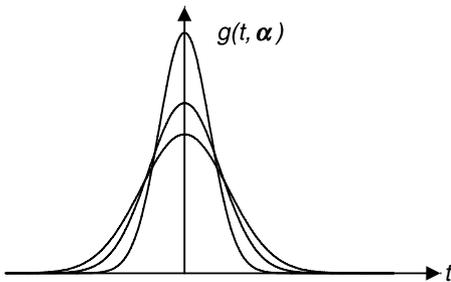


Fig. 4.1. The Gauss-functions $g(t, \alpha) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi\alpha}} e^{-t^2/\alpha}$ for three different values of α . The smaller α , the higher the peak

by the function

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi\alpha}}e^{-t^2/\alpha}, \quad (4.1)$$

where the factor in front of the exponential function serves for the normalization of (4.1)

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi\alpha}}e^{-t^2/\alpha} dt = 1, \quad (4.2)$$

i.e. the area under the pulse is equal to unity. Now let us try to make this pulse shorter and shorter. Mathematically this is achieved by letting

$$\alpha \rightarrow 0. \quad (4.3)$$

Clearly, then the pulse becomes so short that outside of $t = 0$ it vanishes, whereas at $t = 0$ it still remains normalized according to (4.2). This leads us to the definition of the δ -function

$$\delta(t) = 0 \quad \text{for } t \neq 0, \quad (4.4)$$

$$\int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \delta(t) dt = 1, \quad (4.5)$$

where ϵ may be arbitrarily small (Fig. 4.2). Whereas it does not make sense to put $\alpha = 0$ in (4.1), the δ -function defined by the limit (4.3) does make sense, though only under an integral. Let us study a few properties of that function. Instead of centering the pulse around $t = 0$, we can center it around any other time t_0 (Fig. 4.3) so that (4.4) and (4.5) are transformed into

$$\delta(t - t_0) = 0 \quad \text{for } t \neq t_0, \quad (4.6)$$

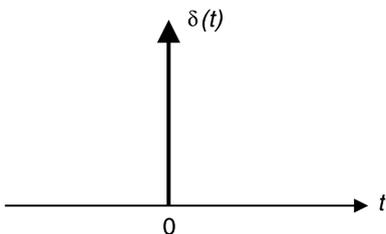
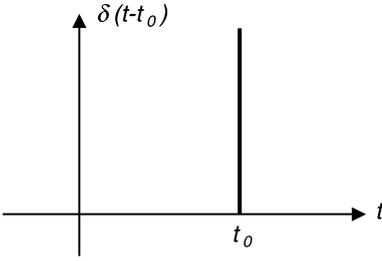


Fig. 4.2. δ -function located at $t = 0$

**Fig. 4.3.** δ -function located at $t = t_0$

and

$$\int_{t_0-\epsilon}^{t_0+\epsilon} \delta(t-t_0) dt = 1. \quad (4.7)$$

To show the equivalence of (4.6) and (4.7) with (4.4) and (4.5), we just have to introduce a new variable

$$t - t_0 = s, \quad (4.8)$$

and change the limits of the integral

$$t = t_0 \pm \epsilon \quad (4.9)$$

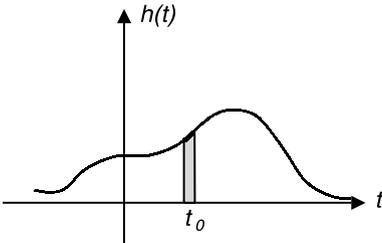
accordingly, which yields

$$s = \pm \epsilon, \quad (4.10)$$

so that we finally transform (4.7) into

$$\int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \delta(s) ds = 1, \quad (4.11)$$

which is, of course, identical with (4.5). The particular properties of the δ -function lead to a number of quite useful formulas. If $h(t)$ is a continuous

**Fig. 4.4.** Illustration of (4.13)

function, then (Fig. 4.4)

$$\int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} h(t)\delta(t)dt = h(0), \quad (4.12)$$

$$\int_{t_0-\epsilon}^{t_0+\epsilon} h(t)\delta(t-t_0)dt = h(t_0). \quad (4.13)$$

We leave it to the reader as an exercise to derive these formulas. We can also define temporal derivatives of the δ -function, again by means of an integral. (In this book, in most cases we abbreviate temporal derivatives, such as dh/dt , by \dot{h} .) The following formula holds

$$\int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} h(t)\dot{\delta}(t)dt = -\int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \dot{h}(t)\delta(t)dt = -\dot{h}(0), \quad (4.14)$$

which may be easily proved by a partial integration of the l.h.s. of (4.14). Another interesting property of the δ -function results when we consider the integral

$$H(T) = \int_{-\infty}^T \delta(t)dt = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } T < 0 \\ 1 & \text{for } T > 0 \end{cases}, \quad (4.15)$$

which we may supplement if needed by the definition

$$H(T) = \frac{1}{2} \text{ for } T = 0. \quad (4.16)$$

The function $H(T)$ defined by (4.15) and (4.16) is a step function that is also called Heaviside function (Fig. 4.5).

Let us now study the property of a δ -function in which its argument t is replaced by ct

$$\int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \delta(ct)dt. \quad (4.17)$$

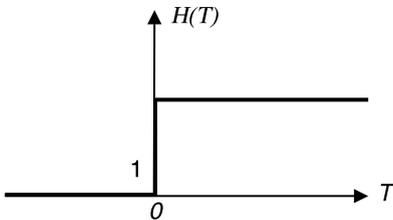


Fig. 4.5. The Heaviside (step-) function $H(T)$

Making the substitution

$$ct = s \quad (4.18)$$

so that

$$dt = \frac{1}{c} ds, \quad (4.19)$$

and replacing the boundaries of the integral

$$t = \pm\epsilon \quad (4.20)$$

by

$$s = \pm c\epsilon, \quad (4.21)$$

we readily obtain

$$\int_{-c\epsilon}^{c\epsilon} \delta(s) \frac{1}{c} ds = \frac{1}{c}. \quad (4.22)$$

It is now a simple exercise to combine the properties (4.6) and (4.17) to study

$$\int_{T_1}^{T_2} \delta(ct - t_0) dt, \quad (4.23)$$

where we will assume $c > 0$. Then we use the new variable s by means of

$$ct - t_0 = s. \quad (4.24)$$

It then follows that

$$\int_{-\infty}^T \delta(ct - t_0) dt = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } T < t_0/c \\ 1/c & \text{for } T > t_0/c \\ 1/(2c) & \text{for } T = t_0/c. \end{cases} \quad (4.25)$$

The δ -functions in (4.6), (4.17) and (4.23) are special cases of a δ -function, which itself depends on a function of time. We call this function $\phi(t)$, because in our neural models it will have the meaning of a phase (see Sect. 4.9 and Fig. 4.6). Let us study

$$\int_{t_1}^T \delta(\phi(t)) dt. \quad (4.26)$$

We assume that

$$\text{for } t_1 \leq t \leq T \quad \text{the only zero of } \phi(t) \text{ is at } t = t_0, \quad (4.27)$$

as also

$$\frac{d\phi(t_0)}{dt} \equiv \dot{\phi}(t_0) \neq 0 \quad (4.28)$$

and

$$\dot{\phi}(t_0) > 0. \quad (4.29)$$

These are actually conditions that are fulfilled in our later applications. How to proceed further is now quite similar to our above examples (4.7), (4.17) and (4.23). We introduce a new variable by means of

$$s = \phi(t) \quad (4.30)$$

so that

$$ds = \dot{\phi}(t) dt. \quad (4.31)$$

We further obtain the correspondence

$$\phi(t_0) \leftrightarrow s = 0. \quad (4.32)$$

By means of (4.30) and (4.31), (4.26) is transformed into

$$\int_{\phi(t_1)}^{\phi(T)} \delta(s) \frac{1}{\dot{\phi}(t(s))} ds, \quad (4.33)$$

where we note

$$\dot{\phi}(t(0)) = \dot{\phi}(t_0). \quad (4.34)$$

We further assume (which actually follows from (4.27)–(4.29))

$$\phi(t_1) < \phi(T), \quad (4.35)$$

so that our final result for (4.26) reads

$$\int_{t_1}^T \delta(\phi(t)) dt = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } T < t_0, \\ 1/\dot{\phi}(t_0) & T > t_0 \end{cases} \quad (4.36)$$

and

$$= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{\dot{\phi}(t_0)} \text{ for } T = t_0. \quad (4.37)$$

Because of the occurrence of the factor $\dot{\phi}$ in (4.36), the δ -function depending on $\phi(t)$ is rather difficult to handle in our later applications. For this reason, we define a new function

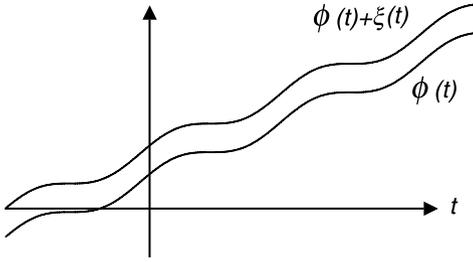


Fig. 4.6. Example of variation of the phases $\phi(t)$ and $\phi(t) + \xi(t)$ as functions of time t

$$f(t) = \delta(\phi(t))\dot{\phi}(t), \tag{4.38}$$

which, when replacing the original δ -function, yields

$$\int_{t_0-\epsilon}^{t_0+\epsilon} f(t)dt \equiv \int_{t_0-\epsilon}^{t_0+\epsilon} \delta(\phi(t))\dot{\phi}(t)dt = 1, \tag{4.39}$$

and which, like the δ -function, represents a spike at $t = t_0$. In our neural models (see Chaps. 5 and 6), we will use (4.38) instead of the δ -function.

4.2 Perturbed Step Functions

As we will see later in our neural models, the generation of pulses may be perturbed so that their phases are shifted, or in other words so that $\phi(t)$ is replaced by $\phi(t) + \xi(t)$ (Fig. 4.6). We then will have to study how big the change of the step function (4.15) (Heaviside function) is when we use the *spike function* (4.38) instead of the δ -function in (4.15). To this end, we treat the expression

$$G(T) = \int_{t_1}^T \delta(\phi(t) + \xi(t))(\dot{\phi}(t) + \dot{\xi}(t))dt - \int_{t_1}^T \delta(\phi(t))\dot{\phi}(t)dt. \tag{4.40}$$

Repeating all the steps we have done before with respect to the two integrals in (4.40), we readily obtain

$$G(T) = \int_{\phi(t_1)+\xi(t_1)}^{\phi(T)+\xi(T)} \delta(s)ds - \int_{\phi(t_1)}^{\phi(T)} \delta(s)ds \equiv I_1 - I_2. \tag{4.41}$$

By means of Figs. 4.7–4.10 we can easily deduce the properties of $G(T)$. Let us start with the second integral in (4.41) and call it I_2 . We assume that its lower limit is negative. Then I_2 is a step function with its step at $s = \phi(T) = 0$ (Fig. 4.8).

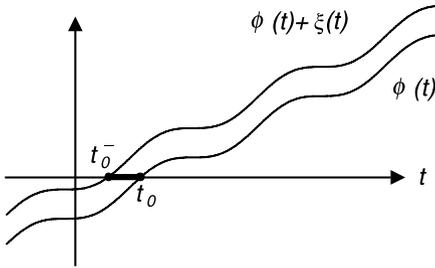


Fig. 4.7. Definition of the times t_0^- and t_0 as zeros of $\phi(t) + \xi(t)$ and $\phi(t)$, respectively

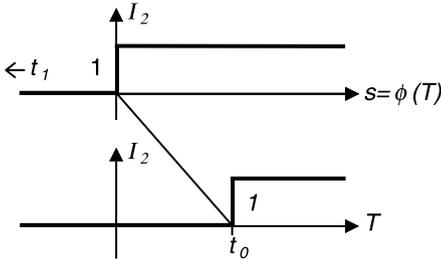


Fig. 4.8. Upper part: I_2 (see (4.41)) as a function of $s = \phi(T)$; Lower part: I_2 as a function of T

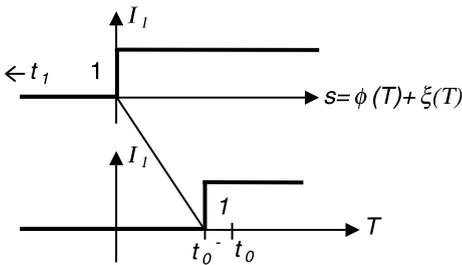


Fig. 4.9. Upper part: I_1 (see (4.41)) as a function of $s = \phi(T) + \xi(T)$; Lower part: I_1 as a function of T . Note the difference between the lower parts of Figs. 4.8 and 4.9

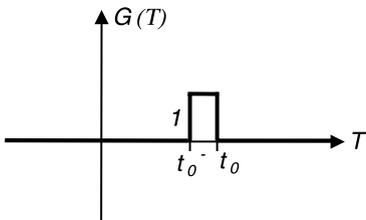


Fig. 4.10. $G(T) = I_1 - I_2$ results from the subtraction of the ordinate of Fig. 4.8 from that of Fig. 4.9

When we use the variable T instead of s , the step occurs at $T = t_0$, whereby

$$\phi(t_0) = 0 \tag{4.42}$$

(see also (4.27)). A similar consideration holds for the first integral in (4.40), I_1 . Its plot against the variable $s = \phi(T) + \xi(T)$ is shown in the upper part of Fig. 4.9; the jump occurs at $s = 0$. But when we use the variable T , the jump occurs at t_0^- , where

$$\phi(t_0^-) + \xi(t_0^-) = 0. \quad (4.43)$$

The function $G(T)$, being the difference between I_1 and I_2 , can be derived from the lower parts of Figs. 4.7 and 4.8 respectively, and is represented in Fig. 4.10. Thus

$$G(T) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } T < t_0^- \\ 1 & \text{for } t_0^- < T < t_0 \\ 0 & \text{for } T > t_0 \end{cases}. \quad (4.44)$$

We now turn to the explicit determination of t_0^- (see Fig. 4.7). This time t_0^- is defined by (4.43), whereas t_0 is defined by (4.42). In the following we will utilize the fact that in our practical applications the difference between t_0 and t_0^- is small. Subtracting (4.42) from (4.43) yields

$$\phi(t_0^-) - \phi(t_0) + \xi(t_0^-) = 0, \quad (4.45)$$

and using the Taylor expansion of $\phi(t)$ up to the second term

$$(t_0^- - t_0)\dot{\phi}(t_0) = -\xi(t_0^-). \quad (4.46)$$

Resolving (4.46) for the time difference yields

$$(t_0 - t_0^-) = \xi(t_0^-)/\dot{\phi}(t_0). \quad (4.47)$$

If $\xi(t)$ varies smoothly, we may use the further approximation

$$\xi(t_0^-) = \xi(t_0) + (t_0^- - t_0)\dot{\xi}(t_0). \quad (4.48)$$

Inserting this approximation into (4.47) yields

$$(t_0 - t_0^-)(1 - \dot{\xi}(t_0)/\dot{\phi}(t_0)) = \xi(t_0)/\dot{\phi}(t_0). \quad (4.49)$$

Provided

$$|\dot{\xi}(t_0)/\dot{\phi}(t_0)| \ll 1 \quad (4.50)$$

holds, we arrive at our final result

$$(t_0 - t_0^-) = \xi(t_0)/\dot{\phi}(t_0). \quad (4.51)$$

Let us now consider what happens when we perform an integral over the function $G(T)$ over the interval

$$T_1 \leq T \leq T_2. \quad (4.52)$$

In principle, we must differentiate between different cases, e.g.

$$T_1 < t_0^- < T_2 < t_0, \quad (4.53)$$

and further time-sequences. For many practical purposes it suffices, however, to treat the case

$$T_1 < t_0^- \leq t_0 < T_2. \quad (4.54)$$

Using (4.44), we obtain

$$\int_{T_1}^{T_2} G(T) dT = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } T_2 < t_0^- \leq t_0 \\ \int_{t_0^-}^{t_0} dT = t_0^- - t_0 & \text{for } T_1 < t_0^- \leq t_0 < T_2. \\ 0 & \text{for } T_1 > t_0^-, t_0 \end{cases} \quad (4.55)$$

This result reminds us of the property of a δ -function with one basic difference. Whereas the δ -function vanishes everywhere except at the point where its argument vanishes, the function $G(T)$ vanishes only outside the interval $t_0^- \dots t_0$, whereas within this interval it acquires the value unity. If the interval $t_0 - t_0^-$ is small, for many practical purposes we may replace the function $G(T)$ by a δ -function, where we have to add a weight factor that yields the same area. In other words, we replace the l.h.s. of (4.55) by

$$\int_{T_1}^{T_2} (t_0 - t_0^-) \delta(T - t_0) dT = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } T_2 < t_0 \\ (t_0 - t_0^-) & \text{for } T_1 < t_0 < T_2 \\ 0 & \text{for } T_1 > t_0 \end{cases} \quad (4.56)$$

with the properties presented on the r.h.s. of this equation. If $t_0 - t_0^-$ is small and the function $h(T)$ varies only a little in this interval, we may use the following approximation

$$\int_{T_1}^{T_2} h(T) G(T) dT \approx h(t_0) \int_{T_1}^{T_2} G(T) dT. \quad (4.57)$$

This means, jointly with (4.55), that $G(T)$ has practically the properties of the δ -function!

4.3 Some More Technical Considerations*

Readers who are not interested in mathematical details, can skip this section. In some practical applications that will follow in later chapters, it turns out that while

$$\phi(t) \text{ is continuous at } t = 0 \quad (4.58)$$

we must observe that

$$\dot{\phi}(t) \text{ is discontinuous at } t = 0. \tag{4.59}$$

This leads us to the question of how to evaluate

$$\delta(\phi(t))\dot{\phi}(t)? \tag{4.60}$$

To this end, we recall that the δ -function can be conceived as a specific limit $\alpha \rightarrow 0$ of

$$\sqrt{\frac{1}{\pi\alpha}} e^{-s^2/\alpha}. \tag{4.61}$$

Therefore we consider

$$\sqrt{\frac{1}{\pi\alpha}} e^{-g^2(t)/\alpha} \dot{\phi}(t) : \text{ for } \begin{matrix} t < 0 \\ t > 0 \end{matrix}. \tag{4.62}$$

Because we have to distinguish between positive and negative times, we perform the following split

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \dots ds = \int_{-\infty}^{0-} \dots ds + \int_{0+}^{\infty} \dots ds = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = 1. \tag{4.63}$$

Inserting (4.61) into the two parts yields the result as indicated on the r.h.s. of (4.63). In complete analogy, we may also perform the following split with the obvious result

$$\int_{-\epsilon}^{\epsilon} \delta(s) ds = \int_{-\epsilon}^{0-} \delta(s) ds + \int_{0+}^{\epsilon} \delta(s) ds = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = 1. \tag{4.64}$$

With these precautions in mind, we can repeat the above evaluations of Sect. 4.2. We need, however, some precautions in order to evaluate t_0^- , because in that evaluation the derivative $\dot{\phi}$ was involved. Repeating the above steps for the two regions for t , or correspondingly ξ , we obtain

$$(t_0^- - t_0) = -\xi(t_0^-) \cdot \begin{cases} \dot{\phi}_-(t_0)^{-1}, & \xi > 0 \\ \dot{\phi}_+(t_0)^{-1}, & \xi < 0 \end{cases}. \tag{4.65}$$

We leave it as an exercise to the reader to derive this result. In order to find a formula that combines the two cases of (4.65), we introduce the identities

$$\frac{1}{2}(\xi + |\xi|) = \begin{cases} \xi & \text{for } \xi > 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } \xi < 0 \end{cases} \tag{4.66}$$

and

$$\frac{1}{2}(\xi - |\xi|) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } \xi > 0 \\ \xi & \text{for } \xi < 0 \end{cases}. \tag{4.67}$$

Thus we can write (4.65) in the form

$$t_0^- - t_0 = -\dot{\phi}_-(t_0)^{-1} \left(\frac{1}{2}(\xi + |\xi|) \right) + \dot{\phi}_+(t_0)^{-1} \left(\frac{1}{2}(\xi - |\xi|) \right) \quad (4.68)$$

that can be rearranged to yield

$$t_0^- - t_0 = \xi(t_0^-) \frac{1}{2} \left(\dot{\phi}_-(t_0)^{-1} + \dot{\phi}_+(t_0)^{-1} \right) + |\xi(t_0^-)| \frac{1}{2} \left(\dot{\phi}_-(t_0)^{-1} - \dot{\phi}_+(t_0)^{-1} \right). \quad (4.69)$$

This relation can be considerably simplified if the second term in (4.69) is much smaller than the first one, i.e. provided

$$\frac{\dot{\phi}_+ - \dot{\phi}_-}{\dot{\phi}_+ + \dot{\phi}_-} \ll 1 \quad (4.70)$$

holds. We then obtain our final result

$$t_0^- - t_0 = \xi(t_0^-) \frac{1}{2} \left(\dot{\phi}_-(t_0)^{-1} + \dot{\phi}_+(t_0)^{-1} \right). \quad (4.71)$$

4.4 Kicks

Later in this book, we want to model the conversion of axonal spikes into dendritic currents. At the molecular level, this is quite a complicated process. But as discussed in Chap. 1, we want to study brain functions at and above the level of neurons. What happens in a dendrite before an axonal pulse arrives at a synapse? Clearly, there is no dendritic current; then the pulse generates a current, which finally is damped out. To model this phenomenon, we invoke the mechanical example of a soccer ball that is kicked by a soccer player and rolls over grass, whereby its motion will be slowed down. In this case, it is rather obvious how to describe the whole process. Our starting point is Newton's law according to which the velocity v of a particle with mass m changes according to the equation

$$m \frac{dv}{dt} = \text{force}. \quad (4.72)$$

In order to get rid of superfluous constants, at least for the time being, we put $m = 1$. The force on the r.h.s. consists of the damping force of the grass that we assume to be proportional to the velocity v and the individual kick of the soccer player. Because the kick lasts only for a short time, but is very strong, we describe it by means of a δ -function. In this way, we formulate the equation of motion as

$$\frac{dv(t)}{dt} = -\gamma v(t) + s\delta(t - \sigma), \quad (4.73)$$

where γ is the damping constant and s the strength of the kick. We assume that at an initial time $t_0 < \sigma$, the velocity of the soccer ball is zero

$$v(t_0) = 0. \quad (4.74)$$

For the time interval $t_0 \leq t < \sigma$, i.e. until the kick happens, the soccer ball obeys the equation

$$\frac{dv(t)}{dt} = -\gamma v(t). \quad (4.75)$$

Because it is initially at rest, it will remain so

$$v(t) = 0. \quad (4.76)$$

Now the exciting problem arises, namely to describe the effect of the kick on the soccer ball's motion. Since the definition of the δ -function implies that it appears under an integral, we integrate both sides of (4.73) over a short time interval close to $t = \sigma$

$$\int_{\sigma-\epsilon}^{\sigma+\epsilon} \frac{dv(t)}{dt} dt = \int_{\sigma-\epsilon}^{\sigma+\epsilon} -\gamma v(t) dt + \int_{\sigma-\epsilon}^{\sigma+\epsilon} s \delta(t - \sigma) dt. \quad (4.77)$$

Since integration is just the inverse process to differentiation, we may evaluate the l.h.s. immediately. Assuming that ϵ tends to zero, the first integral on the r.h.s. will vanish, while the second integral just yields s , because of the property of the δ -function. Thus (4.77) is transformed into

$$v(\sigma + \epsilon) - v(\sigma - \epsilon) = s, \quad (4.78)$$

and because before the kick the soccer ball was at rest, we obtain

$$v(\sigma + \epsilon) = s. \quad (4.79)$$

Now consider the time $t \geq \sigma$. Then (4.73) reads again (4.75), which possesses the general solution

$$v(t) = a e^{-\gamma t}, \quad (4.80)$$

as one can immediately verify by inserting (4.80) into (4.75). a is a constant that must be chosen appropriately, namely such that at time $t = \sigma$ the velocity becomes (4.79). This can be achieved by putting

$$a = s e^{\gamma \sigma} \quad (4.81)$$

so that the final solution to (4.75) with the initial condition (4.79) reads

$$v(t) = s e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)}, \quad t \geq \sigma. \quad (4.82)$$

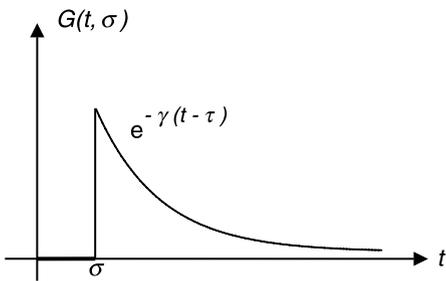


Fig. 4.11. The Green's function (4.83)

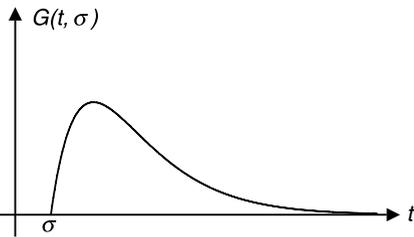


Fig. 4.12. The Green's function (4.84)

Setting $s = 1$, we obtain an important special case, namely that of a unit kick. In this case, v is denoted by $G(t, \sigma)$ and is called a *Green's function*. Obviously, this function is defined by

$$G(t, \sigma) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < \sigma \\ e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} & \text{for } t \geq \sigma \end{cases} \quad (4.83)$$

In the context of our book, where we are concerned with the generation of a dendritic current by a δ -pulse (spike), (4.83) provides us with a first answer: A current is immediately generated and then damped (Fig. 4.11). We will use this approach in Chaps. 5 and 6. A more refined approach takes into account that the current first increases linearly with time until it reaches its maximum after which it drops exponentially.

This behavior, shown in Fig. 4.12, is represented by

$$G(t, \sigma) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < \sigma \\ (t - \sigma)e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} & \text{for } t \geq \sigma \end{cases} \quad (4.84)$$

Using the techniques we just have learnt, we can easily show that (4.84) is the Green's function belonging to

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma\right)^2 G(t, \sigma) = \delta(t - \sigma) \quad (4.85)$$

(see the exercise below). In the literature, often the *normalization factor* γ^2 is added. The resulting function is called (Rall's) α -function (where formally α is used instead of γ). We will use this function in Chap. 7.

Exercise. Show that (4.84) satisfies (4.85).

Hint: Write

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma\right)^2 G \equiv \frac{d^2G}{dt^2} + 2\gamma\frac{dG}{dt} + \gamma^2G = \delta(t - \sigma) .$$

Convince yourself that (4.84) satisfies this equation for $t < \sigma$ and $t > \sigma$. For $\sigma - \epsilon < t < \sigma + \epsilon$ integrate both sides of (4.83) over this interval. Show that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \alpha^2 G(t, \sigma) dt = 1 .$$

4.5 Many Kicks

Let us start with the example of two consecutive kicks in which case the force exerted by the soccer player on the ball can be written in the form

$$F(t) = s_1\delta(t - \sigma_1) + s_2\delta(t - \sigma_2), \quad (4.86)$$

where the kicks are performed at times σ_1 and σ_2 with strengths s_1 and s_2 , respectively. The equation of motion then reads

$$\frac{dv(t)}{dt} = -\gamma v(t) + s_1\delta(t - \sigma_1) + s_2\delta(t - \sigma_2). \quad (4.87)$$

Because (4.87) is linear, for its solution we make the hypothesis

$$v(t) = v_1(t) + v_2(t). \quad (4.88)$$

Using the indices $j = 1, 2$, we require that v_j obeys the equation

$$\frac{dv_j}{dt} = \gamma v_j(t) + s_j\delta(t - \sigma_j). \quad (4.89)$$

We know already that its solution can be expressed by means of the Green's function (4.83) in the form

$$v_j(t) = s_j G(t, \sigma_j). \quad (4.90)$$

By use of (4.88), we obtain

$$v(t) = s_1 G(t, \sigma_1) + s_2 G(t, \sigma_2) \quad (4.91)$$

as the final solution to (4.87). Now it is an obvious task to treat many kicks, in which case the forces are composed of many contributions in the form

$$F(t) = \sum_{j=1}^N s_j \delta(t - \sigma_j), \quad (4.92)$$

and by analogy to (4.91) we obtain the final result (Fig. 4.13)

$$v(t) = \sum_{j=1}^N s_j G(t, \sigma_j). \quad (4.93)$$

Let us make a final generalization in which case the kicks are continuously exerted on the soccer ball. In this case, the force can be written as an integral in the form

$$F(t) = \int_{t_0}^T s(\sigma)\delta(t - \sigma)d\sigma \equiv \int_{t_0}^T F(\sigma)\delta(t - \sigma)d\sigma, \quad (4.94)$$

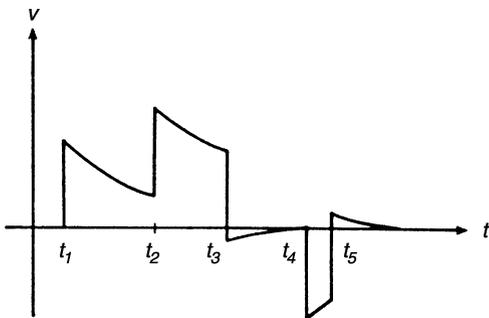


Fig. 4.13. The velocity $v(t)$ caused by δ -pushes at times $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots$ and damping

where we leave it as a little exercise to the reader to verify the second representation. In the following we will assume that T goes to infinity when the whole process is considered for an arbitrarily long time. The continuous version of the solution (4.93) obviously reads

$$v(t) = \int_{t_0}^T F(\sigma)G(t, \sigma)d\sigma. \quad (4.95)$$

Now it is useful to use the explicit form of the Green's function (4.83), which allows us to cast (4.95) into the final form

$$v(t) = \int_{t_0}^t F(\sigma)e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)}d\sigma. \quad (4.96)$$

We leave it as an exercise to the reader to verify that the solution (4.96) must be complemented by a solution of the homogeneous equation, i.e. with $F = 0$ if at the initial time t_0 the velocity did not vanish.

4.6 Random Kicks or a Look at Soccer Games

Quite often we observe in soccer games that the players kick the ball entirely at random as far as both the direction and timing are concerned. The reader may wonder what the study of soccer games will have to do with our task of modeling neurons, but I hope that will become evident in a few moments. We now denote the times at which the kicks occur by t_j and indicate their direction in a one-dimensional game by $(\pm 1)_j$, where the choice of the plus or minus sign is random, for instance, it is determined by throwing a coin. Thus the kicking force can be written in the form

$$F(t) = s \sum_j \delta(t - t_j)(\pm 1)_j, \quad (4.97)$$

where for simplicity we assume that all kicks have the same strength. When we observe many games, then we may perform an average over all these different performances. Let us denote this average by $\langle \dots \rangle$. To treat the averaging procedure in detail, we consider

$$\langle F(t) \rangle = s \langle \sum_j \delta(t - t_j)(\pm 1)_j \rangle . \quad (4.98)$$

Since the direction of the kicks is assumed to be independent of the time at which the kicks happen, we may split (4.98) into the product

$$(4.98) = s \langle \sum_j \delta(t - t_j) \rangle \langle (\pm 1)_j \rangle . \quad (4.99)$$

Because the kicks are assumed to happen with equal frequency in the positive and negative directions, we obtain a cancellation

$$\langle (\pm 1)_j \rangle = 0 . \quad (4.100)$$

Thus the average of $F(t)$ (4.98) vanishes,

$$\langle F(t) \rangle = 0 . \quad (4.101)$$

In order to characterize the strength of the force (4.97), we consider a quadratic expression in F . For later purposes we evaluate the following *correlation function for two times t, t'* , where by means of (4.97) we obtain

$$\langle F(t)F(t') \rangle = s^2 \langle \sum_j \delta(t - t_j)(\pm 1)_j \sum_k \delta(t' - t_k)(\pm 1)_k \rangle , \quad (4.102)$$

which in analogy with (4.98) can be split into a term that contains the directions of the kicks and another term. In this way, we are led to study

$$\langle (\pm 1)_j(\pm 1)_k \rangle = \langle (\pm 1)_j \rangle \langle (\pm 1)_k \rangle \quad \text{for } j \neq k , \quad (4.103)$$

where we could split the l.h.s. into a product because of the statistical independence of the kicks. Because of (4.100), the expressions in (4.103) vanish. On the other hand, we obviously obtain

$$\langle (\pm 1)_j(\pm 1)_k \rangle = \langle 1 \rangle = 1 \quad \text{for } j = k . \quad (4.104)$$

Thus the sums over j and k in (4.102) reduce to a single sum and we obtain

$$\langle F(t)F(t') \rangle = s^2 \langle \sum_j \delta(t - t_j)\delta(t' - t_j) \rangle \quad (4.105)$$

instead of (4.102). Usually the r.h.s. of (4.105) is evaluated by assuming a so-called Poisson process for the times of the kicks. For our purposes it

is sufficient to evaluate the r.h.s. by taking an average over the time T of a game, multiplied by the number N of kicks during T . Then we obtain

$$\langle \dots \rangle = N \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T \delta(t - \tau) \delta(t' - \tau) d\tau, \quad (4.106)$$

which can be evaluated to yield

$$\langle \dots \rangle = \frac{N}{T} \delta(t - t'). \quad (4.107)$$

Readers who are afraid of multiplying δ -functions and integrating over their product (at different times!) may be reminded that δ -functions can be approximated for instance by Gaussian integrals and then the result (4.107) can be easily verified. Putting $T/N = t_0$, which can be interpreted as a mean free time between kicks, and putting

$$s^2/t_0 = Q, \quad (4.108)$$

our final result reads

$$\langle F(t)F(t') \rangle = Q\delta(t - t_0). \quad (4.109)$$

4.7 Noise Is Inevitable.

Brownian Motion and the Langevin Equation

The model we have developed above may seem to be rather arbitrary. In this section we want to show that it has an important application to the physical world. The phenomenon we have in mind is Brownian motion. When a particle is immersed in a fluid, the velocity of this particle is slowed down by a force proportional to the velocity of this particle. When one studies the motion of such a particle under a microscope in more detail, one realizes that this particle undergoes a zig-zag motion. This effect was first observed by the biologist Brown. The reason for zig-zag motion is this: The particle under consideration is steadily pushed by the much smaller particles of the liquid in a random way. Let us describe the whole process from a somewhat more abstract viewpoint. Then we deal with the behavior of a system (namely the particle), which is coupled to a heat bath or reservoir (namely the liquid). The heat bath has two effects:

1. it decelerates the mean motion of the particle; and
2. it causes statistical fluctuations.

In the context of the previous section, the modelling of the whole process is rather obvious and was done in this way first by Langevin by writing down the following equation of motion for the particle, where we put $m = 1$. F is denoted as a fluctuating force and has the following properties:

1. its statistical average, i.e. (4.98), vanishes; and
2. its correlation function is given by (4.109).

For what follows, all we need are these two properties and the form of the solution to

$$\frac{dv(t)}{dt} = -\gamma v(t) + F(t), \tag{4.110}$$

which, quite generally, is given by (4.96). Let us determine the average velocity $\langle v(t) \rangle$, where the average is taken over all games. Because the integration in (4.96) and this average are independent of each other, we may perform the average under the integral, which because of (4.101) vanishes. Thus,

$$\langle v(t) \rangle = 0, \tag{4.111}$$

i.e. on the average the velocity vanishes, which stems from the fact that both directions are possible and cancel each other. Thus in order to get a measure for the size of the velocity as well as of its change in the course of time, we consider the quadratic expression in

$$\langle (v(t) - v(t'))^2 \rangle = \langle v^2(t) \rangle + \langle v^2(t') \rangle - 2 \langle v(t)v(t') \rangle. \tag{4.112}$$

As we will see later, the first terms are equal and even time-independent in the steady state. The important term of physical interest is the third expression in (4.112), which we now study. Using the explicit form of v , it reads

$$\langle v(t)v(t') \rangle = \left\langle \int_{t_0}^t d\sigma \int_{t_0}^{t'} d\sigma' e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} e^{-\gamma(t'-\sigma')} F(\sigma)F(\sigma') \right\rangle. \tag{4.113}$$

Taking the averaging procedure under the integral, using the property (4.109) and evaluating the integrals is now an easy matter (see exercise below). In the steady state, we may assume that $t + t' \rightarrow \infty$. In this case, the final result reads

$$\langle v(t)v(t') \rangle = (Q/2\gamma)e^{-\gamma|t-t'|} \tag{4.114}$$

and for equal times

$$\langle v(t)^2 \rangle = \frac{Q}{2\gamma}. \tag{4.115}$$

So far we have put the mass $m = 1$; it is a simple matter to repeat all the steps with $m \neq 1$ starting from Newton's equation. In such a case, the final result reads

$$\langle v(t)^2 \rangle = \frac{Q}{2\gamma m}. \tag{4.116}$$

Now the decisive step occurs, namely the connection with the real world. Multiplying (4.116) by $m/2$ on the l.h.s. we obtain the mean kinetic energy of the particle immersed in the liquid. Because of a fundamental law of thermodynamics, this energy is given by

$$\frac{m}{2} \langle v(t)^2 \rangle = \frac{1}{2} kT, \quad (4.117)$$

where k is Boltzmann's constant and T is the absolute temperature. Comparing (4.116) and (4.117), we obtain the following fundamental result derived by Einstein

$$Q = 2\gamma kT. \quad (4.118)$$

It tells us that whenever there is damping, i.e. $\gamma \neq 0$, then there are fluctuations Q . In other words, fluctuations or noise are inevitable in any physical system, which, of course, also applies to neurons. This derivation is not limited to our mechanical example. It is quite universal. An electric counterpart was studied experimentally by Johnson and theoretically by Nyquist. In a resistor, the electric field E fluctuates with a correlation function given by

$$\langle E(t)E(t') \rangle = 2RkT\delta(t - t'), \quad (4.119)$$

where R is the resistance of the resistor. This is the simplest example of a so-called dissipation-fluctuation theorem. If we Fourier analyse (4.119) and denote the Fourier transform of $E(t)$ by $E(\omega)$, (4.119) can be transformed into

$$\langle E^2(\omega) \rangle = RkT/\pi, \quad (4.120)$$

which is the *Nyquist theorem*. Quite clearly, when we want to formulate an appropriate theory of the action of neurons, we must take into account noise effects. But things are still more difficult and are surely not finally studied, because a neuron cannot be considered as a system in thermal equilibrium. Quite the contrary, it is a highly active system with noise still more pronounced.

Exercise. Evaluate (4.113) and verify (4.114).

4.8 Noise in Active Systems

4.8.1 Introductory Remarks

In the previous section we studied noise in systems that are in thermal equilibrium. As we noticed, the strength of the noise forces is quite universal, namely it depends only on the absolute temperature and on the damping

constant, be it in a mechanical, electrical, or any other physical system. While thermal noise is certainly present in neural systems, e.g. in dendrites, another important aspect must be taken into account. In order to be able to process information, neurons must be active systems into which energy is pumped. This occurs, of course, by metabolism. In physics, there exists a detailed theory of noise in active systems. It has been developed in the context of lasers, nonlinear optics, and other devices, and is based on quantum theory. It would be far beyond the scope of this book to present such a theory here. Furthermore, a detailed theory of noise sources in neural systems is presently lacking. For both these reasons, we present some basic ideas on how the fluctuating forces can be formulated and what their properties are. For more details we must refer the reader to the references.

4.8.2 Two-State Systems

As we have seen in Chap. 2, basic processes in neurons go on in particular at the synapses and axons. In both cases, fundamentally we have to deal with ion transport through channels in membranes. Let us consider a membrane channel with an ion as a two-state system, where the ion may be either inside or outside the membrane. We indicate these states by the indices 1 (inside) and 2 (outside). While a precise treatment must be left to quantum theory, it may suffice here to outline the basic concepts. The occupation number of the states 1 or 2 will be denoted by n_1 and n_2 , respectively. Because of transport through the membrane channel, these occupation numbers change in time and are described by the *rate equations*

$$\frac{dn_1}{dt} = -w_{21}n_1 + w_{12}n_2 + F_1(t) \quad (4.121)$$

and

$$\frac{dn_2}{dt} = w_{21}n_1 - w_{12}n_2 + F_2(t). \quad (4.122)$$

Here the *transition rates* w_{12} and w_{21} do not only depend on the temperature T , but also on the voltage across the membrane

$$w_{12}(V), w_{21}(V). \quad (4.123)$$

As may be shown, in order to secure a quantum mechanically consistent description, the fluctuating forces $F_j(t)$, $j = 1, 2$, must be included in the equations (4.121) and (4.122). As usual we may assume that the statistical averages vanish

$$\langle F_j(t) \rangle = 0, \quad j = 1, 2, \quad (4.124)$$

because otherwise we would have to add a constant term to (4.121) and (4.122). When we assume as usual that the fluctuations have a short memory, compared to the ongoing processes, we may assume that they are δ -correlated

$$\langle F_j(t)F_k(t') \rangle = Q_{jk}\delta(t-t'). \quad (4.125)$$

So far we have a formulation that is rather analogous to what we considered in the context of Brownian motion. The important difference, however, occurs with respect to the strengths of the fluctuations Q_{jk} . As it turns out, these quantities depend in a more intricate manner on the dynamics than in the case of Brownian motion, where only a damping constant appeared. In fact, as a detailed quantum mechanical calculation shows, the Q s are given by the relations

$$Q_{11} = Q_{22} = w_{21} \langle n_1 \rangle + w_{12} \langle n_2 \rangle \quad (4.126)$$

and

$$Q_{12} = Q_{21} = -w_{21} \langle n_1 \rangle - w_{12} \langle n_2 \rangle. \quad (4.127)$$

The average occupation numbers $\langle n_j \rangle$ obey the equations

$$\frac{d \langle n_1 \rangle}{dt} = -w_{21} \langle n_1 \rangle + w_{12} \langle n_2 \rangle \quad (4.128)$$

and

$$\frac{d \langle n_2 \rangle}{dt} = w_{21} \langle n_1 \rangle - w_{12} \langle n_2 \rangle. \quad (4.129)$$

Thus we note that the fluctuation strengths depend on the averaged occupation numbers, which may be time-dependent and which, as we have mentioned above, may depend on the voltage V across the membrane. Obviously, the noise sources of active systems are more complicated than those of systems in thermal equilibrium. The transition rates w_{21} and w_{12} may be either derived from a microscopic theory or can be introduced phenomenologically. In reality, a membrane contains many ion channels. Therefore, we want to study this case next.

4.8.3 Many Two-State Systems: Many Ion Channels

We distinguish the ion channels by an index μ so that we have to generalize the notation in the following obvious way

$$n_j \rightarrow n_{j,\mu}, \quad F_j \rightarrow F_{j,\mu}, \quad j = 1, 2. \quad (4.130)$$

In practical applications we will be concerned with the properties of the total fluctuating forces that are defined by

$$F_j(t) = \sum_{\mu} F_{j,\mu}. \quad (4.131)$$

Because of (4.124), the average vanishes

$$\langle F_j(t) \rangle = 0. \quad (4.132)$$

In general, one may assume that the fluctuating forces of the individual channels are statistically independent. Therefore, if we form

$$\langle F_j(t)F_k(t') \rangle = \left\langle \sum_{\mu} F_{j,\mu}(t) \sum_{\nu} F_{k,\nu}(t') \right\rangle, \quad (4.133)$$

we readily obtain

$$(4.133) = \sum_{\mu} \langle F_{j,\mu}(t)F_{k,\mu}(t) \rangle = \sum_{\mu} Q_{jk,\mu} \delta(t-t'), \quad (4.134)$$

where we made use of (4.125), then added to the fluctuation strength Q_{jk} of channel μ the corresponding index. In an obvious manner, the relation (4.126) generalizes to

$$Q_{jj,\mu} = w_{21} \langle n_1 \rangle_{\mu} + w_{12} \langle n_2 \rangle_{\mu}. \quad (4.135)$$

Introducing the total average number of the occupied states inside and outside the membrane, respectively, by

$$\sum_{\mu} \langle n_j \rangle_{\mu} = N_j, \quad (4.136)$$

we obtain the relation

$$\sum_{\mu} Q_{jj,\mu} = w_{21}N_1 + w_{12}N_2, \quad (4.137)$$

provided the transition rates of the channels under consideration can be considered as independent of the channel index μ . The relations (4.134) and (4.137) allow us to formulate our general result. The strength of the fluctuating forces is given by the sum of the number of total transitions per unit time out of the state 1 and the state 2, respectively. As we will see in a later chapter, the neural dynamics is determined by currents across the membrane. These currents are connected with the occupation numbers of the ion channels as introduced above by means of the relation

$$J = e \frac{dN_1}{dt}, \quad (4.138)$$

where e is the electric charge of the ion and J the electric current. With these currents also fluctuations are connected that can be determined by means of (4.138), (4.121), (4.122) and (4.131)–(4.137).

These hints may suffice here to give the reader an idea in which way fluctuating forces can be taken into account. For what follows, we need only the properties (4.132), (4.134) and (4.137).

Exercise. Determine $\langle J(t_1)J(t_2) \rangle$.

Hint: Solve (4.121) and (4.122) with $n_1 + n_2 = 1$. Use the results analogous to (4.96) and (4.113).

4.9 The Concept of Phase

The occurrence of (more or less) regular spikes in an axon can be considered as a periodic event. Periodic or at least rhythmic events can also be observed in electric and magnetic fields of the brain, as measured by EEG and MEG, respectively. Rhythmic activity can be found in local field potentials. In order to quantitatively deal with rhythms, the concept of phase is indispensable. In this section, we will first present some elementary considerations, then proceed to a more sophisticated treatment that will allow us to extract phases from experimental data.

4.9.1 Some Elementary Considerations

Let us consider one of the simplest periodic events, namely the movement of a pendulum (Fig. 4.14). If we displace a pendulum (a swing) and if there is no friction, it will undergo a periodic movement forever. For not too high amplitudes, the displacement can be written in the form

$$\text{displacement } x(t) = A \cos \omega t. \quad (4.139)$$

By differentiating x with respect to time, we obtain the velocity

$$\text{velocity } v(t) \equiv \dot{x}(t) = -A\omega \sin \omega t. \quad (4.140)$$

In these relations, we use the circular frequency that is related to the period of one oscillation T by means of

$$\text{circular frequency } \omega = 2\pi/T. \quad (4.141)$$

The displacement and velocity as described by (4.139) and (4.140) are chosen in such a way that the following initial conditions at time $t = 0$ are fulfilled

$$x(0) = A \quad (4.142)$$

and

$$\dot{x}(0) = 0. \quad (4.143)$$

By means of

$$\omega t = \phi, \quad (4.144)$$

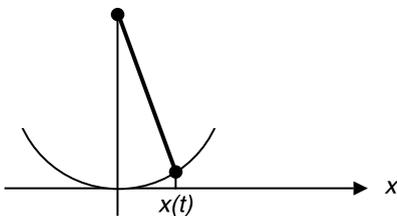


Fig. 4.14. Elongation $x(t)$ of a pendulum

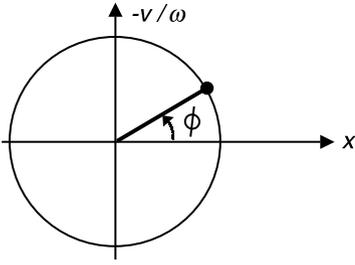


Fig. 4.15. Movement of the point $(x(t), -v(t)/\omega)$ on the orbit (here a circle) in the phase-plane. Note that the word “phase” has a double meaning: “phase-angle” ϕ as indicated in this figure, and “phase-plane” as “phase-space” in the sense of statistical physics, i.e. a space spanned by coordinates and impulses

we may define the phase ϕ so that the displacement can be written in the form

$$x(t) = A \cos \phi(t). \tag{4.145}$$

The phase ϕ can be easily visualized in two ways, either by the phase shift or by a plot in the so-called phase plane. Let us start with the latter. Here we consider a two-dimensional coordinate system, where the abscissa is the displacement and the ordinate the velocity (Fig. 4.15). In order to obtain a particularly simple situation, instead of the velocity, we rather plot its negative divided by the frequency ω . As one may easily deduce from (4.139) and (4.140), at each time t , $x(t)$ and $-v/\omega$ lie on a circle according to Fig. 4.15. This plot allows us to read off the phase, or in other words, the phase angle ϕ at each time instant. According to (4.144), the phase angle ϕ increases uniformly with velocity ω . The significance of the phase ϕ can also be explained by means of Fig. 4.16 and the concept of a phase shift. Thus instead of (4.139), we consider

$$x(t) = A \cos(\phi(t) + \phi_0) \tag{4.146}$$

which is plotted in Fig. 4.16 and compared with (4.139). The difference between the maxima of both curves is ϕ_0 , i.e. the phase-shift. In particular, we find that for

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_0 > 0, & \quad \text{maximum reached at earlier time, and} \\ \phi_0 < 0, & \quad \text{at later time.} \end{aligned} \tag{4.147}$$

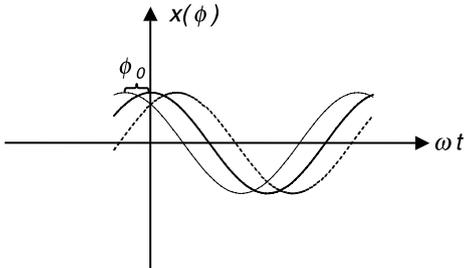


Fig. 4.16. Illustration of phase-shifts: solid line: $x = A \cos \omega t$, dashed line: $x = A \cos(\omega t - |\phi_0|)$; dotted line: $x = A \cos(\omega t + \phi_0)$

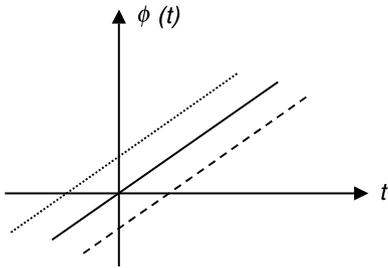


Fig. 4.17. Example of phase- (and frequency-) locking between three oscillators: *solid line*: $\phi = \omega t$, *dashed line*: $\phi = \omega t - |\phi_0|$, *dotted line*: $\phi = \omega t + \phi_0$

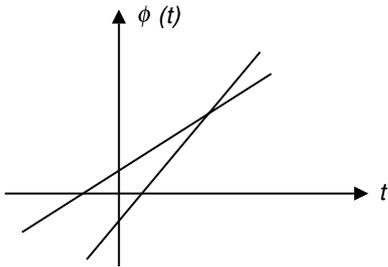


Fig. 4.18. Absence of frequency locking

Taking into account the phase-shift, we may write (4.146) more generally as (4.145), where now

$$\phi(t) = \omega t + \phi_0 \quad (4.148)$$

holds. The phase velocity is independent of ϕ_0 and reads

$$\dot{\phi}(t) = \omega = \text{const.} \quad (4.149)$$

Plotting $\phi(t)$ versus time t provides us with a set of parallel lines (Fig. 4.17). Such plots become useful when we compare the phases of two or several pendulums or oscillators. In the case of two of them, we have

$$x_1(t) = A_1 \cos \phi_1(t) \quad (4.150)$$

and

$$x_2(t) = A_2 \cos \phi_2(t). \quad (4.151)$$

Assuming that both ϕ s proceed at a constant speed, the plot of $\phi(t)$ versus time t provides us with two lines, according to Fig. 4.18. We speak of *frequency locking* if the two lines become parallel, i.e. if they have the same slope (Fig. 4.19).

If the vertical distance, i.e. the distance at every moment of time, between the two lines remains constant, we speak of *phase locking*. As we will see later, the concept of phase-locking is more general: At every moment of time the distance is the same, but the lines need not to be straight. Finally, we speak of *synchrony* if the two lines ϕ_1 and ϕ_2 coincide.

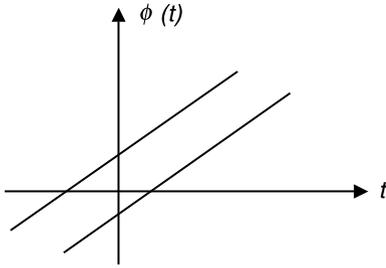


Fig. 4.19. Phase and frequency locking between two oscillators

4.9.2 Regular Spike Trains

While the example of the pendulum gives us a first insight into the significance of the phase, such harmonic oscillations are not the only examples where the concept of phase is highly useful. To illustrate this fact, let us consider regular spike trains, where Fig. 4.20 represents an example. The individual spikes or pulses may have a certain shape, but they may equally well be idealized by δ -functions as we have shown in Sect. 4.1. Now let us consider two spike trains that are plotted in Fig. 4.20. If both spikes occur with the same frequency ω but at different times, we observe a shift ϕ_0 between them, where ϕ_0 quite evidently plays again the role of a phase. If ϕ_0 remains the same over all pairs of spikes stemming from the two individual spike trains, we can again speak of phase-locking. Now let us go a step further, namely let us consider two spike trains, where the sequence of spikes is no more regular but may change either systematically or randomly. Then we may consider two neurons with such spike trains and observe that again the distance between two pairs of such spikes remains constant (Fig. 4.22). Again we may speak of phase-locking in spite of the fact that the frequencies vary.

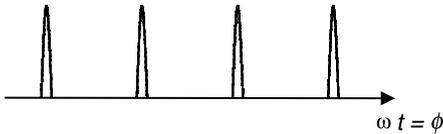


Fig. 4.20. Equidistant pulses seen as a function of phase ϕ

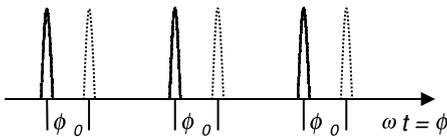


Fig. 4.21. Two equidistant time-shifted pulses seen as a function of phase ϕ

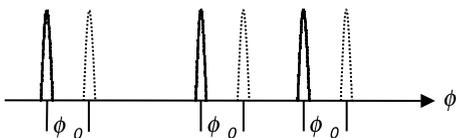


Fig. 4.22. *Solid lines:* An irregular spike train; *dashed line:* The same spike train, but time shifted. While there is no frequency locking, there is phase locking

As we have seen in Chap. 3, phase-locking and more specifically synchrony is an important issue in modern brain research. At the same time we realize that the concept of phase may be useful in harmonic motions, but also equally well in rhythmic motions in which the frequency varies but the relative phases remain constant. Thus it becomes an important problem to define phases in a general way and to devise methods for deriving them from experiments.

4.9.3 How to Determine Phases From Experimental Data? Hilbert Transform

When we measure the axonal pulse of a single neuron, the local field potentials of groups of neurons, or the EEG of still larger groups of them, in each case we have to analyse a certain quantity $x(t)$ that varies in the course of time, and we have to compare such a quantity with a corresponding quantity of another neuron, another group of neurons etc. in order to find out whether phase-locking occurs. There are at least two difficulties: the amplitude A that appears in (4.145) may be time-dependent and the signal x may be corrupted by noise. How can we nevertheless define the phase and furthermore extract it from experimental data? In this endeavour people have resorted to a mathematical tool, namely to the use of the complex plane. This concept is closely related to that of the phase plane used in Sect. 4.9.1. We start with two real variables $x(t)$ and $y(t)$ (for instance displacement and the velocity of a pendulum), use again x as the abscissa, but iy as ordinate, where i is the imaginary unit defined by $i = \sqrt{-1}$. Each point in this *complex plane* can be defined by means of the *complex* variable (see Fig. 4.23)

$$z(t) = x(t) + iy(t). \quad (4.152)$$

Introducing the distance r and the angle ϕ , we immediately find Fig. 4.24. According to the elementary theory of complex functions, $z(t)$ can be written by means of the distance r and the angle ϕ in the form

$$z(t) = r(t)e^{i\phi(t)}, \quad (4.153)$$

where e is the exponential function. The relation between (4.152) and (4.153) (see also Figs. 4.23 and 4.24) is given by

$$x(t) = r(t) \cos \phi(t) \quad (4.154)$$

and

$$y(t) = r(t) \sin \phi(t). \quad (4.155)$$

Equation (4.154) represents an obvious generalization of (4.145) to the case where the amplitude $r(t)$ is not necessarily constant and ϕ may change in the course of time other than in the simple way of (4.148). So far, so good; the difficulty rests on the fact that experimentally we know only x

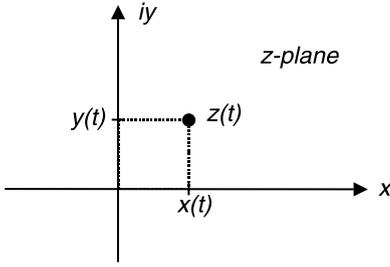


Fig. 4.23. The point $z = x + iy \equiv (x, y)$ in the complex plane

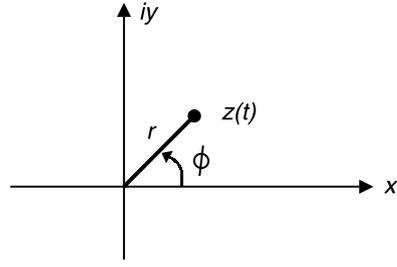


Fig. 4.24. Definition of phase ϕ and radius r in the complex plane of Fig. 4.23

but not y . Is there any way to construct, from the mere knowledge of x , also y , and thus z , and thus the phase angle ϕ ? As was found by the famous mathematician Hilbert, this can, indeed, be done. For the experts, we mention that x as measured experimentally must fulfill some specific preconditions, namely in the mathematical sense it must be smooth, i.e. continuously and piecewise differentiable. Let us consider a measurement interval T , which need not be the periodicity interval, however, but must be large enough. Then it is known that we may expand $x(t)$ as a Fourier series

$$x(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k \cos(\omega kt) + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_k \sin(\omega kt) \quad (4.156)$$

that can also be written in the form

$$x(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} c_k \cos(\omega kt + \phi_k) \quad (4.157)$$

(see exercises below). Can we derive from this relation one for y ,

$$y(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} c_k \sin(\omega kt + \phi_k) \quad (4.158)$$

by which in each individual term of (4.157) the \cos function is replaced by the \sin function? If we are able to do so, then we can form

$$z(t) \equiv x(t) + iy(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} c_k \left[\cos(\omega kt + \phi_k) + i \sin(\omega kt + \phi_k) \right], \quad (4.159)$$

which can be written in the form

$$z(t) = \sum_k c_k e^{i(k\omega t + \phi_k)} \quad (4.160)$$

by using again the relationships between (4.153), (4.154) and (4.155). Taking the real and imaginary parts of z , we then regain

$$x(t) = \operatorname{Re} z(t), \quad y(t) = \operatorname{Im} z(t). \quad (4.161)$$

In particular, knowing z , for instance according to (4.160), we may construct the phase angle according to (4.153) (see exercise below). Clearly, practically all we need to do is to invent a procedure that allows us to convert the cos function into the sin function

$$\cos(\Omega t + \phi) \rightarrow \sin(\Omega t + \phi). \quad (4.162)$$

Since it is sufficient to treat the special case

$$\cos t \rightarrow \sin t \quad (4.163)$$

we treat that case here and refer the reader with respect to the general case (4.162) to the exercises.

According to Hilbert, we consider

$$P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\cos \tau}{\tau - t} d\tau, \quad (4.164)$$

where the P in front of the integral refers to the principal value. Clearly, for $\tau = t$, the integrand diverges. According to the principal value, we cut that singularity out by defining

$$P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} ..d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{-\epsilon} ..d\tau + \int_{\epsilon}^{+\infty} ..d\tau, \quad (4.165)$$

i.e. we cut out the immediate surrounding of the singularity taking finally the limit $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$. In (4.164) we introduce a new variable by means of

$$\tau - t = \sigma \quad (4.166)$$

so that we obtain

$$P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\cos(\sigma + t)}{\sigma} d\sigma. \quad (4.167)$$

In it we use an elementary formula from trigonometry, namely

$$\cos(\sigma + t) = \cos \sigma \cos t - \sin \sigma \sin t \quad (4.168)$$

so that we can cast (4.167) into the form

$$P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\cos \sigma}{\sigma} d\sigma \cos t - P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\sin \sigma}{\sigma} d\sigma \sin t. \quad (4.169)$$

Because of symmetry (see exercises), the first integral vanishes. The integrand of the integral in

$$P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\sin \sigma}{\sigma} d\sigma = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\sin \sigma}{\sigma} d\sigma = 2\pi \quad (4.170)$$

remains finite at $\sigma = 0$. This integral can be found in mathematical tables and is given according to (4.170). Putting the individual steps (4.165)–(4.170) together, we obtain the decisive result

$$P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\cos \tau}{\tau - t} d\tau = -2\pi \sin t. \quad (4.171)$$

This relation provides us with the “recipe” to transform a cos function into a sin function! Taking care of the change of sign and of the factor 2π , we obtain for each individual member of the series (4.157) and (4.158), and thus for the whole series, also the relationship

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{x(\tau)}{t - \tau} d\tau. \quad (4.172)$$

This is the fundamental Hilbert transform that allows us to derive the additional function y if the function x is given. Making use of (4.154) and (4.155), we may now determine the phase ϕ by means of

$$\sin \phi / \cos \phi \equiv \operatorname{tg} \phi = y/x, \quad (4.173)$$

or explicitly by

$$\phi = \operatorname{arc} \tan(y/x). \quad (4.174)$$

Plotting ϕ versus t , for instance for two series of experimental data (see Fig. 4.6), we may discuss phase locking, frequency locking and synchrony in generalization of what we have discussed in Sect. 4.9.1. At least two difficulties should be mentioned here when applying this procedure to realistic experimental data:

- 1) The observation time T is only finite, whereas the Hilbert transform (4.172) requires an infinite interval because of the integration in that formula. Thus in concrete cases one has to study how well this formula works in the case of a finite observation interval.
- 2) In general, the experimental data are noisy, which implies that in many cases $x(t)$ is not smooth. Therefore, it is important to use smoothing procedures, which we will not discuss here, however.

Exercise.

1. Show that (4.156) can be written as (4.157).
Hint: Use $\cos(\alpha + \beta) = \cos \alpha \cos \beta - \sin \alpha \sin \beta$.
2. Extend the procedure related to (4.163) to one for (4.162).
Hint: Introduce a new variable $t' = \omega t$.
3. Show that

$$P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\cos \sigma}{\sigma} d\sigma$$

vanishes because of symmetry.

Hint: Make the transformation $\sigma \rightarrow -\sigma$.

4. Convince yourself of the correctness of (4.172) using Exercise 2.
5. Discuss frequency locking, phase locking and synchrony by means of Fig. 4.6. Note: Since this is a discussion, no “solution” will be presented in Chapter 15.
Hint: Plot $\xi(t) = \phi_2 - \phi_1$ versus t .

4.10 Phase Noise

As we have seen earlier in this chapter, noise in any physical system including the brain is inevitable. This implies also that phases are noisy. In this section, we want to show how we can model the origin and important properties of phase noise. In the most simple case, we may assume that by analogy with the soccer game the phase is subjected to random kicks. As we will see later in this section, the phase need not be damped so that the change of the phase in the course of time is merely determined by a random force $F(t)$ alone

$$\dot{\phi}(t) = F(t). \quad (4.175)$$

As usual we assume that the average over F vanishes

$$\langle F(t) \rangle = 0 \quad (4.176)$$

and that the correlation function is δ -correlated with strength Q

$$\langle F(t)F(t') \rangle = Q\delta(t - t'). \quad (4.177)$$

Equation (4.175) can be immediately solved by integration over time on both sides, yielding

$$\phi(t) - \phi(t_0) = \int_{t_0}^t F(\tau) d\tau. \quad (4.178)$$

Taking the statistical average over both sides of (4.178) and using (4.176), we obtain

$$\langle \phi(t) \rangle - \phi(t_0) = 0, \quad (4.179)$$

i.e. on the average the phase remains unchanged. In order to define a measure telling us how far the phase deviates in the course of time, we form the quadratic displacement, which can easily be evaluated according to

$$\langle (\phi(t) - \phi(t_0))^2 \rangle = \left\langle \int_{t_0}^t F(\tau) d\tau \int_{t_0}^t F(\tau') d\tau' \right\rangle, \quad (4.180)$$

$$= \int_{t_0}^t \int_{t_0}^t \langle F(\tau) F(\tau') \rangle d\tau d\tau', \quad (4.181)$$

$$= \int_{t_0}^t \int_{t_0}^t Q \delta(\tau - \tau') d\tau d\tau' = Q \int_{t_0}^t d\tau = Q(t - t_0), \quad (4.182)$$

where the individual steps are entirely analogous to what we have done in Sect. 4.7 on Brownian motion. The result (4.182) is interpreted as phase diffusion, where the mean square of the displacement of the phase linearly increases in the course of time.

Let us consider the next simple case that is defined by

$$\dot{\phi}(t) = \omega + F(t), \quad (4.183)$$

where, quite evidently, on the average the phase velocity is constant. Integration of (4.183) on both sides yields

$$\phi(t) - \phi(t_0) = \omega(t - t_0) + \int_{t_0}^t F(\tau) d\tau, \quad (4.184)$$

from which we immediately deduce

$$\langle \phi(t) - \phi(t_0) \rangle = \omega(t - t_0) \quad (4.185)$$

as well as

$$\langle (\phi(t) - \phi(t_0) - \omega(t - t_0))^2 \rangle = Q(t - t_0). \quad (4.186)$$

Equation (4.186) can be rearranged to yield

$$\langle (\phi(t) - \phi(t_0))^2 \rangle = \omega^2(t - t_0)^2 + Q(t - t_0). \quad (4.187)$$

Thus the mean quadratic displacement of ϕ in the course of time is determined by two effects, namely the quadratic increase according to the deterministic motion and a linear increase according to stochastic pushes.

As we will see later, in practical applications also a third case appears that is defined by

$$\dot{\phi} = \omega - \gamma \sin \phi + F(t). \quad (4.188)$$

In applications quite often ϕ is the relative phase between two oscillators. To study (4.188), we first assume that the random force F vanishes

$$F(t) = 0 \quad (4.189)$$

and that there is a time-independent solution

$$\dot{\phi} = 0 \quad (4.190)$$

so that we have to solve

$$\omega - \gamma \sin \phi_0 = 0. \quad (4.191)$$

In fact there exists a solution provided

$$\omega < \gamma \quad (4.192)$$

holds. The solution is given by

$$\phi_0 = \arcsin(\omega/\gamma) \quad (4.193)$$

and if ϕ is a relative phase, phase locking occurs. In order to study the impact of the fluctuating force on this phase-locked solution, we make the hypothesis

$$\phi(t) = \phi_0 + \psi(t) \quad (4.194)$$

and assume that F is small so that also the deviation ψ will become small. Using the well-known trigonometric formula

$$\sin \phi = \sin(\phi_0 + \psi) = \sin \phi_0 \cos \psi + \cos \phi_0 \sin \psi \quad (4.195)$$

and approximating $\cos \psi$ and $\sin \psi$ up to linear terms in ψ , (4.195) reduces to

$$\sin(\phi_0 + \psi) \approx \sin \phi_0 + \psi \cos \phi_0. \quad (4.196)$$

Inserting (4.194) into (4.188) and making use of (4.191), we readily obtain

$$\dot{\psi} = \omega - \gamma \sin \phi_0 - \psi \cos \phi_0 + F(t). \quad (4.197)$$

Using the abbreviation

$$\cos \phi_0 = \gamma', \quad (4.198)$$

(4.197) can be cast into the form

$$\dot{\psi} = -\gamma' \psi + F(t). \quad (4.199)$$

This equation is an old acquaintance of ours provided we identify ψ with the displacement of a particle x

$$\psi(t) \leftrightarrow x(t) \quad (4.200)$$

that we encountered in the section on Brownian motion. Thus the phase deviation ψ undergoes a Brownian motion in the case of phase locking. So far we have assumed (4.192). If this condition is not fulfilled, i.e. if γ is small and ω large, we are practically back to the case (4.183), and we will not discuss this case here in more detail though there are some slight modifications because of the additional effects of the small sin function in (4.188).

4.11 Origin of Phase Noise*

Later in this book we will be concerned with concrete models on the activity of individual neurons or networks of them. In other words, we will study the dynamics of such systems. A famous model that deals with the generation of axonal pulses is provided by the Hodgkin–Huxley equations (see Chap. 13). In order not to overload our presentation here, we mention only a few facts. These equations describe how the membrane voltage changes in the course of time because of in- or outflow of ions, for instance calcium ions. On the other hand, they describe how the calcium flux changes in the course of time, because of externally applied currents as well as of the voltage change. Thus, in the simplest case, we have to deal with two variables x (membrane voltage) and y (ion fluxes). But by means of two variables x and y we may form the complex quantity z , and thus according to

$$z(t) = r(t)e^{i\phi(t)} \quad (4.201)$$

determine a phase. Quite surprisingly, we can derive a few general properties of the equation for ϕ without knowing details of, say, the Hodgkin–Huxley equations. We need to know that a membrane voltage as well as the ion currents change in the course of time, because of their present values. Thus, quite generally, we have to deal with equations of the form

$$\dot{x} = g(x, y) + F_x \quad (4.202)$$

and

$$\dot{y} = h(x, y) + F_y, \quad (4.203)$$

where the first term on the r.h.s. describes the noiseless case. F_x and F_y are the fluctuating forces, whose origin we discussed in previous sections on Brownian motion and on noise in active systems. By multiplying (4.203) with the imaginary unit i and adding this equation to (4.202), we obtain

$$\dot{z} + H(z, z^*) = F(t), \quad (4.204)$$

where the complex variable z is defined as usual (see (4.152)). We use the abbreviations

$$H = -g - ih \quad (4.205)$$

and

$$F = F_x + iF_y \quad (4.206)$$

with the property

$$\langle F(t)F(t') \rangle = Q\delta(t - t'). \quad (4.207)$$

For what follows, we decompose H into a linear and a nonlinear part

$$H(z, z^*) = cz + dz^* + N(z, z^*), \quad (4.208)$$

where

$$c = \gamma - i\omega. \quad (4.209)$$

Inserting (4.201) into (4.204) and using (4.208), we obtain after multiplying the resulting equation by $e^{-i\phi}$

$$\dot{r} + r\dot{\phi} + cr + de^{-2i\phi} + e^{-i\phi}N(re^{i\phi}, re^{-i\phi}) = e^{-i\phi}F(t). \quad (4.210)$$

The l.h.s. may be expanded into positive and negative powers of $e^{i\phi}$, which yields

$$\dot{r} + r\dot{\phi} + cr + h(r) + g_1(r)e^{i\phi} + g_2(r)e^{-i\phi} + \dots = e^{-i\phi}F(t). \quad (4.211)$$

In order not to overload our presentation, we consider a special case, namely in which the coefficients of the powers of $e^{i\phi}$ and $e^{-i\phi}$ are small. In such a case, (4.211) reduces to

$$\dot{r} + ir\dot{\phi} + (\gamma - i\omega)r + h(r) = e^{-i\phi}F(t). \quad (4.212)$$

Splitting (4.212) into its real and its imaginary parts, we obtain

$$\dot{r} + \gamma r + h(r) = \text{Re } F(t) \quad (4.213)$$

and

$$\dot{\phi} = \omega + \frac{1}{ir}\text{Im } F(t), \quad (4.214)$$

where

$$\text{Re } F = \frac{1}{2}(F + F^*), \quad \text{Im } F = \frac{1}{2}(F - F^*). \quad (4.215)$$

Equation (4.214) represents the desired formula for the impact of noise on the phase movement. If we were to keep powers of $\exp(i\phi)$ in (4.211), cos and sin functions would appear on the r.h.s. of (4.214) also. Because of the function r that appears in (4.214), the noise force depends on r . In a number of cases, r can be considered as practically constant so that (4.214) reduces to the former case (4.183).

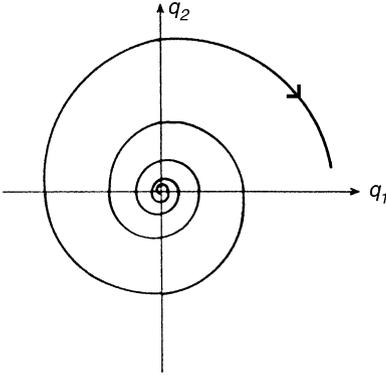


Fig. 4.25. A trajectory starting from an unstable “focus” and approaching a stable “limit cycle”

For the sake of completeness, we present an example where r is time-dependent, but relaxes towards a constant value. It must be stated, however, that this case does not apply to the Hodgkin–Huxley equations, where we rather have to expect a strong time-dependence of r because of the spikes! Nevertheless the reader may enjoy this example.

We consider the noiseless case of (4.213), where the r.h.s. vanishes. The simplest nontrivial example of this equation is provided by

$$\dot{r} + (r - a)r = 0, \quad a > 0, \quad (4.216)$$

that possesses the solution

$$r = \frac{ar_0}{r_0 + (a - r_0) \exp[a(t_0 - t)]}, \quad (4.217)$$

where r_0 represents the initial value

$$r(t_0) = r_0 > 0. \quad (4.218)$$

As one may easily verify, in the limit $t \rightarrow \infty$, $r(t)$ relaxes towards a , i.e. to a constant value. Jointly with the movement of the phase this represents what is called a *stable limit cycle* (Fig. 4.25). Readers who enjoy mathematical exercises can derive (4.217) from (4.216) (see exercise).

Exercise. Derive the solution (4.217) to (4.216).

5. The Lighthouse Model.

Two Coupled Neurons

5.1 Formulation of the Model

In this chapter the main part of our book begins. It will be our goal to develop models that allow us to study the behavior of large neural nets *explicitly*. Hereby we use essential properties of neurons. Both this and the following chapter deal with what I call the lighthouse model for reasons that I will explain below.

To model the behavior of a *single neuron*, we start from a few basic facts (see Chap. 2). A neuron receives inputs from other neurons in the form of their axonal spikes. At synapses these spikes are converted into dendritic currents that lead to a potential change at the axon hillock. Such a conversion of spikes into potential changes can also happen directly and will be contained in our formalism as a special case. In response to incoming signals, the neuron produces an output in the form of axonal pulses (spikes).

Let us begin with the conversion of a spike into a dendritic current (Fig. 5.1). We label the dendrite under consideration by an index, m , and denote the corresponding current at time t by $\psi_m(t)$ (Fig. 5.2). The current is caused by a spike that was generated at the axon hillock of another neuron, labelled by k , at a somewhat earlier time, τ . The spike or pulse train is represented by a function $P_k(t - \tau)$ (Fig. 5.3). After its generation, the dendritic current will decay with a decay constant γ (Fig. 5.4). We shall assume that γ is independent of m . As we know, all physical systems are subject to noise, whose effect we take into account by a fluctuating force that we call $F_{\psi,m}(t)$.

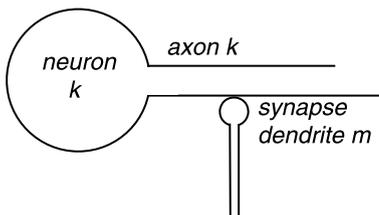


Fig. 5.1. Neuron k with its axon k connected to a dendrite m of a different neuron via a synapse

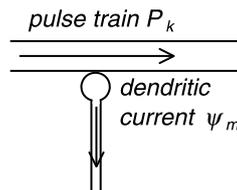


Fig. 5.2. A pulse train P_k in axon k causes a dendritic current ψ_m via a synapse

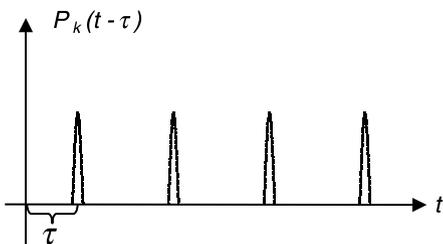


Fig. 5.3. Visualization of a time-shifted pulse-train $P_k(t - \tau)$

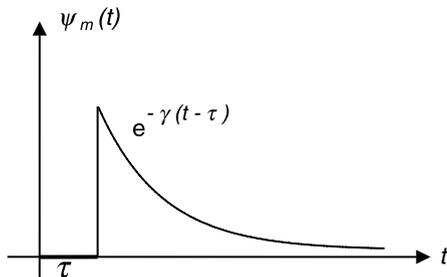


Fig. 5.4. The dendritic current $\psi_m(t)$

We discussed such forces in Sects. 4.6–4.8. Readers who haven't read these sections or are not interested in these forces at all can ignore them in most parts of what follows. Using the results of Sect. 4.4 we are now in a position to formulate the corresponding equation for the dendritic current ψ as follows:

$$\dot{\psi}_m(t) = aP_k(t - \tau) - \gamma\psi_m(t) + F_{\psi_m}(t). \quad (5.1)$$

The constant a represents the synaptic strength. For the interested reader we add a few more comments on F_{ψ} . As usual we shall assume that the fluctuating forces are δ -correlated in time. As is known, in the synapses vesicles that release neurotransmitters and thus eventually give rise to the dendritic current can spontaneously open. This will be the main reason for the fluctuating force F_{ψ} . But also other noise sources may be considered here. When a pulse comes in, the opening of vesicles occurs with only some probability. Thus we have to admit that in a more appropriate description a is a randomly fluctuating quantity. While F_{ψ_m} in (5.1) represents additive noise, a represents multiplicative noise.

Since one of our main tasks is the study of synchronization between neurons, it suggests itself to introduce a phase angle by which we describe spike trains. The basic idea is this: Imagine a lighthouse with its rotating light beam (Fig. 5.5). Whenever the beam hits a fixed target, we observe a flash (Fig. 5.6). Depending on the beam's rotation speed, we obtain more

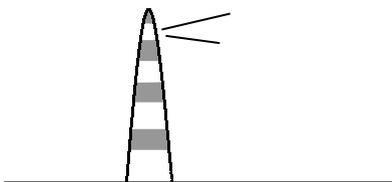


Fig. 5.5. Lighthouse with rotating light beam

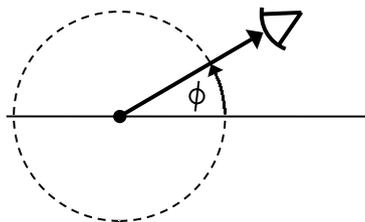


Fig. 5.6. The light beam of Fig. 5.5, seen from above, hits a target at a specific angle ϕ

or less rapid sequences of flashes. Using this picture, we introduce – formally – a phase ϕ of the neuron under consideration. This phase increases in the course of time and whenever it equals 2π or an integer multiple of 2π , an axonal pulse or spike is generated. In this way a spike train is brought about. Each individual spike is modelled by means of a δ -function according to Sect. 4.1. Hereby we have two choices. Either we consider δ as a function of time t with its peak at

$$t = t_n, \quad t_n \text{ fixed}, \quad (5.2)$$

or as a function of $\phi(t)$ with its peak at

$$\phi(t_n) = 2\pi n. \quad (5.3)$$

In this latter case, the handling of $\delta(\phi(t) - 2\pi n)$ becomes more involved. We therefore use a “peaked function” in accordance with Sect. 4.1

$$\delta(\phi(t) - 2\pi n)\dot{\phi}(t). \quad (5.4)$$

Both (5.4) and $\delta(t - t_n)$ possess a single peak with “area” 1, i.e.

$$\int \delta(t - t_n)dt = \int \delta(\phi(t) - 2\pi n)\dot{\phi}(t)dt = 1. \quad (5.5)$$

In order to represent all spikes in the course of time, we sum up over all peaks, i.e. we form

$$P(t) \equiv f(\phi(t)) = \sum_n \delta(\phi(t) - 2\pi n)\dot{\phi}(t_n), \quad (5.6)$$

where n runs over all integers, in principle from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$. When P and the phase ϕ refer to a neuron with index k , we have to supplement P and ϕ with the index k . So far, the introduction of the phase ϕ is just a formal trick to describe spike-trains. The essential question is, of course, how can we determine the time-dependence of ϕ ? Here the Naka–Rushton formula (Sect. 2.5) comes in. According to it, the axonal spike rate S is determined by the input X to the neuron, i.e. according to (2.1) by

$$S(X) = \frac{rX^M}{\Theta^M + X^M}. \quad (5.7)$$

But, at least under steady-state conditions, the spike rate is directly proportional to the “rotation speed” $\dot{\phi}$. Absorbing the proportionality factor 2π into a redefined constant r in (5.7), we may thus put

$$\dot{\phi} = S(X). \quad (5.8)$$

Because (5.8) refers to a physical system, the neuron, fluctuating forces must be taken into account. Furthermore, we must add the label k so that the equation for the phase of neuron k reads

$$\dot{\phi}_k = S(X_k) + F_{\psi,k}(t). \quad (5.9)$$

It remains to determine the input X_k that leads to the spike generation. As we know, spikes are generated at the axon hillock at which the potentials due to the dendritic currents are added. We may take time delays τ' into account as well as coefficients c that convert ψ into potential contributions. Also external signals, $p_{\text{ext}}(t)$, stemming from sensory neurons must be taken into account. Thus, all in all, we arrive at

$$X_k(t) = \sum_m c_{km} \psi_m(t - \tau') + p_{\text{ext},k}(t - \tau''). \quad (5.10)$$

This concludes the formulation of our model in its most simple form.

To summarize, our model is defined by (5.1), (5.6), (5.7), (5.9) and (5.10). In order to familiarize ourselves with it, we shall consider the case of two neurons in the present chapter. In Chap. 6 we shall treat the general case with an arbitrary number of neurons and dendrites, with different synaptic strengths, and different delay times. Even in this rather general model, a few limitations must be observed. The use of the Naka–Rushton relation (or similar ones) implies steady states. Otherwise, the validity of our approach must be checked in individual cases. More seriously according to (5.1), the dendritic current is spontaneously generated (see Sect. 4.4). In reality, the current first increases continuously until it starts its decay. This is taken care of by Rall's α -function that we mentioned in Sect. 4.4. Finally, we may try to explore the physical meaning of ϕ and – as a consequence – to introduce a damping term (5.9). These deficiencies will be remedied in Chap. 8, but the treatment of the corresponding equations will become cumbersome and we shall have to restrict ourselves to the most important aspects.

But now let us return to the lighthouse model for two neurons.

5.2 Basic Equations for the Phases of Two Coupled Neurons

We consider two neurons, $k = 1, 2$, each with one dendrite, $m = 1, 2$, that are mutually coupled (Fig. 5.7). We assume that the system operates in the linear regime of S , which according to Sect. 2.5 is quite a good approximation for inputs that are not too high. We neglect delays, i.e. we put $\tau = \tau' = 0$ and ignore fluctuating forces, i.e. we put $F_\psi = F_\phi = 0$. The model equations introduced in the foregoing section become very simple!

neuron 1:

$$\text{dendrite: } \dot{\psi}_1(t) = af(\phi_2(t)) - \gamma\psi_1; \quad (5.11)$$

$$\text{axon: } \dot{\phi}_1(t) = c\psi_1(t) + p_{\text{ext},1}. \quad (5.12)$$

neuron 2:

$$\text{dendrite: } \dot{\psi}_2 = af(\phi_1(t)) - \gamma\psi_2; \quad (5.13)$$

$$\text{axon: } \dot{\phi}_2 = c\psi_2(t) + p_{\text{ext},2}. \quad (5.14)$$

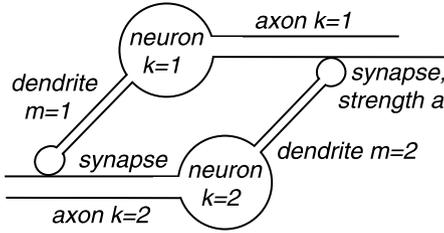


Fig. 5.7. Scheme of two coupled neurons

Using (5.12), we express ψ_1 by ϕ_1 and insert the result into (5.11), thus obtaining

$$\ddot{\phi}_1 + \gamma \dot{\phi}_1 = Af(\phi_2) + C_1 \tag{5.15}$$

for neuron 1, where

$$A = ca, \quad C_1 = \gamma p_{\text{ext},1} + \dot{p}_{\text{ext},1}. \tag{5.16}$$

Similarly, we obtain for neuron 2

$$\ddot{\phi}_2 + \gamma \dot{\phi}_2 = Af(\phi_1) + C_2, \tag{5.17}$$

where

$$C_2 = \gamma p_{\text{ext},2} + \dot{p}_{\text{ext},2}. \tag{5.18}$$

There is yet another, though equivalent, way of eliminating the dendritic currents. Namely, the Green's function method of Sect. 4.5 (see (4.83), (4.95) and (4.96)) allows us to express the dendritic current ψ_1 in (5.11) by the phase ϕ_2 , i.e. the formal solution to (5.11) reads

$$\psi_1(t) = a \int_0^t e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} f(\phi_2(\sigma)) d\sigma. \tag{5.19}$$

Inserting this into (5.12) yields

$$\dot{\phi}_1(t) = ac \int_0^t e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} f(\phi_2(\sigma)) d\sigma + p_{\text{ext},1}(t). \tag{5.20}$$

This equation allows for a particularly simple interpretation: The rotation speed $\dot{\phi}_1$ is caused by the sum of the input from the other neuron and the external signal. If we express $f(\phi_2)$ by the emission times $t_{2,n}$ of the pulses stemming from neuron 2, f can be replaced by a sum of δ -functions (see Sect. 4.1)

$$\dot{\phi}_1(t) = ac \int_0^t e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} \sum_n \delta(\sigma - t_{2,n}) d\sigma + p_{\text{ext},1}(t). \tag{5.21}$$

The equation for ϕ_2 , which corresponds to (5.20), can be obtained by exchanging the indices 1 and 2.

In the following, we shall first base our analysis on (5.15) and (5.17).

5.3 Two Neurons: Solution of the Phase-Locked State

In this section we wish to derive the solution to (5.15) and (5.17) which belongs to the phase-locked state. Since we do not yet know under which conditions, i.e. for which parameter values of γ , A and C_1, C_2 , this state exists, we consider a case in which we surely can expect phase locking: When both neurons are subject to the same conditions. This is the case if $C_1 = C_2 = C$. Indeed, such a choice is suggested by the experimental conditions, when the same moving bar is shown to the receptive fields to the two neurons. Phase locking, and even more, synchrony occurs, if the phases ϕ_1 and ϕ_2 coincide, i.e.

$$\phi_1 = \phi_2 = \phi. \quad (5.22)$$

Making this substitution in (5.15) and (5.17), the two equations acquire precisely the same form, namely

$$\ddot{\phi} + \gamma\dot{\phi} = Af(\phi) + C. \quad (5.23)$$

Because the function $f(\phi)$ on the r.h.s. of (5.23) depends on ϕ in a highly nonlinear fashion, the explicit solution of (5.23) might look hopeless.

So let's first try to study what it will look like by means of an analogy. To a physicist, (5.23) may be reminiscent of an equation in mechanics, to an electrical engineer of that of an electrical circuit, and so on. Let's adopt the physicist's view and identify the phase ϕ with the position coordinate x of a particle. The equation coming to his/her mind reads

$$m\ddot{x} + \gamma\dot{x} = F(x), \quad (5.24)$$

where m is the mass of the particle, γ the constant of friction and $F(x)$ a force acting on the particle. In the present case we put $m = 1$ and identify $F(x)$ with $Af(x) + C$. But a physicist will go a step further. He/she remembers that the force $F(x)$ is nothing but the slope of a (mechanical) potential $V(x)$ multiplied by -1 :

$$F(x) = -\frac{\partial V(x)}{\partial x}. \quad (5.25)$$

Let us first consider an example where the force F is independent of x

$$F(x) = C. \quad (5.26)$$

The potential V is plotted in Fig. 5.8. The movement of the particle, i.e. the change of its position x in the course of time, can be understood as

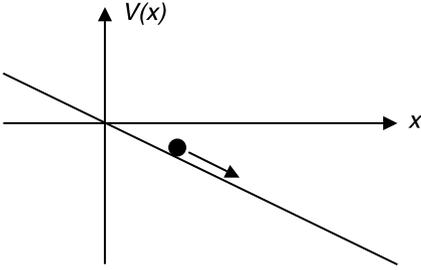


Fig. 5.8. Ball sliding down the potential curve $V(x) = -Cx$

follows: The particle behaves like a ball that rolls down the potential “hill” being subject to friction. First the velocity will also increase until the friction force $\gamma\dot{x}$ compensates the constant force $F = C$ so that

$$\gamma\dot{x} = C \quad \text{or} \quad \dot{x} = C/\gamma. \tag{5.27}$$

Integrating (5.27) yields

$$x(t) = (C/\gamma)t. \tag{5.28}$$

Equations (5.27) and (5.28) tell us that our ball is rolling down the potential “hill” at constant speed.

Let us now return to our horrible-looking equation (5.23). So what is the effect of

$$f(\phi) = \dot{\phi} \sum_n \delta(\phi - \phi_n) \tag{5.29}$$

where we return to our old notation of ϕ instead of x ? Because f does not only depend on ϕ , but also on the velocity $\dot{\phi}$, we cannot directly use the potential $V(\phi)$ by analogy with (5.25). But we may, at least tentatively, assume that in view of the effect of damping (see (5.27)), $\dot{\phi}$ is, at least on the average, constant. The resulting function $f(\phi)$ consists of a sum over δ -functions, i.e. of a sum over individual peaks. The corresponding potential function is shown in Fig. 5.9. Roughly speaking, it looks similar to that of Fig. 5.8 except for individual jumps. Each time ϕ (or formerly x) reaches such a position, the “force” f gives a push to the phase (particle). Afterwards, because of friction, it will slow down again towards its previous velocity until it will get a new push, a.s.o.

We now want to show how our intuitive view can be cast into a rigorous mathematical approach. To take the overall constant motion into account, we put

$$\phi = \frac{1}{\gamma}Ct + \chi = ct + \chi, \tag{5.30}$$

where χ is a still unknown function of time. Inserting (5.30) into (5.23) yields

$$\ddot{\chi} + \gamma\dot{\chi} = Af(\chi + ct). \tag{5.31}$$

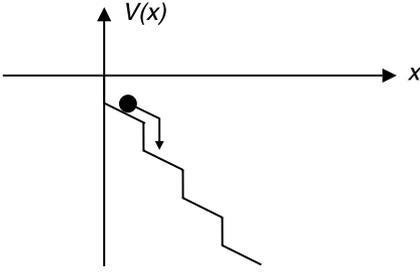


Fig. 5.9. Ball sliding (and jumping) down the potential curve corresponding to (5.29) with $\dot{\phi} = \text{const}$.

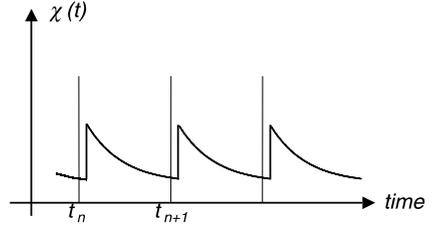


Fig. 5.10. The function $\chi(t)$

We expect that when the phase ϕ grows in time, it will receive pushes at the peaks of the δ -functions, which happen at phase positions $\phi = \phi_n$ or, equivalently, times $t = t_n$ (Fig. 5.10). In between these times, the force in (5.31) vanishes. Thus for the time interval $t_n + \epsilon \leq t \leq t_{n+1} - \epsilon$, where ϵ is arbitrarily small, we obtain

$$\ddot{\chi} + \gamma\dot{\chi} = 0, \tag{5.32}$$

which has the solution

$$\dot{\chi}(t) = \dot{\chi}(t_n + \epsilon) \cdot e^{-\gamma(t-t_n)}. \tag{5.33}$$

We are left with studying what happens at times $t = t_n$. We note that due to a general mathematical result, $\chi(t)$ is continuous for all t , i.e.

$$\chi(t + \epsilon) = \chi(t - \epsilon), \quad \epsilon \rightarrow 0. \tag{5.34}$$

To cope with the δ -functions occurring in $f(\phi)$, we integrate (5.31) over a small time interval

$$(t_n - \epsilon, t_n + \epsilon) \tag{5.35}$$

and obtain

$$\int_{t_n - \epsilon}^{t_n + \epsilon} \ddot{\chi}(t) dt + \gamma \int_{t_n - \epsilon}^{t_n + \epsilon} \dot{\chi}(t) dt = A \int_{t_n - \epsilon}^{t_n + \epsilon} f(\phi(t)) dt. \tag{5.36}$$

Because of the derivatives under the integrals on the l.h.s. of (5.36), we can perform the integration immediately and obtain

$$\dot{\chi}(t_n + \epsilon) - \dot{\chi}(t_n - \epsilon) + \gamma(\chi(t_n + \epsilon) - \chi(t_n - \epsilon)), \tag{5.37}$$

where the factor of γ vanishes because of (5.34). On the r.h.s. of (5.36), because of the “peaky” character of f , we need to consider only a single term,

$$A \int_{t_n - \epsilon}^{t_n + \epsilon} \dot{\phi}(t) \delta(\phi(t) - \phi_n) dt. \quad (5.38)$$

But as we have seen in Sect. 4.4, the expression under the integral is constructed in such a way that the integral yields one. Thus the relation (5.37), eventually, reduces to

$$\dot{\chi}(t_n + \epsilon) - \dot{\chi}(t_n - \epsilon) = A. \quad (5.39)$$

Using (5.33) in (5.39), we obtain the recursive relation

$$\dot{\chi}(t_{n+1} + \epsilon) = \dot{\chi}(t_n + \epsilon) e^{-\gamma(t_{n+1} - t_n)} + A. \quad (5.40)$$

We first assume that the times t_n are given quantities. While we postpone the general solution of (5.40) to the exercise at the end of the section, we focus our attention on the steady-state solution of that equation. In this case, the times t_n are equidistant,

$$t_{n+1} - t_n = \Delta, \quad \text{independent of } n, \quad (5.41)$$

and

$$\dot{\chi}(t_{n+1} + \epsilon) = \dot{\chi}(t_n + \epsilon) = \dot{\chi}. \quad (5.42)$$

Inserting (5.42) into (5.40) leads to the solution of (5.40),

$$\dot{\chi} = A (1 - e^{-\gamma\Delta})^{-1}. \quad (5.43)$$

So far we assumed the “jump times” t_n to be given. In order to determine them, we remember that from spike to spike, or from push to push, the phase increases by 2π , which means

$$\int_{t_n + \epsilon}^{t_{n+1} + \epsilon} \dot{\phi}(\tau) d\tau = 2\pi \quad (5.44)$$

holds. Because of (5.30), (5.33), we obtain

$$\dot{\phi}(\tau) = c + e^{-\gamma(\tau - t_n)} \dot{\chi}(t_n + \epsilon). \quad (5.45)$$

Inserting this relation into (5.44), we arrive at

$$c(t_{n+1} - t_n) + \dot{\chi}(t_n + \epsilon) \frac{1}{\gamma} (1 - e^{-\gamma(t_{n+1} - t_n)}) = 2\pi, \quad (5.46)$$

which is an equation for (5.41) provided $\dot{\chi}(t_n + \epsilon)$ is known. But $\dot{\chi}$ has been determined in (5.43), so that with (5.41) the relation (5.46) reduces to

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{c} \left(2\pi - \frac{A}{\gamma} \right). \quad (5.47)$$

Clearly, the coupling strength A must be sufficiently small, i.e. $A < 2\pi\gamma$, because otherwise the pulse interval Δ that must be positive would become negative. (We shall study the situation with $A > 2\pi\gamma$ in Sects. 6.12 and 6.13.) If $A > 0$, the mutual coupling between the neurons is excitatory and the pulse intervals decrease, or, in other words, the pulse rate increases, and for $A < 0$, inhibitory coupling, the pulse rate decreases.

Exercise. Solve (5.40) (a) for arbitrary times; and (b) for equidistant times. Hint: (a) put $\dot{\chi}(t_n + \epsilon) = e^{-\gamma t_n} \cdot \eta_n$, write the resulting equations in the form

$$\eta_{n+1} - \eta_n = a_{n+1}, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, N-1,$$

and sum the l.h.s. and r.h.s., respectively, over n .

$$(b) \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} e^{-\alpha n} = (1 - e^{-\alpha N}) (1 - e^{-\alpha})^{-1}.$$

5.4 Frequency Pulling and Mutual Activation of Two Neurons

In the preceding section we assumed that the external (sensory) signals, i.e. C_1 and C_2 , are equal. What happens if $C_1 \neq C_2$? To study this case, we start from (5.15), (5.17)

$$\ddot{\phi}_1 + \gamma \dot{\phi}_1 = Af(\phi_2) + C_1, \quad (5.52)$$

$$\ddot{\phi}_2 + \gamma \dot{\phi}_2 = Af(\phi_1) + C_2. \quad (5.53)$$

In analogy to (5.30) we make the substitution

$$\phi_j = \frac{1}{\gamma} C_j t + \chi_j = c_j t + \chi_j, \quad j = 1, 2 \quad (5.54)$$

and obtain

$$\ddot{\chi}_1 + \gamma \dot{\chi}_1 = Af(\chi_2 + c_2 t), \quad (5.55)$$

$$\ddot{\chi}_2 + \gamma \dot{\chi}_2 = Af(\chi_1 + c_1 t). \quad (5.56)$$

Because of the cross-wise coupling in (5.55), (5.56), the jump times of $\dot{\chi}_1$ are given by $t_n^{(2)}$ and those of $\dot{\chi}_2$ by $t_n^{(1)}$. Otherwise we may proceed as in Sect. 5.3

and obtain for

$$t_n^{(2)} + \epsilon \leq t \leq t_{n+1}^{(2)} - \epsilon, \quad (5.57)$$

$$\dot{\chi}_1(t) = \dot{\chi}_1 \left(t_n^{(2)} + \epsilon \right) e^{-\gamma(t-t_n^{(2)})}, \quad (5.58)$$

and, correspondingly, for

$$t_n^{(1)} + \epsilon \leq t \leq t_{n+1}^{(1)} - \epsilon, \quad (5.59)$$

$$\dot{\chi}_2 = \dot{\chi}_2 \left(t_n^{(1)} + \epsilon \right) e^{-\gamma(t-t_n^{(1)})}. \quad (5.60)$$

Furthermore we obtain the recursive equations (compare to (5.40))

$$\dot{\chi}_1 \left(t_{n+1}^{(2)} + \epsilon \right) = \dot{\chi}_1 \left(t_n^{(2)} + \epsilon \right) e^{-\gamma(t_{n+1}^{(2)} - t_n^{(2)})} + A, \quad (5.61)$$

$$\dot{\chi}_2 \left(t_{n+1}^{(1)} + \epsilon \right) = \dot{\chi}_2 \left(t_n^{(1)} + \epsilon \right) e^{-\gamma(t_{n+1}^{(1)} - t_n^{(1)})} + A. \quad (5.62)$$

Under the assumption of steady-state conditions, where

$$t_{n+1}^{(1)} - t_n^{(1)} = \Delta_1, \quad t_{n+1}^{(2)} - t_n^{(2)} = \Delta_2, \quad (5.63)$$

and

$$\dot{\chi}_1 \left(t_{n+1}^{(2)} + \epsilon \right) = \dot{\chi}_1 \left(t_n^{(2)} + \epsilon \right) \equiv \dot{\chi}_1, \quad (5.64)$$

$$\dot{\chi}_2 \left(t_{n+1}^{(1)} + \epsilon \right) = \dot{\chi}_2 \left(t_n^{(1)} + \epsilon \right) \equiv \dot{\chi}_2, \quad (5.65)$$

we obtain

$$\dot{\chi}_1 \equiv \chi_1 \left(t_N^{(2)} + \epsilon \right) = A \left(1 - e^{-\gamma\Delta_2} \right)^{-1}, \quad (5.66)$$

$$\dot{\chi}_2 \equiv \chi_2 \left(t_N^{(1)} + \epsilon \right) = A \left(1 - e^{-\gamma\Delta_1} \right)^{-1}. \quad (5.67)$$

We now have to determine Δ_1 and Δ_2 , which, by analogy with (5.44), are defined by

$$\int_{t_n^{(1)}}^{t_{n+1}^{(1)}} \dot{\phi}_1 dt = 2\pi, \quad (5.68)$$

$$\int_{t_n^{(2)}}^{t_{n+1}^{(2)}} \dot{\phi}_2 dt = 2\pi. \quad (5.69)$$

When evaluating (5.68) and (5.69), we must observe that (5.58) and (5.60), and thus ϕ_1, ϕ_2 , are defined only on intervals. To make our analysis as simple as possible (whereby we incidentally capture the most interesting case), we assume

$$|\gamma\Delta_1| \ll 1, \quad |\gamma\Delta_2| \ll 1. \quad (5.70)$$

Then (5.68) and (5.69) read

$$c_1\Delta_1 + \dot{\chi}_1\Delta_1 = 2\pi, \quad (5.71)$$

$$c_2\Delta_2 + \dot{\chi}_2\Delta_2 = 2\pi, \quad (5.72)$$

respectively, which because of (5.66), (5.67) and (5.70) can be transformed into

$$c_1\Delta_1 + \frac{A}{\gamma} \frac{\Delta_1}{\Delta_2} = 2\pi, \quad (5.73)$$

$$c_2\Delta_2 + \frac{A}{\gamma} \frac{\Delta_2}{\Delta_1} = 2\pi. \quad (5.74)$$

Let us discuss these equations in two ways:

1. We may prescribe Δ_1 and Δ_2 and determine those c_1, c_2 (that are essentially the sensory inputs) that give rise to Δ_1, Δ_2 .
2. We prescribe c_1 and c_2 and determine Δ_1, Δ_2 . Since $\omega_j = 2\pi/\Delta_j$ are the axonal pulse frequencies, we express our results using those

$$\omega_1 = 2\pi \frac{(c_1 2\pi + c_2 A/\gamma)}{4\pi^2 - A^2/\gamma^2}, \quad (5.75)$$

$$\omega_2 = 2\pi \frac{(c_1 A/\gamma + c_2 2\pi)}{4\pi^2 - A^2/\gamma^2}. \quad (5.76)$$

Their difference and sum are particularly simple

$$\omega_2 - \omega_1 = \frac{c_2 - c_1}{1 + A/(2\pi\gamma)}, \quad (5.77)$$

$$\omega_1 + \omega_2 = \frac{c_1 + c_2}{1 - A/(2\pi\gamma)}. \quad (5.78)$$

These results exhibit a number of remarkable features of the coupled neurons: According to (5.78) their frequency sum, i.e. their activity, is enhanced by positive coupling A . Simultaneously, according to (5.77) some frequency pulling occurs. According to (5.75), neuron 1 becomes active even for vanishing or negative c_1 (provided $|c_1 2\pi| < c_2 A/\gamma$), if neuron 2 is activated by c_2 . This has an important application in the interpretation of the perception of Kaniza figures, and, more generally, to associative memory, as we shall demonstrate below (Sect. 6.4).

5.5 Stability Equations

An important question concerns the stability of the behavior of a system, which means in the present case the stability of the phase-locked state that we derived in the preceding section. To this end, we start with the equations for the dendritic current and the phase of neuron 1 that are subject to the impact of neuron 2. For reasons that will become clear below, we include the fluctuating forces. Thus, we begin with the equations

$$\dot{\psi}_1(t) = -\gamma\psi_1(t) + af(\phi_2(t)) + F_{\psi,1}(t), \quad (5.79)$$

$$\dot{\phi}_1(t) = c\psi_1(t) + p_{\text{ext}}(t) + F_{\phi,1}(t). \quad (5.80)$$

We shall perform the stability analysis in two ways, namely in the conventional mathematical way and in a physically or physiologically realistic manner. Let us start with the first approach, in which case we put

$$F_{\psi,1} = F_{\phi,1} = 0 \quad \text{for all times.} \quad (5.81)$$

Then we assume that at time $t = t_0$ a new initial condition

$$\psi_1(t_0) \rightarrow \psi_1(t_0) + \eta_1(t_0) \quad (5.82)$$

is imposed on (5.79) and (5.80) so that in the course of time the dendritic current, and via (5.80) the axonal phase, develop differently than before,

$$\psi_1(t) \rightarrow \psi_1(t) + \eta_1(t), \quad \phi_1(t) \rightarrow \phi_1(t) + \xi_1(t). \quad (5.83)$$

We may also introduce another new initial condition

$$\phi_1(t_0) \rightarrow \phi_1(t_0) + \xi_1(t_0), \quad (5.84)$$

which leads to a new time-development of the phase and dendritic current according to

$$\phi_1(t) \rightarrow \phi_1(t) + \xi_1(t), \quad \psi_1(t) \rightarrow \psi_1(t) + \eta_1(t). \quad (5.85)$$

Also both new initial conditions (5.82) and (5.84) may be imposed simultaneously. We shall speak of an asymptotically stable solution to (5.79) and (5.80) if

$$\text{stable: } \eta_1(t), \xi_1(t) \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{for } t \rightarrow \infty, \quad (5.86)$$

and of a marginally stable solution if ξ_1, η_1 remain small if they are initially small. Now let us consider the second approach that we may call the *physiological or physical*. In this case, the perturbations are physically realized and represented by specific fluctuating forces in (5.79) and (5.80). Such a perturbation may be a δ -kick in (5.79)

$$F_{\psi,1} = \eta_1(t_0)\delta(t - t_0), \quad F_{\phi,1} = 0. \quad (5.87)$$

The effect of a δ -kick can be dealt with in the by now well-known way, namely by integrating both sides of (5.79) over a small interval around $t = t_0$, which leads to

$$\psi_1(t_0 + \epsilon) = \psi_1(t_0 - \epsilon) + \eta_1(t_0). \quad (5.88)$$

But (5.88) is nothing but the definition of a new initial condition in accordance with (5.82). What does this result mean to the second equation, i.e. (5.80)? Before the jump this equation reads

$$\dot{\phi}_1(t_0 - \epsilon) = c\psi_1(t_0 - \epsilon) + p_{\text{ext}}(t), \quad (5.89)$$

whereas after the jump it becomes

$$\dot{\phi}_1(t_0 + \epsilon) = c(\psi_1(t_0) + \eta_1(t_0)) + p_{\text{ext}}(t_0). \quad (5.90)$$

A comparison between (5.90) with (5.89) tells us that a velocity jump of the phase of neuron 1 has happened.

Let us consider the impact of a δ -kick on the phase ϕ_1 according to (5.80). Using

$$F_{\phi,1}(t) = \xi_1(t_0)\delta(t - t_0), \quad F_{\psi,1} = 0 \quad (5.91)$$

and integrating over the time interval around $t = t_0$ leads to

$$\phi_1(t_0 + \epsilon) = \phi_1(t_0 - \epsilon) + \xi_1(t_0), \quad (5.92)$$

which means that (5.91) causes a phase jump. As can be seen from (5.80), the same effect can be achieved if the external signal p_{ext} contains a δ -kick. After these preparations, we are in a position to consider an equation from which the dendritic currents have been eliminated. Differentiating (5.80) with respect to time, inserting (5.79) and using (5.80) again, leads to

$$\ddot{\phi}_1 + \gamma\dot{\phi}_1 = Af(\phi_2) + C(t) + F_1(t). \quad (5.93)$$

Note that this elimination only makes sense if $c \neq 0$ and $a \neq 0$. The quantities occurring on the r.h.s. of (5.93) are defined by

$$C = \gamma p_{\text{ext}} + \dot{p}_{\text{ext}} \quad (5.94)$$

and

$$F_j = \gamma F_{\phi,j} + \dot{F}_{\phi,j} + cF_{\psi,j}, \quad j = 1, 2. \quad (5.95)$$

The solution of (5.93) requires that the initial conditions are known. From the physiological point of view, we assume that at the initial time $t = 0$ there is no external input, i.e. $p_{\text{ext}}(0) = 0$, and that the neurons are at rest, i.e.

$$\psi_1(0) = 0, \quad \phi_1(0) = 0. \quad (5.96)$$

Furthermore a look at (5.80) tells us that at that time also

$$\dot{\phi}_1(0) = p_{\text{ext}}(0) + f(\phi_2(0)) = 0 \quad (5.97)$$

holds. Equations (5.96) and (5.97) serve as initial conditions for the integration of (5.93). We assume p_{ext} is in the form

$$p_{\text{ext}}(t) = p(1 - e^{-\gamma t}), \quad (5.98)$$

which guarantees that the external signal vanishes at time $t = 0$ and reaches its steady-state value after times bigger than $1/\gamma$. We integrate both sides of (5.93) over time from $t = 0$ to t and obtain

$$\dot{\phi}_1(t) + \gamma\phi_1(t) = A \int_0^t f(\phi_2(\sigma))d\sigma + \gamma pt + B_1(t) \quad (5.99)$$

with the abbreviation

$$B_j(t) = \int_0^t F_j(\sigma)d\sigma, \quad j = 1, 2. \quad (5.100)$$

A different time constant Γ instead of γ in (5.98) will lead to an additive constant in (5.99), which can be compensated by a time shift or correspondingly by a shift of phase. Since (5.98) is used both in (5.99) and the corresponding one in which the indices 1 and 2 are interchanged, this time is the same for both neurons and does not change their relative phase but only the position of the absolute phase. Thus, phase locking is preserved. Since we want to study the behavior of deviations from the phase-locked state, we must also consider its equation

$$\dot{\phi}(t) + \gamma\phi(t) = A \int_0^t f(\phi(\sigma))d\sigma + \gamma pt. \quad (5.101)$$

In the following we want to show how different kinds of perturbations give rise to different kinds of stability behaviors. We study the combined impact of (5.87) and (5.91). We now wish to derive the basic equations for our stability analysis. To this end, we compare the perturbed time-evolution of $\phi_1(t)$ according to (5.99) with the unperturbed evolution of ϕ according to (5.101). We insert the hypothesis

$$\phi_j(t) = \phi + \xi_j(t), \quad j = 1, 2, \quad (5.102)$$

into (5.99) and subtract (5.101), which yields

$$\dot{\xi}_1 + \gamma\xi_1 = A \left(\int_0^t f(\phi(\sigma) + \xi_2(\sigma))d\sigma - \int_0^t f(\phi(\sigma))d\sigma \right) + B_1(t). \quad (5.103)$$

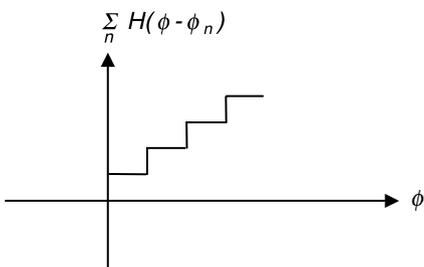


Fig. 5.11. The sum (5.105) of Heaviside functions

The following analysis is a little bit intricate, so we refer the reader who is not interested in too many mathematical details to the final result which is presented below in (5.116) and (5.117). On the other hand, the more mathematically interested reader surely will have read Chap. 4 and in that Sects. 4.1 and 4.2, so we can capitalize on his or her knowledge. The integrals occurring on the r.h.s. of (5.103) are well-known to us. Using the explicit form of $f(\phi)$, we obtain

$$\int_0^t f(\phi) dt \equiv \int_0^t \dot{\phi} \sum_n \delta(\phi - \phi_n) dt = \sum_n \int_0^{\phi} \delta(\phi - \phi_n) d\phi = J(\phi), \quad (5.104)$$

which is nothing but a sum over step functions or Heaviside functions (4.15), which is depicted in Fig. 5.11,

$$J(\phi) = \sum_n H(\phi - \phi_n), \quad (5.105)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} H(\sigma) &= 0 & \text{for } \sigma < 0, \\ &= 1/2 & \text{for } \sigma = 0, \\ &= 1 & \text{for } \sigma > 0. \end{aligned} \quad (5.106)$$

We now can immediately use the results that we have derived in Sect. 4.2 starting from $G(T)$ defined in (4.40). In order to apply our former results to the present case, we have to use the identifications

$$\phi(t) \rightarrow \phi(t) - 2\pi n, \quad \xi(t) \rightarrow \xi_2(T), \quad (5.107)$$

$$t \rightarrow \sigma, \quad T \rightarrow t, \quad (5.108)$$

and to sum (4.40) over the integers n . Thus, we have to make the substitution

$$\begin{aligned} G(t) \rightarrow G_{\text{tot}}(t) &= \sum_n \left(\int_0^t \delta(\phi(\sigma) + \xi_2(\sigma) - 2\pi n) \left(\dot{\phi}(\sigma) + \dot{\xi}_2(\sigma) \right) d\sigma \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \int_0^t \delta(\phi(\sigma) - 2\pi n) \dot{\phi}(\sigma) d\sigma \right). \end{aligned} \quad (5.109)$$

Furthermore in accordance with the definitions of the times defined the Sect. 4.2, we use the identifications

$$t_0^- \rightarrow t_n^- : \quad \phi(t_n^-) + \xi_2(t_n^-) = 2\pi n \quad (5.110)$$

$$t_0 \rightarrow t_n : \quad \phi(t_n) = 2\pi n. \quad (5.111)$$

Since the time difference between t_n and t_n^- is small, we may use the replacement

$$\xi_2(t_n^-) \approx \xi_2(t_n). \quad (5.112)$$

In this way, the relation (4.51) can be translated into

$$(t_n - t_n^-) = \xi_2(t_n) / \dot{\phi}(t_n), \quad (5.113)$$

where for the steady phase-locked state we may use

$$\dot{\phi}(t_n) = \dot{\phi}(t_0). \quad (5.114)$$

Finally we note that after (4.55) we recognized that G practically has the properties of a δ -function provided the time interval (5.113) is small enough and we take care of the corresponding area. Thus, our final result reads

$$G_{\text{tot}}(t) \approx \sum_n \delta(t - 2\pi n) \xi_2(t_n) / \dot{\phi}(t_0). \quad (5.115)$$

It should be noted that the result (5.115) can be achieved in several ways, but the present is probably the most concise approach. The reader who was not so much interested in mathematical trickery can now resume reading this section, namely inserting (5.115) into (5.103), and we arrive at our final result

$$\dot{\xi}_1 + \gamma \xi_1 = aD(t)\xi_2 + B_1(t), \quad (5.116)$$

and by an exchange of indices 1,2

$$\dot{\xi}_2 + \gamma \xi_2 = aD(t)\xi_1 + B_2(t), \quad (5.117)$$

where

$$a = A\dot{\phi}^{-1} \quad \text{and} \quad D(t) = \sum_{\ell} \delta(t - t_{\ell}), \quad (5.118)$$

where t_{ℓ} is defined by $\phi(t_{\ell}) = 2\pi\ell$. Adding or subtracting (5.116) and (5.117) to or from each other, we obtain

$$\dot{Z} + \gamma Z = aD(t)Z + B_+, \quad (5.119)$$

where

$$Z = \xi_1 + \xi_2, \quad B_+ = B_1 + B_2 \quad (5.120)$$

and

$$\dot{\xi} + \gamma \xi = -aD(t)\xi + B(t), \quad (5.121)$$

where

$$\xi = \xi_2 - \xi_1, \quad B = B_2 - B_1. \quad (5.122)$$

5.6 Phase Relaxation and the Impact of Noise

In the present section we want to bring (5.121) to life by studying the effects of various perturbations B on the phase difference $\xi = \xi_2 - \xi_1$. To this end, we evaluate B_1, B_2 (5.100) with F_j (5.95) for the combined impact of the δ -perturbations (5.87) and (5.91). Because of the properties of the δ -functions, we obtain

$$B_j(t) = \gamma\xi_j(t_0)H(t - t_0) + \xi_j(t_0)\delta(t - t_0) + c\eta_1(t_0)H(t - t_0). \quad (5.123)$$

This expression is the sum of two kinds of functions with different time-dependencies, namely $\delta(t)$ and $H(t)$. Let us discuss the corresponding terms separately

$$1) \quad B = \xi_0\delta(t - t_0). \quad (5.124)$$

Such a B is caused by a fluctuation

$$F_{\phi,j}(t) = \xi_j(t_0)\delta(t - t_0), \quad (5.125)$$

and a *correlated perturbation* $F_{\psi,j}$ so that

$$\gamma\xi_j(t_0) + c\eta_1(t_0) = 0. \quad (5.126)$$

If not otherwise stated, later in this book we shall assume that (5.126) is fulfilled. The effect of (5.124) can be dealt with by solving (5.121) as an initial value problem, whereby B may be dropped. As we shall show, $\xi(t) \rightarrow 0$ for $t \rightarrow \infty$, i.e. the phase-locked state is stable, at least for $|a|$ small enough.

$$2) \quad B = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < t_0 \\ B_0 = \text{const.} & \text{for } t \geq t_0. \end{cases} \quad (5.127)$$

This behavior occurs if in (5.123) the fluctuation $F_{\psi,j} \propto \delta(t - t_0)$ is used. As a result, to be demonstrated below, the relative phase is changed by a constant amount. This indicates neutral (marginal) stability.

3) B represents noise, where

$$\langle B(t) \rangle = 0, \quad \langle B(t)B(t') \rangle = Q\delta(t - t'). \quad (5.128)$$

As a result, the relative phase shows finite fluctuations (i.e. *no* phase diffusion).

Let us treat these cases in detail.

$$1) \quad B = \xi_0\delta(t - t_0).$$

In this case, we may treat (5.121) with $B \equiv 0$ subject to the initial value $\xi(t_0) = \xi_0$ (and $\xi(t) = 0$ for $t < t_0$)

$$\dot{\xi}(t) + \gamma\xi(t) = -a \sum \delta(t - t_n)\xi(t), \quad (5.129)$$

where a is defined by (5.118). Because the phase ϕ refers to the steady state, a is a constant. We first study the solution of (5.129) in the interval

$$t_n < t < t_{n+1} \quad (5.130)$$

and obtain

$$\xi(t) = \xi(t_n + \epsilon)e^{-\gamma(t-t_n)}. \quad (5.131)$$

At times t_n we integrate (5.129) over a small interval around t_n and obtain

$$\xi(t_n + \epsilon) = \xi(t_n - \epsilon) - a\xi(t_n - \epsilon). \quad (5.132)$$

Since ξ undergoes a jump at time t_n , there is an ambiguity with respect to the evaluation of the last term in (5.132). Instead of $t_n - \epsilon$ we might equally well choose $t_n + \epsilon$ or an average over both expressions. Since we assume, however, that a is a small quantity, the error is of higher order and we shall, therefore, choose ξ at $t_n - \epsilon$ as shown in (5.132). [Taking the average amounts to replacing $(1 - a)$ with $(1 - a/2)/(1 + a/2)$.] On the r.h.s. of (5.132), we insert (5.131) for $t = t_n + \epsilon$ and thus obtain

$$\xi(t_n + \epsilon) = (1 - a)\xi(t_{n-1} + \epsilon)e^{-\gamma(t_n - t_{n-1})}. \quad (5.133)$$

Since the t_n 's are equally spaced, we put

$$t_n - t_{n-1} \equiv \Delta. \quad (5.134)$$

For the interval

$$t_N < t < t_{N+1} \quad (5.135)$$

the solution reads

$$\xi(t) = \xi(t_0 + \epsilon)(1 - a)^N e^{-\gamma\Delta \cdot N - \gamma(t - t_N)}. \quad (5.136)$$

Since for excitatory interaction, $a > 0$, and $\dot{\phi}$ sufficiently large the absolute value of $1 - a$ is smaller than unity, (5.136) shows that the phase deviation $\xi(t)$ relaxes towards zero in the course of time. We turn to the cases 2) and 3), where $B(t)$ is time-dependent and the equation to be solved reads

$$\dot{\xi}(t) + \gamma\xi(t) = B(t) - a \sum \delta(t - t_n)\xi(t). \quad (5.137)$$

In the interval

$$t_{n-1} < t < t_n \quad (5.138)$$

the general solution of (5.137) reads

$$\xi(t) = \xi(t_{n-1} + \epsilon)e^{-\gamma(t-t_{n-1})} + \int_{t_{n-1}}^t e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} B(\sigma) d\sigma. \quad (5.139)$$

We first treat the case that $B(t)$ is non-singular. At time t_n , the integration of (5.137) over a small time interval yields

$$\xi(t_n + \epsilon) = \xi(t_n - \epsilon) - a\xi(t_n - \epsilon). \quad (5.140)$$

We put $t = t_n - \epsilon$ in (5.139) and thus obtain

$$\xi(t_n - \epsilon) = \xi(t_{n-1} + \epsilon)e^{-\gamma(t_n - t_{n-1})} + \int_{t_{n-1}}^{t_n} e^{-\gamma(t_n - \sigma)} B(\sigma) d\sigma. \quad (5.141)$$

We replace the r.h.s. of (5.140) by means of (5.141) and obtain

$$\xi(t_n + \epsilon) = (1 - a) \left\{ \xi(t_{n-1} + \epsilon)e^{-\gamma\Delta} + \hat{B}(t_n) \right\}, \quad (5.142)$$

where we abbreviated the integral in (5.141) by \hat{B} . Introducing the variable x instead of ξ , we can rewrite (5.142) in an obvious manner by means of

$$x_n = (1 - a) \left\{ x_{n-1}e^{-\gamma\Delta} + \hat{B}_n \right\}. \quad (5.143)$$

To solve the set of equations (5.143), we make the substitution

$$x_n = ((1 - a)e^{-\gamma\Delta})^n y_n \quad (5.144)$$

and obtain a recursion formula for y_n ,

$$y_n - y_{n-1} = (1 - a)^{-n+1} e^{\gamma t_n} \hat{B}_n. \quad (5.145)$$

Summing over both sides of (5.145), we obtain

$$\sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - y_{n-1}) = \sum_{n=1}^N (1 - a)^{-n+1} e^{\gamma t_n} \hat{B}_n, \quad (5.146)$$

or, written more explicitly,

$$y_N = y_0 + \sum_{n=1}^N (1 - a)^{-n+1} \int_{t_{n-1}}^{t_n} e^{\gamma\sigma} B(\sigma) d\sigma. \quad (5.147)$$

By means of (5.144), we obtain the final result in the form (with $t_n - t_{n-1} = \Delta$)

$$\begin{aligned} x_N &= y_0 ((1 - a)e^{-\gamma\Delta})^N \\ &+ \sum_{n=1}^N (1 - a)^{N-n+1} e^{-\gamma\Delta N} \int_{t_{n-1}}^{t_n} e^{\gamma\sigma} B(\sigma) d\sigma. \end{aligned} \quad (5.148)$$

So far our treatment was quite general. Now we have to treat the cases 2) and 3) separately.

2) $B = B_0$ for all times. B is time-independent, the integral in (5.148) can immediately be evaluated

$$x_N = y_0 \left((1-a)e^{-\gamma\Delta} \right)^N + \sum_{n=1}^N (1-a)^{N-n+1} e^{-\gamma\Delta N} B \frac{1}{\gamma} (e^{\gamma t_n} - e^{\gamma t_{n-1}}). \quad (5.149)$$

The sum is a geometric series, and we obtain

$$x_N = x_0 (1-a)^N e^{-\gamma\Delta N} + \frac{B}{\gamma} (e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1) \cdot \frac{1 - (1-a)^N e^{-\gamma\Delta N}}{(1-a)e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1}. \quad (5.150)$$

For $N \rightarrow \infty$, x_N acquires a constant value, i.e. the phase shift persists and becomes for $a \ll 1$ particularly simple, namely $x_N = B/\gamma$.

3) We now turn to the case in which B is a stochastic function with the properties shown in (5.128). In the following we shall study the correlation function for the case N large, and

$$|N - N'| \text{ finite}. \quad (5.151)$$

Using (5.148), the correlation function can be written in the form

$$\begin{aligned} \langle x_N x_{N'} \rangle &= \sum_{n=1}^N \sum_{n'=1}^{N'} (1-a)^{N-n+1} e^{-\gamma\Delta N} (1-a)^{N'-n'+1} \\ &\quad \times e^{-\gamma\Delta N'} \int_{t_{n-1}}^{t_n} \int_{t_{n'-1}}^{t_{n'}} d\sigma d\sigma' \cdot e^{\gamma\sigma} e^{\gamma\sigma'} \langle B(\sigma) B(\sigma') \rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (5.152)$$

We evaluate (5.152) in the case

$$N' \geq N \quad (5.153)$$

and use the fact that B is δ -correlated with strength Q . Then (5.152) acquires the form

$$R \equiv \langle x_N x_{N'} \rangle = \sum_{n=1}^N (1-a)^{N-n+1} e^{-\gamma\Delta N} (1-a)^{N'-n+1} e^{-\gamma\Delta N'} \frac{1}{2\gamma} (e^{2\gamma t_n} - e^{2\gamma t_{n-1}}) Q. \quad (5.154)$$

The evaluation of the sum is straightforward and yields

$$R = \frac{Q}{2\gamma} (e^{2\gamma\Delta} - 1) \left\{ (1-a)^{-2} e^{2\gamma\Delta} - 1 \right\}^{-1} (1-a)^{N'-N} e^{-\gamma\Delta(N'-N)}, \quad (5.155)$$

which for

$$a \ll 1, \quad (5.156)$$

can be written as

$$R = e^{-(\gamma\Delta+a)(N'-N)} \cdot \frac{Q}{2\gamma}. \quad (5.157)$$

The correlation function has the same form as we would expect from a purely continuous treatment of (5.137), i.e. in which the δ -functions are smeared out.

5.7 Delay Between Two Neurons

We treat the case in which the interaction between the neurons has a time delay τ . We shall assume that both the deviation ξ from the phase-locked state and ϕ are delayed by the same amount τ . The crucial interaction term replacing that of (5.103) then reads

$$A \int_0^t f(\phi(t' - \tau) + \xi_2(t' - \tau)) dt' - A \int_0^t f(\phi(t' - \tau)) dt'. \quad (5.158)$$

Its effect can be reduced to that without delay by using the formal replacements

$$\xi_j(\sigma) \rightarrow \xi_j(\sigma - \tau), \quad j = 1, 2, \quad \phi(\sigma) \rightarrow \phi(\sigma - \tau). \quad (5.159)$$

In this way we are immediately led to the equation

$$\dot{\xi}(t) + \gamma\xi(t) = -a \sum_n \delta(t - t_n)\xi(t - \tau) \quad (5.160)$$

by replacing $\xi(t)$ with $\xi(t - \tau)$ on the r.h.s. of (5.121). In this section, we ignore fluctuations, i.e. we put $B = 0$. Again we assume that ϕ undergoes a stationary process. We write

$$t_n = n\Delta \quad (5.161)$$

and assume that τ is an integer multiple of Δ (in Chap. 6 we shall relax this assumption),

$$\tau = M\Delta, \quad M \text{ integer}. \quad (5.162)$$

In the following we capitalize on the fact that we may convert the (delay) *differential* equation (5.160) into a (delay) *difference* equation (see (5.165) below). In a way that is by now well-known from the treatment of (5.121) in Sect. 5.6, we obtain the jump condition

$$\xi(t_n + \epsilon) = \xi(t_n - \epsilon) - a\xi(t_{n-M} - \epsilon) \quad (5.163)$$

and the solution in between jumps

$$\xi(t_n - \epsilon) = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\xi(t_{n-1} + \epsilon). \quad (5.164)$$

A combination of (5.163) and (5.164) yields

$$\xi(t_n + \epsilon) = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\xi(t_{n-1} + \epsilon) - ae^{-\gamma\Delta}\xi(t_{n-M-1} + \epsilon). \quad (5.165)$$

We use the notation $x_n = \xi(t_n + \epsilon)$ so that (5.165) reads

$$x_n = e^{-\gamma\Delta}x_{n-1} - ae^{-\gamma\Delta}x_{n-M-1}. \quad (5.166)$$

In order to solve this recursion equation, we make the hypothesis

$$x_n = \beta^n x_0. \quad (5.167)$$

Inserting (5.167) into (5.166) yields

$$\beta^{M+1} - e^{-\gamma\Delta}\beta^M + ae^{-\gamma\Delta} = 0. \quad (5.168)$$

Under the assumption that a is a small quantity, the roots of (5.168) can be written in the form

$$\beta_1 = e^{-\gamma\Delta} (1 - ae^{M\gamma\Delta}). \quad (5.169)$$

and

$$\beta_{j+1} = a^{1/M} e^{2\pi i j / M}, \quad j = 1, \dots, M. \quad (5.170)$$

The general solution to (5.166) is a superposition of the solutions (5.167) with the corresponding eigenvalues β , i.e.

$$x_n = \beta_1^n x_{01} + \beta_2^n x_{02} + \dots + \beta_{M+1}^n x_{0M+1}, \quad (5.171)$$

where the coefficients x_{0j} are still unknowns. In order to determine them, we must invoke the initial conditions. Without delay, a single value, $x_0 \equiv \xi_0$ will suffice to start the iteration described by the recursion relation (5.166). With $M > 0$ the situation is more involved, however. To illustrate it, let us consider the recursion equation (5.166) for $M = 1$ and let us start with $n = 1, 2, 3$.

$$x_1 = e^{-\gamma\Delta}(x_0 - ax_{-1}), \quad (5.172)$$

$$x_2 = e^{-\gamma\Delta}(x_1 - ax_0), \quad (5.173)$$

$$x_3 = e^{-\gamma\Delta}(x_2 - ax_1). \quad (5.174)$$

Obviously, to start the iteration, we must know both x_0 and x_{-1} . They are fixed by the initial conditions $x_0 = \xi_0, x_{-1} = \xi_{-1}$, where ξ_0, ξ_{-1} are prescribed. On the other hand, we know the general form of the solution

$$x_n = \beta_1^n x_{01} + \beta_2^n x_{02}. \quad (5.175)$$

To determine the unknown x_{01}, x_{02} , we require

$$n = 0: x_0 = x_{01} + x_{02} = \xi_0, \quad (5.176)$$

$$n = -1: x_{-1} = \beta_1^{-1}x_{01} + \beta_2^{-1}x_{02} = \xi_{-1}, \quad (5.177)$$

which are two linear equations for these. We are now in a position to present the general case, $M \geq 1$. Equations (5.172)–(5.174) are generalized to

$$\begin{aligned} n = 1: \quad x_1 &= e^{-\gamma\Delta} (x_0 - ax_{-M}) \\ n = 2: \quad x_2 &= e^{-\gamma\Delta} (x_1 - ax_{-M+1}) \\ &\vdots \\ n = M: \quad x_M &= e^{-\gamma\Delta} (x_{M-1} - ax_{-1}) \\ n = M + 1: \quad x_{M+1} &= e^{-\gamma\Delta} (x_M - ax_0). \end{aligned} \quad (5.178)$$

In this general case, to start the iteration, $x_0, x_{-1}, \dots, x_{-M}$ must be given by the initial values $\xi_0, \xi_{-1}, \dots, \xi_{-M}$, respectively. Using (5.171), this requirement leads to $M + 1$ linear equations for the $M + 1$ unknowns $x_{0j}, j = 1, \dots, M + 1$.

The solution is straightforward, but gives rise to rather lengthy formulae, at least in the general case. Rather, what concerns us is the relaxation behavior of the deviation $\xi(t_n) = x_n$. β_1 is smaller than unity, and equally all the other roots (5.170) have an absolute value that is smaller than unity, though the roots (5.170) indicate oscillatory behavior. All in all we may state that the absolute value of all roots is smaller than unity so that phase-locking occurs even in the case of delay.

5.8 An Alternative Interpretation of the Lighthouse Model

In Sect. 5.5 we derived a basic equation that allowed us to study the impact of noise as well as phase relaxation. For later purposes, we mention that (5.99) with (5.100) can be interpreted in quite a different manner. Let us again study the linearized case; then one may readily convince oneself that (5.99) can be considered as a result of the elimination of the dendritic currents ψ_1 from the following equations

$$\text{neuron 1 axon 1:} \quad \dot{\phi}_1 + \gamma\phi_1 = c\psi_1 + F_{\phi_1}, \quad (5.179)$$

$$\text{dendrite 1:} \quad \dot{\psi}_1 = af(\phi_2) + (\gamma p + \dot{p})/c + F_{\psi_1}. \quad (5.180)$$

Indeed, (5.180) can be solved in the form

$$\psi_1 = \int_0^t af(\phi(\sigma))d\sigma + \int_0^t (\gamma p + \dot{p})/cd\sigma + \int_0^t F_{\psi_1}d\sigma, \quad (5.181)$$

which, when inserted into (5.179) yields our former (5.99). When the fluctuating force F_{ϕ_j} is chosen as a δ -function and $F_{\psi_j} = 0$ we have to deal with the initial value problem for the phases ϕ_j . It is not difficult to find a nonlinear version of (5.179), namely

$$\dot{\phi}_1 + \gamma\phi_1 = cS(\psi_1) + F_{\phi_1}. \quad (5.182)$$

For neuron 2, the equations can be obtained by exchanging the indices 1 and 2. Clearly, the neural dynamics described by (5.179) and (5.180) differs from that of Sect. 5.1. From the mathematical point, however, the impact of initial conditions and their equivalence to a δ -function perturbation can be more easily seen and utilized.

6. The Lighthouse Model. Many Coupled Neurons

This chapter represents, besides Chap. 8, the main part of my book. Throughout, Chap. 6 deals with an arbitrary number N of neurons, i.e. large neural nets are treated. In Sect. 6.1 I formulate the basic equations that include arbitrary couplings between neurons, consisting of dendrites, synapses and axons. Both arbitrary delays and fluctuations are taken care of. The following sections focus on the existence and stability of the phase-locked state. I adopt a pedagogic style by stepwise increasing the complications. Sections 6.2–6.4 neglect delays and fluctuations. They show under which conditions a phase-locked state is possible. This requires, in particular, the same sensory inputs for the neurons. I study also the impact of different inputs. This leads to the concept of associative memory (Sect. 6.4). The following Sects. 6.5–6.10 include the effect of delays on associative memory, and, in particular, on the phase-locked state, its stability and its stability limits. The example of two delay times will be presented in detail, but general results are also included. Spatial aspects, namely phase-waves, are dealt with in Sect. 6.9. The remaining part of this chapter deals with two still more involved topics. Section 6.11 studies the combined action of fluctuations and delay. Sections 6.12 and 6.13 are devoted to the strong coupling limits where the formerly treated phase-locked state becomes unstable.

6.1 The Basic Equations

Since the network equations are a straightforward generalization of those of two neurons, formulated in Sect. 5.1, we can write them down immediately. The generation of a dendritic current $\psi_m(t)$ of dendrite m is described by

$$\dot{\psi}_m(t) = \sum_k a_{mk} P_k(t - \tau_{mk}) - \gamma \psi_m(t) + F_{\psi,m}(t). \quad (6.1)$$

The coefficients a_{mk} are called synaptic strengths, $P_k(t - \tau)$ are pulses of axon k with delay time τ_{mk} , γ is the dendritic damping, and $F_{\psi,m}(t)$ is a stochastic force. A more general relation between axonal pulses and dendritic currents is given by

$$\psi_m(t) = \sum_k \int_{-\infty}^t G_{mk}(t, \sigma) P_k(\sigma - \tau_{mk}) d\sigma + \tilde{F}_m(t). \quad (6.2)$$

The kernel G_{mk} may contain fluctuations that result, for example, from the failure of the opening of vesicles. In this book, we will not pursue this version (6.2), however. Again, by means of a periodic function f with δ -peaks, P_k is expressed by a phase ϕ_k (see (6.9) below). The phase ϕ_k is subject to the equation

$$\dot{\phi}_k(t) = S \left(\sum_m c_{km} \psi_m(t - \tau'_{km}) + p_{\text{ext},k}(t - \tau''_{km}), \Theta_k \right) + F_{\phi,k}(t). \quad (6.3)$$

$S(X)$ is a sigmoid function that may be chosen in the Naka–Rushton form, $p_{\text{ext},k}$ is an external signal, Θ_k is a threshold, and $F_{\phi,k}$ is a fluctuating force. The coefficients c_{km} are assumed time-independent, and τ' and τ'' are delay times.

In the following we assume that the neural net operates in the (practically) linear regime of S , so S in (6.3) can be replaced by its argument. (A proportionality factor can be absorbed in c_{km} , $p_{\text{ext},k}$, respectively.) It is a simple matter to eliminate ψ_m from (6.1) and (6.3). To this end we differentiate (6.3) with respect to time, and replace $\dot{\psi}_m$ on the r.h.s. of the resulting equation by the r.h.s. of (6.1). Finally we use again (6.3) to eliminate ψ_m . The reader is advised to perform these steps using paper and pencil. Changing the notation of indices, we thus finally obtain a set of equations of a rather simple structure

$$\begin{aligned} \ddot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma \dot{\phi}_j(t) &= \sum_{\ell,m} A_{j\ell;m} P_\ell(t - \tau_{j\ell m}) \\ &+ C_j(t) + \hat{F}_j(t). \end{aligned} \quad (6.4)$$

The reader must not be shocked, however, by the rather lengthy expressions of the abbreviations. We will hardly need their explicit form.

$$A_{j\ell;m} = c_{jm} a_{m\ell}, \quad (6.5)$$

$$\tau_{j\ell m} = \tau'_{jm} + \tau_{m\ell}, \quad (6.6)$$

$$C_j(t) = \gamma \sum_m p_{\text{ext},j}(t - \tau''_{jm}) + \sum_m \dot{p}_{\text{ext},j}(t - \tau''_{km}), \quad (6.7)$$

$$\hat{F}_j(t) = \gamma F_{\phi,j}(t) + \sum_m c_{jm} F_{\psi,m}(t - \tau'_{jm}) + \dot{F}_{\phi,j}(t). \quad (6.8)$$

We will use the explicit form, already known to us,

$$P_\ell(t) = f(\phi_\ell(t)) = \dot{\phi}_\ell(t) \sum_n \delta(\phi_\ell(t) - 2\pi n). \quad (6.9)$$

The initial conditions in (6.4) are

$$\dot{\phi}_j(0) = \phi_j(0) = 0. \quad (6.10)$$

6.2 A Special Case. Equal Sensory Inputs. No Delay

To get a first insight into the action of many coupled neurons, we first treat a special case of (6.4). We assume that all sensory inputs are equal

$$C_j = C \quad \text{for all } j, \quad (6.11)$$

all thresholds equal

$$\Theta_j = \Theta \quad \text{for all } j, \quad (6.12)$$

and p_{ext} and Θ_j time-independent, i.e.

$$C(t): \text{ constant.} \quad (6.13)$$

No delay implies (see 6.6)

$$\tau_{j\ell m} = 0. \quad (6.14)$$

Equation (6.4) then reads

$$\ddot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma \dot{\phi}_j(t) = \sum_{\ell} A_{j\ell} P_{\ell}(t) + C + \hat{F}_j(t). \quad (6.15)$$

Note that in the absence of time delays the index m is superfluous and has been dropped.

Let us study the possibility of phase-locking (or more precisely, synchrony). In this case

$$\phi_j(t) = \phi(t) \quad \text{for all } j. \quad (6.16)$$

In a first step, we ignore noise, i.e. we put $\hat{F}_j = 0$. Inserting (6.16) into (6.15) and using (6.9) yields

$$\ddot{\phi}(t) + \gamma \dot{\phi}(t) = \sum_{\ell} A_{j\ell} P(\phi(t)) + C. \quad (6.17)$$

This equation provides us with a necessary condition for phase locking: Since the l.h.s. of (6.17) is independent of the index j , so must be the r.h.s.! This implies

$$\sum_{\ell} A_{j\ell} = A \quad \text{independent of } j. \quad (6.18)$$

This condition might look rather restrictive, but below we will convince ourselves that it can be fulfilled in realistic networks.

When using (6.18) in (6.17), we discover that the resulting equation for the phase-locked state is well-known to us and was solved in Sect. 5.3. Thus we are left with the stability analysis of the phase-locked state, including the effect of noise. By analogy with Sect. 5.5 we integrate (6.15) over time and

observe the initial conditions (6.10), and use the explicit form of P_k (6.9). Because of

$$\int_0^t \sum_n \delta(\phi_k(t) - 2\pi n) \dot{\phi}_k(t) dt = \int_0^{\phi_k(t)} \sum_n \delta(\phi - 2\pi n) d\phi \equiv J(\phi_k(t)) \quad (6.19)$$

we obtain

$$\dot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma\phi_j(t) = \sum_k A_{jk} J(\phi_k(t)) + Ct + B_j(t), \quad (6.20)$$

where

$$B_j(t) = \int_0^t \hat{F}_j(\sigma) d\sigma. \quad (6.21)$$

The function (6.19) is plotted in Fig. 5.11. The equation of the phase-locked state reads

$$\dot{\phi}(t) + \gamma\phi(t) = AJ(\phi(t)) + Ct, \quad (6.22)$$

where (6.18) is assumed.

To study the impact of noise and the stability of the phase-locked state, we put

$$\phi_j = \phi + \xi_j \quad (6.23)$$

and subtract (6.22) from (6.20), which yields

$$\dot{\xi}_j + \gamma\xi_j = \sum_k A_{jk} \left\{ \int_0^{\phi + \xi_k} \sum_n \delta(\phi - 2\pi n) d\phi - \int_0^{\phi} \sum_n \delta(\phi - 2\pi n) d\phi \right\} + B_j(t), \quad (6.24)$$

where we use the explicit form of J .

In order to study stability and/or if the noise sources F are small, we may assume that ξ_j is a small quantity. According to basic rules of analysis, we may evaluate the curly bracket by replacing the first integral by its argument, multiplied by ξ_k . When proceeding from a δ -function containing ϕ in its argument to one that contains time t , a correction factor $\dot{\phi}^{-1}$ must be added. This had been derived in Sect. 4.1 so that we can use those results here. Thus, eventually, we obtain

$$\dot{\xi}_j(t) + \gamma\xi_j(t) = D(t) \sum_k a_{jk} \xi_k(t) + B_j(t), \quad (6.25)$$

where

$$D(t) = \sum_{\ell=-\infty}^{+\infty} \delta(t - t_\ell^+), \quad (6.26)$$

where t_ℓ^+ is defined by $\phi(t_\ell^+) = 2\pi\ell$, ℓ an integer. The coefficients a_{jk} are defined by $a_{jk} = A_{jk}\dot{\phi}^{-1}$, where $\dot{\phi}(t_\ell^+)$ is independent of ℓ because of the stationarity of ϕ . Readers who have carefully read Sect. 5.5, surely noted that here I just presented an alternative derivation of (5.116) and (5.117). This may help to get more familiar with the δ -formalism.

The set of linear differential equations (6.25) can be solved by the standard procedure. We introduce eigenvectors $\tilde{\mathbf{v}}^\mu$ with components v_j^μ and eigenvalues λ_μ so that

$$\sum_j v_j^\mu a_{jk} = \lambda_\mu v_k^\mu \quad (6.27)$$

and put

$$\sum_j v_j^\mu \xi_j(t) = \eta_\mu(t), \quad (6.28)$$

$$\sum_j v_j^\mu B_j(t) = \tilde{B}_\mu(t). \quad (6.29)$$

This allows us to transform (6.25) into the uncoupled equations for the collective variables η_μ

$$\dot{\eta}_\mu + \gamma\eta_\mu = D(t)\lambda_\mu\eta_\mu + \tilde{B}_\mu(t). \quad (6.30)$$

We thus obtain the remarkable result that the whole net reacts to fluctuations as if it is composed of independent, self-coupled neurons subject to collective fluctuating forces $\tilde{B}_\mu(t)$. Thus we may directly transfer the results of Sect. 5.6 to the present case. The stability of the phase-locked state is guaranteed (sufficient condition) if the real parts of all eigenvalues λ_μ are negative.

6.3 A Further Special Case. Different Sensory Inputs, but No Delay and No Fluctuations

The starting point of our considerations is again the set of (6.4) with $\tau_{j\ell m} = 0$. Thus we wish to deal with the equations

$$\ddot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma\dot{\phi}_j(t) = \sum_\ell A_{j\ell}P_\ell(t) + C_j. \quad (6.31)$$

Note that in contrast to the preceding section we do not (yet) impose conditions on the $A_{j\ell}$ s. We put

$$\dot{\phi}_j(t) = x_j(t) + c_j \equiv x_j(t) + C_j/\gamma \quad (6.32)$$

and use (6.9) to obtain equations for x_j

$$\dot{x}_j + \gamma x_j = \sum_{\ell} A_{j\ell} f(\phi_{\ell}). \quad (6.33)$$

Since (6.33) is, at least from a formal point of view, a linear equation in x_j , we make the hypothesis

$$x_j = \sum_{\ell} x_j^{(\ell)} \quad (6.34)$$

and require

$$\dot{x}_j^{(\ell)} + \gamma x_j^{(\ell)} = A_{j\ell} f(\phi_{\ell}). \quad (6.35)$$

For the solution of these equations, we proceed by close analogy to Sects. 5.3 and 5.4. We first assume that the times at which the spikes of the δ -functions in $f(\phi_{\ell})$ occur are given quantities. We denote them by $t_{N(\ell)}$, because to each $f(\phi_{\ell})$ there belongs a specific ℓ -dependent time series. By analogy to Sects. 5.3 and 5.4 we assume equidistant jumps, i.e.

$$t_{N(\ell)+1} - t_{N(\ell)} = \Delta_{\ell} \quad (6.36)$$

and steady states. Then the solution of (6.35) reads (see (5.66))

$$x_j^{(\ell)}(t_{N(\ell)} + \epsilon) = A_{j\ell} (1 - e^{-\gamma\Delta_{\ell}})^{-1}, \quad (6.37)$$

or for an arbitrary time with $t_{N(\ell)} + \epsilon < T < t_{N(\ell)+1} - \epsilon$

$$x_j^{(\ell)}(T) = e^{-\gamma(T-t_{N(\ell)})} A_{j\ell} (1 - e^{-\gamma\Delta_{\ell}})^{-1}. \quad (6.38)$$

Using (6.34), we obtain the final result

$$x_j(T) = \sum_{\ell} e^{-\gamma(T-t_{N(\ell)})} A_{j\ell} (1 - e^{-\gamma\Delta_{\ell}})^{-1}. \quad (6.39)$$

The jump intervals are determined by

$$\int_{t_{N(\ell)}}^{t_{N(\ell)+1}} \dot{\phi}_{\ell}(\sigma) d\sigma = 2\pi. \quad (6.40)$$

In order to evaluate the integral in (6.40), we use (6.32) and (6.39), where under the assumption

$$\gamma (t_{N(\ell)+1} - t_{N(\ell)}) \ll 1 \quad (6.41)$$

(6.39) can be approximated by

$$x_j = \sum_{\ell'} A_{j\ell'} / (\gamma \Delta_{\ell'}). \quad (6.42)$$

Thus we obtain (generalizing (5.73) and (5.74))

$$c_\ell \Delta_\ell + \Delta_\ell \sum_{\ell'} A_{\ell\ell'} / (\gamma \Delta_{\ell'}) = 2\pi. \quad (6.43)$$

These equations relate the axonal pulse frequencies $\omega_\ell = 2\pi/\Delta_\ell$ to the strengths of the sensory inputs, c_ℓ . The corresponding equations for ω_ℓ are linear and read

$$c_\ell + \sum_{\ell'} [A_{\ell\ell'} / (2\pi\gamma)] \omega_{\ell'} = \omega_\ell. \quad (6.44)$$

They can be solved under the usual conditions for linear equations. Here we want to discuss two aspects of particular relevance for neural nets. In general, we may expect that all pulse frequencies ω_ℓ are different. Since equal frequencies are a prerequisite for phase locking, this phenomenon will be absent. On the other hand, we may derive from (6.44) a sufficient condition for equal frequencies, $\omega_\ell = \omega$, namely

$$\omega = c_\ell \left(1 - \sum_{\ell'} A_{\ell\ell'} / (2\pi\gamma) \right)^{-1}. \quad (6.45)$$

This equation implies that its r.h.s. is independent of the index ℓ . This is for instance the case if

$$c_\ell = c, \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{\ell'} A_{\ell\ell'} \quad \text{independent of } \ell. \quad (6.46)$$

These were the conditions for the phase-locked state in Sect. 6.2.

A second important aspect is this: Depending on the coupling coefficients $A_{\ell\ell'}$, even those ω_ℓ may become non-zero, for which $c_\ell = 0$. This may give rise to (weak) associative memory as we will demonstrate in the next section. Note that in all cases discussed here only those solutions are allowed for which $\omega_\ell \geq 0$ for all ℓ . This imposes limitations on c_ℓ and $A_{\ell\ell'}$.

6.4 Associative Memory and Pattern Filter

Let us first discuss what is meant by “associative memory”. Such a memory serves the completion of data. A telephone book is an example. When we look up the name “Alex Miller”, this book provides us with his telephone number. Or when we see the face of a person whom we know, our brain tells us (or should tell us!) his or her name. The results of the preceding section may

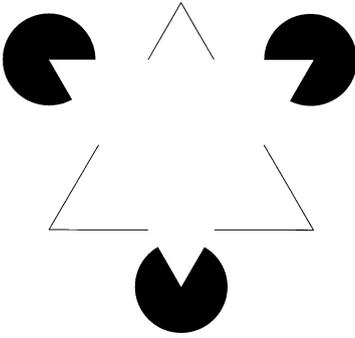


Fig. 6.1. A Kanisza figure. A white triangle seems to float above a black triangle

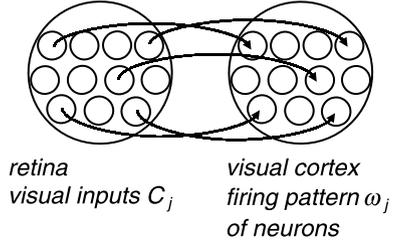


Fig. 6.2. Mapping from sensory cells of the retina onto neurons of the visual cortex

serve as a model that allows us to understand a particular kind of associative memory for which an example is provided by looking at Fig. 6.1. In spite of the interruptions of the lines, we see a complete triangle! By means of the results of the preceding section, this phenomenon can be understood as follows, whereby we use a highly schematic representation: When we look at a picture, our retina receives input signals that are eventually transmitted to the visual cortex, where they act as sensory inputs C_j on neuron j . Because of these inputs and their mutual coupling, the neurons “fire” with specific axonal pulse rates, so that the input pattern C (cf. Fig. 6.2) is translated into a “firing” pattern ω .

Let us assume that the neural net has learned preferred patterns, for instance an *uninterrupted* line. To make things simple, consider a retina consisting of only three sensory cells and the neural net also consisting of only three neurons. An uninterrupted line will then be represented by the activation scheme $(1,1,1)$, whereas an interrupted scheme is represented by $(1,0,1)$. Can a network be constructed, i.e. can the A_{jks} be chosen in such a way that the sensory input vector $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{C}/\gamma \equiv (c_1, c_2, c_3) = (1, 0, 1)$ is practically converted into a vector $\boldsymbol{\omega} \equiv (\omega_1, \omega_2, \omega_3)$ whose components

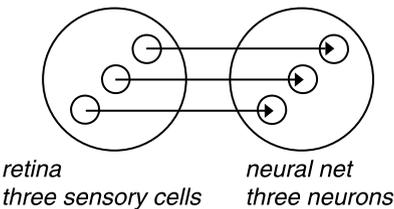


Fig. 6.3. Same as Fig. 6.2, but only three sensory cells and three neurons are involved

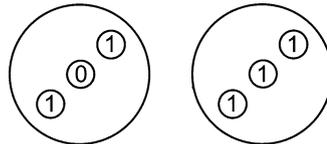


Fig. 6.4. *L.h.s.*: stored prototype pattern, an uninterrupted line; *r.h.s.*: pattern received by retina

are (approximately) equal, i.e. represent an uninterrupted line? We choose $\tilde{A}_{\ell\ell'} = A_{\ell\ell'}/(2\pi\gamma)$ according to the following scheme:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \tilde{A}_{11} & \tilde{A}_{12} & \tilde{A}_{13} \\ \tilde{A}_{21} & \tilde{A}_{22} & \tilde{A}_{23} \\ \tilde{A}_{31} & \tilde{A}_{32} & \tilde{A}_{33} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0,9 & 0 & 0 \\ 0,8 & 0,1 & 0 \\ 0,8 & 0 & 0,1 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (6.47)$$

The solution of the corresponding equations (6.43) then reads

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\omega} &= (\omega_1, \omega_2, \omega_3) \approx (10, 9, 10), \quad \text{i.e.} \\ \boldsymbol{\omega} &\approx 10 \cdot (1, 1, 1). \end{aligned} \quad (6.48)$$

In other words, the neural nets “sees” the middle point in spite of the fact that its corresponding original cell on the retina is *not* excited. The way we wrote down the matrix scheme so as to obtain the required result (6.48) may seem rather mysterious. Therefore we present the general theory lying behind that construction. The reader may easily check the general formulas using our above explicit example. Thereby we use a few results from algebra. We denote those patterns that are preferably recognized by the neural net as prototype vectors \mathbf{v}_μ that are distinguished by an index μ . To be precise, we write each \mathbf{v}_μ as a column vector

$$\mathbf{v}_\mu = \begin{pmatrix} v_{\mu 1} \\ v_{\mu 2} \\ \vdots \\ v_{\mu N} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (6.49)$$

Similarly, the sensory input vector \mathbf{c} is written as

$$\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \\ \vdots \\ c_N \end{pmatrix}. \quad (6.50)$$

In our above example,

$$\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.51)$$

is such a vector, whereas

$$\boldsymbol{\omega} = \mathbf{v} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.52)$$

is a prototype vector of the axonal pulse rates. We first assume that the “synaptic strengths” $\tilde{A}_{\ell\ell'}$ are given, and that the prototype vectors \mathbf{v}_μ are just the eigenvectors to the matrix $(\tilde{A}_{\ell\ell'})$ with eigenvalues λ_μ . (We assume

for simplicity that all λ_μ values are different from each other.) Thus in vector notation

$$\tilde{A}\mathbf{v}_\mu = \lambda_\mu\mathbf{v}_\mu. \quad (6.53)$$

Now consider (6.44) that reads in vector notation

$$(1 - \tilde{A})\boldsymbol{\omega} = \mathbf{c}. \quad (6.54)$$

For our procedure we need one more step, namely the adjoint vectors \mathbf{v}_ν^+ , $\nu = 1, \dots, N$. They are defined as row vectors

$$\mathbf{v}_\nu^+ = (v_{\nu 1}^+, v_{\nu 2}^+, \dots, v_{\nu N}^+), \quad (6.55)$$

and must obey the relations

$$(\mathbf{v}_\nu^+ \mathbf{v}_\mu) = \delta_{\nu\mu}, \quad (6.56)$$

i.e. the scalar product between the two vectors must equal the Kronecker δ ,

$$\delta_{\nu\mu} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } \nu = \mu \\ 0 & \text{for } \nu \neq \mu \end{cases}. \quad (6.57)$$

By means of $\mathbf{v}_\mu, \mathbf{v}_\nu^+$ we can easily construct the relationship between $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ and \mathbf{c} . We decompose $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ and \mathbf{c} into the \mathbf{v}_μ :

$$\boldsymbol{\omega} = \sum_{\mu} \alpha_{\mu} \mathbf{v}_{\mu}, \quad (6.58)$$

$$\mathbf{c} = \sum_{\mu} \beta_{\mu} \mathbf{v}_{\mu}, \quad (6.59)$$

where the coefficients $\alpha_{\mu}, \beta_{\mu}$ are given by means of (see the exercises)

$$\alpha_{\mu} = (\mathbf{v}_{\mu}^+ \boldsymbol{\omega}), \quad (6.60)$$

$$\beta_{\mu} = (\mathbf{v}_{\mu}^+ \mathbf{c}). \quad (6.61)$$

Inserting (6.58) and (6.59) into (6.54), using (6.53) and multiplying both sides by \mathbf{v}_{ν}^+ (see the exercises) yields

$$(1 - \lambda_{\nu})\alpha_{\nu} = \beta_{\nu}, \quad (6.62)$$

$$\alpha_{\nu} = (1 - \lambda_{\nu})^{-1}\beta_{\nu}. \quad (6.63)$$

Inserting this result into (6.58) yields

$$\boldsymbol{\omega} = \sum_{\nu} (1 - \lambda_{\nu})^{-1} \beta_{\nu} \mathbf{v}_{\nu}. \quad (6.64)$$

This means that, depending on the size of the eigenvalues λ_ν , the \mathbf{v}_ν s are mapped onto the axonal pulse frequencies with quite different weights $(1 - \lambda_\nu)^{-1}$. In our above simple example we made the choice

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.65)$$

with $\lambda_1 = 0, 9$, $\lambda_2 = 0, 1$, $\lambda_3 = 0, 1$.

But how were we able to choose the coefficients $\tilde{A}_{\ell\ell'}$? In fact, there is an algebraic formula, namely

$$\tilde{A}_{\ell\ell'} = \sum_{\mu} \lambda_{\mu} v_{\mu\ell} v_{\mu\ell'}^+. \quad (6.66)$$

The \mathbf{v}_{μ}^+ that obey (6.56) can easily be calculated and are

$$\mathbf{v}_1^+ = (1, 0, 0), \quad \mathbf{v}_2^+ = (-1, 1, 0), \quad \mathbf{v}_3^+ = (-1, 0, 1). \quad (6.67)$$

As we may note, we can construct pulse-coupled neural networks so that their axonal pulse patterns come very close to specific, learned preferred patterns – though there remains a residuum of other small patterns superimposed on the preferred pattern. We call this effect *weak associative memory*. A number of hypotheses on how the human brain learns patterns have been established. These hypotheses imply, for instance, that our brain learns those visual patterns that are frequently seen. There is, however, another important aspect that relates to the concept Gestalt. Namely in interpreting forms, we prefer to perceive “good Gestalts” (good shapes). But why are, for example, straight lines, or triangles or circles “good Gestalts”? This is, in this author’s opinion, an unsolved problem.

A last comment: Is the completion of a line just in our imagination, or do neurons fire that correspond to the gap in the line. Experiments on monkeys show that the latter is the case.

In this section our theoretical treatment of weak associative memory has been based on a simplified model. In Sect. 6.5 we want to show that the underlying model can be much more general.

Exercises. (1) Derive (6.60) and (6.61).

Hint: Start from (6.58) and (6.59) and use (6.56).

(2) Derive (6.62), (6.63).

Hint: Use (6.57), (6.60) and (6.61).

6.5 Weak Associative Memory. General Case*

In this section we will see that the basic equations (6.44) that relate the pulse frequencies ω with the sensory inputs can be derived from the general

equations (6.4)

$$\begin{aligned} \ddot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma \dot{\phi}_j(t) &= \sum_{\ell, m} A_{j\ell; m} P_\ell(t - \tau_{j\ell m}) \\ &+ C_j(t) + \hat{F}_j(t), \end{aligned} \quad (6.68)$$

where all the quantities have been defined in Sect. 6.1. The initial conditions in (6.68) are

$$\dot{\phi}_j(0) = \phi_j(0) = 0. \quad (6.69)$$

In spite of the highly nonlinear character of (6.68) because of P_ℓ , and the delay times, we can derive an exact relationship between the pulse rates of the axons j , where we use time-averaged pulse rates. We will assume that $C_j(t)$ is practically constant over an averaging interval of duration T and that T is large enough to cover the delay times τ . We integrate (6.68) over the time interval T and divide both sides by T

$$\begin{aligned} T^{-1} \left(\phi_j(T + t_0) - \dot{\phi}_j(t_0) + \gamma \phi_j(T + t_0) - \gamma \phi_j(t_0) \right) \\ = T^{-1} \sum_{\ell, m} A_{j\ell; m} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} P_\ell(t - \tau_{j\ell m}) dt \\ + T^{-1} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} C_j(t) dt + T^{-1} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \hat{F}_j(t) dt. \end{aligned} \quad (6.70)$$

We discuss the individual terms in the mathematical limit $T \rightarrow \infty$. (For all practical purposes, T can be chosen finite but large enough.) We obtain

$$T^{-1} (\dot{\phi}(T + t_0) - \dot{\phi}(t_0)) \rightarrow 0, \quad (6.71)$$

because the phase velocity is finite. Since $\frac{1}{2\pi} (\phi_j(T + t_0) - \phi_j(t_0))$ is the number of rotations of the phase angle ϕ_j ,

$$\frac{1}{2\pi} T^{-1} (\phi_j(T + t_0) - \phi_j(t_0)) = \omega_j \quad (6.72)$$

is the pulse rate. Since

$$\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} P_\ell(t - \tau) dt \quad (6.73)$$

contains δ -peaks according to (6.9), we obtain

$$(6.73) = \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \sum_n \delta(\phi_\ell(t - \tau) - 2\pi n) \dot{\phi}_\ell(t - \tau) dt \quad (6.74)$$

$$= \int_{t_0 - \tau}^{t_0 + T - \tau} \sum_n \delta(\phi_\ell(t) - 2\pi n) \dot{\phi}_\ell(t) dt \quad (6.75)$$

$$= \int_{\phi_\ell(t_0 - \tau)}^{\phi_\ell(t_0 + T - \tau)} \sum_n \delta(\phi_\ell - 2\pi n) d\phi_\ell, \quad (6.76)$$

which is equal to the number of pulses of axon ℓ in the interval $[\phi_\ell(t_0 - \tau), \phi_\ell(t_0 + T - \tau)]$.

Thus when we divide (6.73) by T and assume steady-state conditions, we obtain the pulse rate

$$T^{-1} \int_{t_0}^{t_0 + T} P_\ell(t - \tau) d\tau = \omega_\ell. \quad (6.77)$$

For slowly varying or constant $C_j(t) \approx C_j$, we obtain

$$T^{-1} \int_{t_0}^{t_0 + T} C_j(t) dt = C_j(t_0). \quad (6.78)$$

Because we assume that the fluctuating forces possess an ensemble average

$$\langle \hat{F}_j(t) \rangle = 0, \quad (6.79)$$

and under the further assumption that the time average equals the ensemble average we find

$$T^{-1} \int_{t_0}^{t_0 + T} \hat{F}_j(t) dt = 0. \quad (6.80)$$

Lumping the results (6.71), (6.72), (6.77), (6.78) and (6.80) together and dividing all terms by $(2\pi\gamma)$, we obtain the *linear* equations

$$\omega_j = \sum_{\ell, m} A_{j\ell; m} (2\pi\gamma)^{-1} \omega_\ell + c_j(t), \quad (6.81)$$

where

$$c_j(t) = (2\pi\gamma)^{-1} C_j(t). \quad (6.82)$$

The equations (6.81) can be solved under the usual conditions. Depending on the coupling coefficients $A_{j\ell} = \sum_m A_{j\ell; m}$, even those ω_ℓ may become non-zero for which $c_\ell = 0$. On the other hand, only those solutions are allowed for which $\omega_\ell \geq 0$ for all ℓ . This imposes limitations on c_ℓ and $A_{\ell\ell'}$. Putting $\sum_m A_{j\ell; m} = A_{j\ell}$, we recover (6.44) which formed the basis of our discussion in Sect. 6.4.

6.6 The Phase-Locked State of N Neurons. Two Delay Times

In this section and the following we resume our study of the solutions of the basic equation (6.4) (see also (6.68)), but without time averages. Our main goal will be the study of the impact of delays on the spiking behavior of the net. Since this section is more mathematical than the previous sections (except Sect. 6.5), we summarize the essential results. In this section we show how the phase-locked state can be calculated. More importantly, the subsequent section shows that delays diminish the stability of the phase-locked state. Furthermore, after a perturbation the phases of the individual axonal pulses relax towards the phase-locked state in an oscillatory fashion.

In order to demonstrate our general approach, we consider N neurons, two delay times τ_1, τ_2 and no fluctuations. The phase equations (6.4) acquire the form

$$\ddot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma \dot{\phi}_j(t) = \sum_{k,\ell} A_{jk,\ell} f(\phi_k(t - \tau_\ell)) + C_j, \quad (6.83)$$

where we assume

$$C_j = C = \text{const.} \quad (6.84)$$

We assume the existence of the phase-locked state in which case $\phi_j = \phi$ for $j = 1, \dots, N$. ϕ obeys

$$\ddot{\phi}(t) + \gamma \dot{\phi}(t) = A_1 f(\phi(t - \tau_1)) + A_2 f(\phi(t - \tau_2)) + C, \quad (6.85)$$

where

$$A_1 = \sum_k A_{jk,1}, A_2 = \sum_k A_{jk,2} \quad (6.86)$$

are assumed to be independent of j . This condition is by no means unrealistic as we will demonstrate below. We treat the case where ϕ is periodic in time with a period Δ still to be determined. The spikes of $f(\phi(t))$ are assumed to occur at times $t_n = n\Delta$, n an integer. We thus have

$$t - \tau_j = t_{n_j} = n_j \Delta, \quad j = 1, 2, \quad (6.87)$$

or, after solving (6.87) with respect to t ,

$$t = n_j \Delta + \tau_j = n \Delta + \tau'_j = t_n + \tau'_j, \quad (6.88)$$

where τ' is assumed to obey the inequality

$$0 \leq \tau'_j < \Delta. \quad (6.89)$$

We introduce the new variable x by means of

$$\dot{\phi} = c + x(t); \quad c = C/\gamma \quad (6.90)$$

so that (6.85) is transformed into

$$\dot{x}(t) + \gamma x(t) = A_1 f(\phi(t - \tau_1)) + A_2 f(\phi(t - \tau_2)). \quad (6.91)$$

In the following we first assume that the r.h.s. is a given function of time t . Because of the δ -function character of f , we distinguish between the following four cases, where we incidentally write down the corresponding solutions of (6.91)

$$\text{I: } t_n + \tau'_1 < t < t_n + \tau'_2 : x(t) = e^{-\gamma(t-t_n-\tau_1)} x(t_n + \tau'_1 + \epsilon), \quad (6.92)$$

$$\text{II: } t_n + \tau'_2 \mp \epsilon : x(t_n + \tau'_2 + \epsilon) = x(t_n + \tau'_2 - \epsilon) + A_2, \quad (6.93)$$

$$\text{III: } t_n + \tau'_2 < t < t_{n+1} + \tau'_1 : x(t) = e^{-\gamma(t-t_n-\tau'_2)} x(t_n + \tau'_2 + \epsilon), \quad (6.94)$$

$$\text{IV: } t_{n+1} + \tau'_1 \pm \epsilon : x(t_{n+1} + \tau'_1 + \epsilon) = x(t_{n+1} + \tau'_1 - \epsilon) + A_1. \quad (6.95)$$

Combining the results (6.92)–(6.95), we find the following recursion relation

$$x(t_{n+1} + \tau'_1 + \epsilon) = e^{-\gamma\Delta} x(t_n + \tau'_1 + \epsilon) + e^{-\gamma(\Delta + \tau'_1 - \tau'_2)} A_2 + A_1. \quad (6.96)$$

Under the assumption of a steady state, we may immediately solve (6.96) and obtain

$$x(t_{n+1} + \tau'_1 + \epsilon) = (1 - e^{-\gamma\Delta})^{-1} \left(A_1 + e^{-\gamma(\Delta + \tau'_1 - \tau'_2)} A_2 \right). \quad (6.97)$$

The only unknown quantity is Δ . To this end, we require, as usual,

$$\int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} \dot{\phi} dt = 2\pi, \quad (6.98)$$

i.e. that ϕ increases by 2π . In order to evaluate (6.98) by means of (6.91), we start from (6.91), which we integrate on both sides over time t

$$\int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} (\dot{x}(t) + \gamma x(t)) dt = \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} (A_1 f(\phi(t - \tau_1)) + A_2 f(\phi(t - \tau_2))) dt \quad (6.99)$$

Because of the steady-state assumption, we have

$$\int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} \dot{x}(t) dt = x(t_{n+1}) - x(t_n) = 0 \quad (6.100)$$

so that (6.99) reduces to

$$\gamma \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} x(t) dt = A_1 + A_2. \quad (6.101)$$

Using this result as well as (6.90) in (6.98), we obtain

$$c\Delta + (A_1 + A_2)/\gamma = 2\pi \quad (6.102)$$

which can be solved for the time interval Δ to yield

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{c} (2\pi - (A_1 + A_2)/\gamma). \quad (6.103)$$

We can also determine the values of $x(t)$ in the whole interval by using the relations (6.92)–(6.95). Because the time interval Δ must be positive, we may suspect that $\Delta = 0$ or, according to (6.103),

$$(2\pi - (A_1 + A_2)/\gamma) = 0 \quad (6.104)$$

represents the stability limit of the stationary phase-locked state. We will study this relationship in Sect. 6.10.

6.7 Stability of the Phase-Locked State. Two Delay Times*

In order to study this problem, we assume as initial conditions

$$\dot{\phi}_j(0) = \phi_j(0) = 0 \quad (6.105)$$

and integrate (6.4) over time, thus obtaining

$$\dot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma\phi_j(t) = \sum_{k,\ell} A_{jk,\ell} J(\phi_k(t - \tau_\ell)) + C_j t + B_j(t), \quad (6.106)$$

where J has been defined in (6.19). We include the fluctuating forces, put

$$B_j(t) = \int_0^t \hat{F}_j(\sigma) d\sigma, \quad (6.107)$$

and assume that C_j in (6.7) is time-independent. The phase-locked state obeys

$$\dot{\phi}(t) + \gamma\phi(t) = \sum_{k\ell} A_{jk,\ell} J(\phi(t - \tau_\ell)) + Ct. \quad (6.108)$$

In order to study the stability of the state $\phi(t)$, we make the hypothesis

$$\dot{\phi}_j = \dot{\phi} + \dot{\xi}_j, \quad j = 1, \dots, N. \quad (6.109)$$

Subtracting (6.108) from (6.106) and assuming

$$C_j = C, \quad (6.110)$$

we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\xi}_j(t) + \gamma \xi_j(t) = \sum_{k\ell} A_{jk;\ell} (J(\phi(t - \tau_\ell) + \xi_j(t - \tau_\ell)) \\ - J(\phi(t - \tau_\ell))) + B_j(t). \end{aligned} \quad (6.111)$$

A somewhat extended analysis analogous to that of Sect. 6.2 shows that for small ξ_k these equations reduce to

$$\dot{\xi}_j(t) + \gamma \xi_j(t) = \sum_{k\ell} a_{jk;\ell} D_\ell(t) \xi_k(t) + B_j(t). \quad (6.112)$$

The quantities on the r.h.s. of (6.112) are defined as follows:

$$D_\ell(t) = \sum_n \delta(t - \tau_\ell - t_n^+), \quad (6.113)$$

$$\phi(t_n^+) = 2\pi n, \quad (6.114)$$

$$a_{jk;\ell} = A_{jk;\ell} \left[\dot{\phi}(t_n^+ + \tau_\ell) \right]^{-1}. \quad (6.115)$$

To allow for a concise treatment of (6.112), we introduce the matrix $(a_{jk;\ell})$

$$\tilde{A}_\ell = (a_{jk;\ell}) \quad \begin{array}{l} j = 1, \dots, N \\ k = 1, \dots, N \end{array} \quad (6.116)$$

so that we cast (6.112) into the vector equation

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}(t) + \gamma \boldsymbol{\xi}(t) = \sum_\ell \tilde{A}_\ell D_\ell(t) \boldsymbol{\xi}(t) + \mathbf{B}(t). \quad (6.117)$$

Again, as before, we introduce the following times for $\ell = 1, 2$

$$\begin{aligned} \tau_\ell = M_\ell \Delta + \tau'_\ell; \quad 0 \leq \tau'_\ell < \Delta; \\ (n_\ell + M_\ell) \Delta + \tau'_\ell = n \Delta + \tau'_\ell; \quad n_\ell + M_\ell = n; \quad n_\ell = n - M_\ell. \end{aligned} \quad (6.118)$$

Under this definition we have the following regions for which we solve (6.117), namely

I: $n\Delta + \tau'_1 < t < n\Delta + \tau'_2$:

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}(t) = e^{-\gamma(t - (n\Delta + \tau'_1))} \boldsymbol{\xi}(n\Delta + \tau'_1 + \epsilon) + \hat{\mathbf{B}}(t, n\Delta + \tau'_1), \quad (6.119)$$

where

$$\hat{\mathbf{B}}(t, t') = \int_{t'}^t e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} \mathbf{B}(\sigma) d\sigma, \quad (6.120)$$

II: $n\Delta + \tau'_2 \pm \epsilon$:

$$\xi(n\Delta + \tau'_2 + \epsilon) - \xi(n\Delta + \tau'_2 - \epsilon) = \tilde{A}_2 \xi((n - M_2)\Delta), \quad (6.121)$$

III: $n\Delta + \tau'_2 < t < (n + 1)\Delta + \tau'_1$:

$$\xi(t) = e^{-\gamma(t-(n\Delta+\tau'_2))} \xi(n\Delta + \tau'_2) + \hat{\mathbf{B}}(t, n\Delta + \tau'_2), \quad (6.122)$$

IV: $(n + 1)\Delta + \tau'_1 \pm \epsilon$:

$$\xi((n + 1)\Delta + \tau'_1 + \epsilon) - \xi((n + 1)\Delta + \tau'_1 - \epsilon) = \tilde{A}_1 \xi((n + 1 - M_1)\Delta). \quad (6.123)$$

By means of (6.119)–(6.123) and eliminating the intermediate steps, we obtain the fundamental recursion equation

$$\begin{aligned} \xi((n + 1)\Delta + \tau'_1 + \epsilon) &= e^{-\gamma\Delta} \xi(n\Delta + \tau'_1 + \epsilon) \\ &+ e^{-\gamma(\Delta+\tau'_1-\tau'_2)} \tilde{A}_2 \xi((n - M_2)\Delta) \\ &+ \tilde{A}_1 \xi((n + 1 - M_1)\Delta) + \hat{\mathbf{B}}((n + 1)\Delta + \tau'_1; n\Delta + \tau'_1). \end{aligned} \quad (6.124)$$

In order to express the solutions in between the time steps, we use

$$\xi(n\Delta + \tau'_1 + \epsilon) = e^{-\gamma\tau'_1} \xi(n\Delta + \epsilon). \quad (6.125)$$

Inserting (6.125) into (6.124), we readily obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \xi_{n+1} &= e^{-\gamma\Delta} \xi_n + e^{-\gamma(\Delta-\tau'_2)} \tilde{A}_2 \xi_{n-M_2} + e^{\gamma\tau'_1} \tilde{A}_1 \xi_{n+1-M_1} \\ &+ e^{\gamma\tau'_1} \hat{B}((n + 1)\Delta + \tau'_1; n\Delta + \tau'_1), \end{aligned} \quad (6.126)$$

where we used the abbreviation

$$\xi(n\Delta + \epsilon) = \xi_n. \quad (6.127)$$

Equation (6.126) is valid, if $M_2 \geq 0$ and $M_1 \geq 1$. If $M_1 = 0$, a further recursive step must be performed. To a good approximation we may replace

$$\xi_{n+1-M_1} \quad \text{by} \quad e^{-\Delta\gamma} \xi_{n-M_1}. \quad (6.128)$$

In order to solve the difference equations (6.126), we must observe the initial conditions. As is well-known from delay differential equations, these conditions must be defined on a whole interval. In the present case we may capitalize on the fact that we are dealing with difference equations so that we need to consider only a discrete set of initial conditions. On the other hand, we need a *complete set*. In order to demonstrate how to proceed, we

first treat the special case of only *one* delay time $\tau = M\Delta$, M an integer, and ignore the fluctuating forces. The equation to be discussed is of the form

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}_{n+1} = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\boldsymbol{\xi}_n + A\boldsymbol{\xi}_{n-M}, \quad (6.129)$$

where A is a matrix. Since we want to consider the process starting at $n = 0$, we need the $M + 1$ initial values

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}_0, \boldsymbol{\xi}_{-1}, \dots, \boldsymbol{\xi}_{-M}. \quad (6.130)$$

This then allows us to initiate the solution of the $M + 1$ recursive equations

$$n = 0: \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}_1 = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\boldsymbol{\xi}_0 + A\boldsymbol{\xi}_{-M}, \quad (6.131)$$

$$n = 1: \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}_2 = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\boldsymbol{\xi}_1 + A\boldsymbol{\xi}_{1-M}, \quad (6.132)$$

$$\vdots$$

$$n = M: \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}_{M+1} = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\boldsymbol{\xi}_M + A\boldsymbol{\xi}_0. \quad (6.133)$$

In the general case of (6.126), we can proceed correspondingly where the initial conditions are given by (6.130) where

$$M = \max(M_1 - 1, M_2). \quad (6.134)$$

We make the hypothesis

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}_n = \beta^n \boldsymbol{\xi}_0. \quad (6.135)$$

Inserting it into (6.126) yields

$$\left(\beta^{n+1} - e^{-\gamma\Delta}\beta^n - e^{-\gamma(\Delta-\tau'_2)}\tilde{A}_2\beta^{n-M_2} - e^{\gamma\tau'_1}\tilde{A}_1\beta^{n+1-M_1} \right) \boldsymbol{\xi}_0 = 0, \quad (6.136)$$

or equivalently

$$\left(\beta - e^{-\gamma\Delta} - \beta^{-M_2}e^{-\gamma(\Delta-\tau'_2)}\tilde{A}_2 - e^{\gamma\tau'_1}\tilde{A}_1\beta^{1-M_1} \right) \boldsymbol{\xi}_0 = 0. \quad (6.137)$$

In order to discuss the solution of this equation, we consider a few examples.

(1) $M_1 = 1$, $M_2 = 0$. In this case, (6.137) reduces to

$$\left(\beta - e^{-\gamma\Delta} - e^{-\gamma(\Delta-\tau'_2)}\tilde{A}_2 - e^{\gamma\tau'_1}\tilde{A}_1 \right) \boldsymbol{\xi}_0 = 0. \quad (6.138)$$

We first study the following eigenvalue equation

$$\left(e^{-\gamma(\Delta-\tau'_2)}\tilde{A}_2 + e^{\gamma\tau'_1}\tilde{A}_1 \right) \mathbf{v}_\mu = \lambda_\mu \mathbf{v}_\mu, \quad \mu = 1, \dots, N. \quad (6.139)$$

Using its solution in (6.138) with $\boldsymbol{\xi}_0 = \mathbf{v}_\mu$, we obtain the corresponding eigenvalues

$$\beta_\mu = e^{-\gamma\Delta} + \lambda_\mu(\Delta, \tau'_1, \tau'_2). \quad (6.140)$$

(2) Here we consider the case $M_2 = M, M_1 = M + 1$. In this case we have to solve the eigenvalue equation

$$\left(\beta^{M+1} - e^{-\gamma\Delta} \beta^M - e^{-\gamma(\Delta-\tau'_2)} \tilde{A}_2 - e^{\gamma\tau'_1} \tilde{A}_1 \right) \boldsymbol{\xi}_0 = 0, \quad (6.141)$$

which because of (6.139) can be transformed into

$$\beta^{M+1} - e^{-\gamma\Delta} \beta^M - \lambda_\mu = 0. \quad (6.142)$$

Using the results of Sect. 5.7, we can easily solve this equation in the case that λ_μ is a small quantity.

There are two kinds of solutions, namely

$$\beta_\mu = e^{-\gamma\Delta} + \lambda_\mu e^{M\Delta\gamma}, \quad \mu = 1, \dots, N \quad (6.143)$$

and, for $M \geq 1$,

$$\beta_{j,\mu} = \left(-\lambda_\mu e^{\gamma\Delta} \right)^{1/M} e^{2\pi i j / M}, \quad \begin{array}{l} j = 0, \dots, M-1 \\ \mu = 1, \dots, N. \end{array} \quad (6.144)$$

Since β determines the damping of the deviations $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ from the phase-locked state ϕ , and also the instability of ϕ (see below), the dependence of β on the delay time $\tau = M\Delta$ is of particular interest. According to (6.143), for $\lambda_\mu > 0$ the damping becomes weaker when the delay time $\tau = M\Delta$ increases. Since for a stable solution $|\lambda_\mu e^{\gamma\Delta}| < 1$, the M -dependence of β indicates the same trend even more. In other words: the larger the time delay, the less stable the phase-locked solution is; it may even become unstable while in cases without time delays it is still stable. It is also noteworthy that according to (6.144) the solutions are oscillatory, because β is complex. We are now in a position to perform the complete solution to (6.126) taking into account the initial conditions (6.131)–(6.133). To this end we realize that the complete solution is given by

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}_n = \sum_{\mu} \left(c_{\mu} \beta_{\mu}^n + \sum_{j=0}^{M-1} c_{j,\mu} \beta_{j,\mu}^n \right) \mathbf{v}_{\mu}. \quad (6.145)$$

To calculate the coefficients $c_{\mu}, c_{j,\mu}$, we have to insert this expression into (6.126) (with $\hat{B} = 0$) for $n = 0, 1, \dots, M = \max(M_1 - 1, M_2)$, which yields equations that have been exemplified by (6.131)–(6.133). This yields $M \times N$ equations for the $M \times N$ unknown coefficients $c_{\mu}, c_{j,\mu}$. The explicit solution depends, of course, on the explicit form of \tilde{A}_1, \tilde{A}_2 .

Let us finally consider the general case (6.137), but assume

$$M_2 \geq M_1. \quad (6.146)$$

The case in which $M_2 \leq M_1 - 1$ can be treated similarly. We then cast (6.137) into the form

$$\left(\beta^{M_2+1} - e^{-\gamma\Delta} \beta^{M_2} - e^{-\gamma(\Delta-\tau'_2)} \tilde{A}_2 - e^{\gamma\tau'_1} \tilde{A}_1 \beta^{M_2+1-M_1} \right) \boldsymbol{\xi}_0 = 0. \quad (6.147)$$

This relationship can be simplified if we assume that the matrices \tilde{A}_1 and \tilde{A}_2 possess the same eigenvectors \mathbf{v}_μ but possibly different eigenvalues $\lambda_{1,\mu}, \lambda_{2,\mu}$. From (6.147) we then derive

$$\beta^{M_2+1} + e^{-\gamma\Delta} \beta^{M_2} - d_1 \lambda_{1,\mu} \beta^{M_2+1-M_1} - d_2 \lambda_{2,\mu} = 0, \quad (6.148)$$

where $d_1 = e^{-\gamma\tau'_1}$, $d_2 = e^{-\gamma(\Delta-\tau'_2)}$. The discussion of the corresponding eigenvalue equation for β must be left to a further analysis. Otherwise we can proceed as before.

6.8 Many Different Delay Times*

For the interested reader and for the sake of completeness, we quote the extension of the results of the preceding section to many different delay times. We put

$$\tau_\ell = M_\ell \Delta + \tau'_\ell, \quad 0 \leq \tau'_\ell < \Delta, \quad M \text{ an integer and } \ell = 1, 2, \dots, L. \quad (6.149)$$

The relation (6.103) generalizes to

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{c} \left(2\pi - (1/\gamma) \sum_{\ell=1}^L A_\ell \right) \quad (6.150)$$

and (note (6.128)!) the recursive relations (6.126) become

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\xi}_{n+1} &= e^{-\gamma\Delta} \boldsymbol{\xi}_n + e^{-\gamma\Delta} \sum_{\ell=1}^L \tilde{A}_\ell e^{\gamma\tau'_\ell} \boldsymbol{\xi}_{n-M_\ell} \\ &\quad + e^{\gamma\tau'_1} \hat{B}((n+1)\Delta + \tau'_1; n\Delta + \tau'_1). \end{aligned} \quad (6.151)$$

The eigenvalue equations for β become particularly simple if

$$M_\ell = M \quad (6.152)$$

so that (6.141) generalizes to

$$\left(\beta^{M+1} - e^{-\gamma\Delta} \beta^M - e^{-\gamma\Delta} \sum_{\ell=1}^L e^{\gamma\tau'_\ell} \tilde{A}_\ell \right) \boldsymbol{\xi}_0 = 0. \quad (6.153)$$

The further steps can be performed as before.

6.9 Phase Waves in a Two-Dimensional Neural Sheet

So far the index j as well as other indices simply served for an enumeration of the neurons. In this section we want to use them to indicate the positions of the neurons. To this end we consider a two-dimensional neural sheet in which the neurons, at least approximately, occupy the sites of a lattice with the axes x and y . These axes need not be orthogonal to each other. Along each axis, the distance between neighboring sites be a . We replace the index j by an index vector,

$$j \rightarrow \mathbf{j} = (j_x, j_y), \quad (6.154)$$

where $j_x = an_x$, $j_y = an_y$, and n_x, n_y are integer numbers $1, 2, \dots, L_x$ (or L_y). Thus the extensions of the neural sheet in its two directions are $J_x = aL_x$ and $J_y = aL_y$. Since the coefficients $A_{j,\ell}$ or $a_{j,\ell}$ contain two indices, we replace the latter by two vectors \mathbf{j}, ℓ . We consider an important case in which the coefficients $a_{j,\ell} \equiv a_{\mathbf{j},\ell}$ depend on the difference of the vectors \mathbf{j} and ℓ , for instance on the distance between the neural sites. In other words, we assume

$$a_{\mathbf{j},\ell} = a(\ell - \mathbf{j}).$$

To make things mathematically simple, we assume that $a(\mathbf{j})$ is periodic with periods J_x and J_y in the corresponding directions. We are now in a position to solve (6.139) in a very simple fashion. Using the vectors \mathbf{j} and ℓ , we write (6.139) in the form

$$\sum_{\ell} a(\ell - \mathbf{j})v(\ell) = \lambda v(\ell), \quad (6.155)$$

where the vector \mathbf{v} of (6.139) has the components $v(\ell)$. To solve (6.155), we make the hypothesis

$$v(\ell) = Ne^{i\boldsymbol{\kappa}\ell}, \quad (6.156)$$

where N is a normalization constant and $\boldsymbol{\kappa}$ is a wave vector with components κ_x, κ_y . Inserting (6.156) in (6.155) and multiplying both sides by $e^{-i\boldsymbol{\kappa}\ell}$ yields

$$\sum_{\ell} a(\ell - \mathbf{j})e^{i\boldsymbol{\kappa}(\mathbf{j}-\ell)} = \lambda_{\boldsymbol{\kappa}}, \quad (6.157)$$

where we equipped λ with the index $\boldsymbol{\kappa}$, because the l.h.s. certainly depends on $\boldsymbol{\kappa}$. According to (6.155), the eigenvalues $\lambda_{\boldsymbol{\kappa}}$ are the Fourier transform of $a(\ell)$, whereby we use the new summation index ℓ instead of $\ell - \mathbf{j}$. Clearly the vectors $\mathbf{v} = (v(\ell))$ depend also on $\boldsymbol{\kappa}$ so that we write

$$\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}_{\boldsymbol{\kappa}}. \quad (6.158)$$

We can now interpret (6.145) in more detail. The displacements ξ of the phases are a superposition of *spatial* waves. To bring out the *time dependence* of the amplitudes of these waves more explicitly, we write the coefficients of (6.145) in the form

$$\beta^n = e^{(i\omega - \gamma)t_n}, \quad (6.159)$$

where t_n are the discrete times. Since β can become complex in the case of delays, the frequencies ω become $\neq 0$ in this case. Otherwise waves are purely damped in time. The occurrence of excitation waves in brain tissue is known both in vivo and in vitro, but further detailed studies are needed.

6.10 Stability Limits of Phase-Locked State

In Sect. 6.8 we established a general relation for the pulse interval Δ , namely (6.150). Since this interval, because of its definition, cannot become negative, something particular must happen in the limit $\Delta \rightarrow 0$. We may suspect that this has something to do with the stability of the phase-locked state. Since (6.153) allows us to study the stability limit quite generally, we want to establish a relation between (6.153) and (6.150). To present this relation as simply as possible, we consider the case of no delay, i.e. (6.138) with $\tilde{A}_2 = 0, \tau'_1 = 0$. Because of (6.86) and (6.115), among the eigenvalues λ_μ of (6.139) is the following one

$$\lambda = \dot{\phi}^{-1} A \equiv \dot{\phi}^{-1} \sum_k A_{jk,1}. \quad (6.160)$$

It belongs to a vector \mathbf{v} with equal components. According to (6.98), we may make the estimate $\dot{\phi} = 2\pi/\Delta$, so that

$$\lambda = \Delta A / 2\pi. \quad (6.161)$$

Writing $\beta_\mu \equiv \beta$ in the form $\exp(\Lambda\Delta)$, we note that the *Lyapunov exponent* Λ is given by

$$\Lambda = \frac{1}{\Delta} \ln \beta. \quad (6.162)$$

From (6.140) and (6.161) we obtain for $\Delta \rightarrow 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \Lambda &= \frac{1}{\Delta} \ln (e^{-\gamma\Delta} + \Delta A / 2\pi) \approx \frac{1}{\Delta} \ln (1 + \Delta(A/2\pi - \gamma)) \\ &\approx A/2\pi - \gamma. \end{aligned} \quad (6.163)$$

The vanishing of the Lyapunov exponent, $\Lambda = 0$, indicates instability. This condition coincides with the vanishing of Δ (6.150). This coincidence of $\Delta = 0$ with the instability limit holds, however, only, if the real parts of all other eigenvalues λ_μ are not larger than λ , otherwise the instability occurs earlier.

We assumed, of course, $\lambda > 0, A_1 > 0$. While the “ λ -instability” retains the phase-locked state but leads to an exponential increase of the pulse rate (see Sect. 6.12 below), the other “ λ_μ -instabilities” lead to a destruction of the phase-locked state, giving rise to spatiotemporal activity patterns of the neurons. This can be seen as follows: The eigenvalue λ is connected with a space-independent eigenvector \mathbf{v} , whereas the other eigenvalues belong to space-dependent eigenvectors, e.g. to $\exp(i\kappa\mathbf{n})$ (or their corresponding real or imaginary parts). These patterns may become stabilized if the saturation of S (6.3) is taken into account.

6.11 Phase Noise*

After having explored the impact of delay on the stability of the phase-locked state, we turn to the study of the impact of noise. In order not to overload our presentation, we treat the example of a *single* delay time τ . It is hoped that in this way the general procedure can be demonstrated. We assume that a phase-locked state with $\phi_j = \phi$ exists and we study small deviations $\boldsymbol{\xi} = (\xi_1, \dots, \xi_N)$ from that state, i.e. we put

$$\phi_j = \phi + \xi_j. \quad (6.164)$$

In a generalization of Sect. 6.7, for small noise and corresponding small deviations ξ_j , the following difference equations for $\boldsymbol{\xi} = \boldsymbol{\xi}_n$ at times $t_n = n\Delta$, where Δ is the pulse interval, can be derived

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}_{n+1} = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\boldsymbol{\xi}_n + \tilde{A}\boldsymbol{\xi}_{n-M} + \hat{\mathbf{B}}_n. \quad (6.165)$$

\tilde{A} is a time-independent matrix proportional to $A = (A_{jk})$, and

$$\hat{B}_{\ell,n} = \int_{t_{n-1}}^{t_n} e^{-\gamma(t_n-\sigma)} \hat{F}_\ell(\sigma) d\sigma. \quad (6.166)$$

We measure the delay time τ in units of Δ , i.e. $\tau = M\Delta$, M an integer. The components $\hat{B}_{\ell,n}$ of the fluctuating forces are assumed to obey

$$\langle \hat{B}_{\ell,n} \hat{B}_{\ell',n'} \rangle = Q_{\ell\ell'} \delta_{nn'}. \quad (6.167)$$

We first seek the eigenvectors and eigenvalues of the matrix \tilde{A} (assuming that Jordan’s normal form has only diagonal elements)

$$\tilde{A}\mathbf{v}_\mu = \lambda_\mu \mathbf{v}_\mu. \quad (6.168)$$

We decompose $\boldsymbol{\xi}_n$ according to

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}_n = \sum_{\mu} \xi_n^{(\mu)} \mathbf{v}_\mu. \quad (6.169)$$

We project both sides of (6.165) on the eigenvectors \mathbf{v}_μ and obtain

$$\xi_{n+1}^{(\mu)} = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\xi_n^{(\mu)} + \lambda_\mu \xi_{n-M}^{(\mu)} + \hat{B}_n^{(\mu)}, \quad (6.170)$$

where $\hat{B}_n^{(\mu)} = (\mathbf{v}_\mu^+ \hat{\mathbf{B}}_n)$. By means of a correlation matrix K we can express correlations between the components of $\xi_N, \xi_{N'}$ by means of correlations between $\xi_N^{(\mu)}$ and $\xi_{N'}^{(\mu')}$

$$\langle (\xi_N K \xi_{N'}) \rangle = \sum_{\mu\mu'} (\mathbf{v}_\mu^+ K \mathbf{v}_{\mu'}) \langle \xi_N^{(\mu)} \xi_{N'}^{(\mu')} \rangle. \quad (6.171)$$

We evaluate the correlation functions on the r.h.s. of (6.171) and start with $\mu = \mu'$. In order not to overload the formulas with indices, we drop the suffix μ everywhere in (6.170) and put

$$\lambda_\mu = a. \quad (6.172)$$

We first study

$$\xi_{n+1} = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\xi_n + a\xi_{n-M} + \delta_{nn_0} \quad (6.173)$$

with the initial conditions

$$\xi_n = 0 \quad \text{for } n \leq n_0 \quad (6.174)$$

and

$$\xi_{n_0+1} = 1. \quad (6.175)$$

The general solution of

$$\xi_{n+1} = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\xi_n + a\xi_{n-M}, \quad n > n_0, \quad (6.176)$$

can be written in the form

$$\xi_n = c_1\beta_1^n + c_2\beta_2^n \dots + c_{M+1}\beta_{M+1}^n, \quad (6.177)$$

where β_j are the solutions of the eigenvalue equation

$$\beta^{M+1} - e^{-\gamma\Delta}\beta^M - a = 0. \quad (6.178)$$

Taking into account the initial conditions (6.174) and (6.175), we obtain the following equations

$$n = n_0: \xi_{n_0+1} = 1, \quad (6.179)$$

$$n = n_0 + 1: \xi_{n_0+2} = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\xi_{n_0+1} + a\xi_{n_0+1-M} = e^{-\gamma\Delta}, \quad (6.180)$$

$$n = n_0 + 2: \xi_{n_0+3} = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\xi_{n_0+2} = e^{-2\gamma\Delta}, \quad (6.181)$$

⋮

$$n = n_0 + M: \xi_{n_0+1+M} = e^{-\gamma\Delta M}, \quad (6.182)$$

$$n = n_0 + M + 1: \xi_{n_0+2+M} = e^{-\gamma\Delta(M+1)} + a. \quad (6.183)$$

Inserting (6.177) into (6.179)–(6.183), we obtain the following equations

$$c_1\beta_1^{n_0+1} + c_2\beta_2^{n_0+1} + \dots + c_{M+1}\beta_{M+1}^{n_0+1} = 1, \quad (6.184)$$

$$c_1\beta_1^{n_0+2} + c_2\beta_2^{n_0+2} + \dots + c_{M+1}\beta_{M+1}^{n_0+2} = e^{-\gamma\Delta}, \quad (6.185)$$

⋮

$$c_1\beta_1^{n_0+M+2} + c_2\beta_2^{n_0+M+2} + \dots + c_{M+1}\beta_{M+1}^{n_0+M+2} = e^{-(M+1)\gamma\Delta} + a. \quad (6.186)$$

The solutions c_j of these equations can be simplified by using the hypothesis

$$c_j\beta_j^{n_0+1} = d_j, \quad (6.187)$$

which converts (6.184)–(6.186) into

$$d_1 + d_2 + \dots + d_{M+1} = 1, \quad (6.188)$$

$$d_1\beta_1 + d_2\beta_2 + \dots + d_{M+1}\beta_{M+1} = e^{-\gamma\Delta}, \quad (6.189)$$

⋮

$$d_1\beta_1^M + d_2\beta_2^M \dots + d_{M+1}\beta_{M+1}^M = e^{-M\gamma\Delta}, \quad (6.190)$$

$$d_1\beta_1^{M+1} + d_2\beta_2^{M+1} \dots + d_{M+1}\beta_{M+1}^{M+1} = e^{-(M+1)\gamma\Delta} + a. \quad (6.191)$$

The original hypothesis (6.177) can thus be written in the form

$$\xi_{n,n_0} = d_1\beta_1^{n-(n_0+1)} + \dots + d_{M+1}\beta_{M+1}^{n-(n_0+1)}, \quad (6.192)$$

where, in order to make the dependence of ξ_n on n_0 explicit, we used the substitution

$$\xi_n \rightarrow \xi_{n,n_0}. \quad (6.193)$$

We are now in a position to deal with (6.170) that we recast into the form

$$\tilde{\xi}_{n+1} = e^{-\gamma\Delta}\tilde{\xi}_n + a\tilde{\xi}_{n-M} + \sum_{n_0} \delta_{nm_0}\hat{B}_{n_0}. \quad (6.194)$$

Since (6.194) is a linear equation, its solution can be found by means of the solutions of (6.173)

$$\tilde{\xi}_n = \sum_{n_0=0}^{n-1} \xi_{n,n_0}\hat{B}_{n_0}. \quad (6.195)$$

In the following we will use the index n' instead of n_0 . Inserting (6.192) into (6.195), we thus obtain

$$\xi_n = \sum_{j=1}^{M+1} d_j \sum_{n'=0}^{n-1} \beta_j^{n-(n'+1)} \hat{B}_{n'} . \quad (6.196)$$

Having in mind the same index μ , we may now evaluate the correlation function occurring in (6.171), namely

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \xi_N \xi_{N'} \rangle &= \sum_{j=1}^{M+1} \sum_{j'=1}^{M+1} d_j d_{j'} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \beta_j^{N-(n+1)} \\ &\quad \times \sum_{n'=0}^{N'-1} \beta_{j'}^{N'-(n'+1)} \langle \hat{B}_n \hat{B}_{n'} \rangle . \end{aligned} \quad (6.197)$$

Assuming $N \geq N'$ and using

$$\langle \hat{B}_n \hat{B}_{n'} \rangle = Q \delta_{nn'} \quad (6.198)$$

as well as (6.167), we readily obtain

$$\langle \xi_N \xi_{N'} \rangle = \sum_{j,j'=1}^{M+1} d_j d_{j'} \sum_{n=0}^{N'-1} \beta_j^{N-(n+1)} \beta_{j'}^{N'-(n+1)} Q . \quad (6.199)$$

The sum over n can readily be performed so that we obtain

$$\langle \xi_N \xi_{N'} \rangle = Q \sum_{j,j'=1}^{M+1} d_j d_{j'} \beta_j^{N-N'} (1 - \beta_j \beta_{j'})^{-1} . \quad (6.200)$$

Under the assumption

$$|\beta_j \beta_{j'}| \ll 1 \quad (6.201)$$

and using (6.188), we obtain the very concise form

$$\langle \xi_N \xi_{N'} \rangle = Q \sum_{j=1}^{M+1} d_j \beta_j^{N-N'} . \quad (6.202)$$

Provided

$$0 \leq N - N' \leq M + 1 , \quad (6.203)$$

the expression (6.202) can be considerably simplified by means of the former relations (6.188)–(6.191). Thus we obtain, for instance

$$\langle \xi_N \xi_N \rangle = Q \quad (6.204)$$

and

$$\langle \xi_{N+1} \xi_N \rangle = Q e^{-\gamma \Delta}. \quad (6.205)$$

By means of the substitutions

$$\beta_j \rightarrow \beta_{j,\mu}, \quad d_j \rightarrow d_{j,\mu}, \quad (6.206)$$

$$\xi_N \rightarrow \xi_N^{(\mu)}, \quad (6.207)$$

$$B_n \rightarrow B_n^{(\mu)}, \quad (6.208)$$

$$Q^{(\mu,\mu')} = \langle \left(\mathbf{v}_\mu^+ \hat{B}_n \right) \left(\mathbf{v}_{\mu'}^+ \hat{B}_n \right) \rangle, \quad (6.209)$$

we can generalize the result (6.202) to

$$\langle \xi_N^{(\mu)} \xi_{N'}^{(\mu')} \rangle = Q^{(\mu,\mu')} \sum_{j=1}^{M+1} d_{j,\mu} \beta_{j,\mu}^{N-N'}, \quad N \geq N', \quad (6.210)$$

which presents under the condition (6.201) our central result. As we can see, in the case of a delay with the delay time $\tau = M\Delta$, where Δ is the pulse interval of the phase-locked state, the correlation function is not only determined by means of the strengths $Q^{(\mu,\mu')}$ of the fluctuating forces, but also by the eigenvalues of (6.178). Since the eigenvalues may be complex, the correlation function (6.210) may show oscillatory behavior as a function of $N - N'$. It is interesting that the index μ' drops out provided (6.201) is assumed. The case in which $N' > N$ can be covered by exchanging the indices μ and μ' .

Exercises. (1) Why does ξ_{n,n_0} play the role of a Green's function for a set of difference equations?

(2) Derive $\langle \xi_N^{(\mu)} \xi_{N'}^{(\mu')} \rangle$ for arbitrary β values, i.e. without the assumption (6.201).

(3) Denote the vector components of ξ_n by $\xi_{n,\ell}$. Derive a formula for $\langle \xi_{N,\ell} \xi_{N',\ell} \rangle$.

Hint: Use (6.171) with suitable K .

6.12 Strong Coupling Limit. The Nonsteady Phase-Locked State of Many Neurons

Our solution of the basic equations (6.1) and (6.3) of the neural net relies on the assumption that the system operates in the linear range of S. This requires a not too strong coupling as expressed by the coupling coefficients $A_{j\ell;m}$

(synaptic strengths) or a not too small damping constant γ . We also noted that in the linear range of S the phase-locked state is only stable if the just-mentioned conditions are satisfied.

In this section and the following we want to study what happens if these conditions are violated. To this end we first study the case of phase-locking in the *linear range* of S. While for weak enough coupling we obtained a *steady* phase-locked state, for strong coupling a new kind of behavior will occur, namely pulse-shortening until the nonlinearity of S leads to a shortest pulse-interval. This nonlinear case will be treated in the following Sect. 6.13. In that section, our goal will be to determine the pulse interval Δ as a function of the neural parameters. Hereby we treat the *phase-locked* case. In order not to overload our presentation, we neglect time delays and fluctuations.

Our starting point is Sect. 6.2, where according to (6.17) and (6.18) the phase-locking equation is given by

$$\ddot{\phi} + \gamma \dot{\phi} = Af(\phi) + C, \quad A > 0. \quad (6.211)$$

We make the substitution

$$\dot{\phi} = C/\gamma + x(t) \quad (6.212)$$

that converts (6.211) into

$$\dot{x} + \gamma x = Af(\phi). \quad (6.213)$$

The solution of (6.213) proceeds as in Sect. 5.3, whereby we find the recursion relation for $x_n \equiv x(t_n)$ (see (5.40))

$$x_{n+1} = e^{-\gamma \Delta_n} x_n + A, \quad (6.214)$$

where we assume, however, that the pulse intervals $\Delta_n \equiv t_{n+1} - t_n$ depend on n in order to cover non-stationary cases. In an extension of Sect. 5.3, we find the following equation for Δ_n (with $c = C/\gamma$) (see (5.46))

$$c\Delta_n + \frac{1}{\gamma}x_n(1 - e^{-\gamma \Delta_n}) = 2\pi. \quad (6.215)$$

The coupled equations (6.214) and (6.215) for the dependence of the variables x_n and Δ_n on n can be easily solved numerically. For our present purpose it is sufficient to discuss the solution qualitatively. As we will see, Δ_n decreases as n increases. Therefore, for a sufficiently large n we may assume that $\gamma \Delta_n \ll 1$, so that

$$(1 - e^{-\gamma \Delta_n}) \approx \gamma \Delta_n. \quad (6.216)$$

Equations (6.214) and (6.215) then simplify to

$$x_{n+1} - x_n = -\gamma \Delta_n x_n + A \quad (6.217)$$

and

$$c\Delta_n + x_n\Delta_n = 2\pi, \quad (6.218)$$

respectively. Resolving (6.218) for Δ_n yields

$$\Delta_n = \frac{2\pi}{x_n + c}, \quad (6.219)$$

which can be inserted into (6.217) to yield

$$x_{n+1} - x_n = A - 2\pi\gamma \frac{x_n}{x_n + c}. \quad (6.220)$$

Figure 6.5 shows a plot of the r.h.s. of (6.220), i.e. of

$$R(x_n) = A - 2\pi\gamma \frac{x_n}{x_n + c}, \quad A > 0 \quad (6.221)$$

versus x_n . Figure 6.5a refers to the case of small coupling A ,

$$A - 2\pi\gamma < 0. \quad (6.222)$$

In this case $R(x_n)$ becomes zero at a specific value of $x_n = x_s$, and the solution x_n of (6.220) becomes independent of n , i.e. of time. In other words, x_s is a fixed point of (6.220). Thus we recover the solution obtained in Sect. 5.3. Because of (6.219), the pulse intervals become equidistant.

Figure 6.5b refers to the case of strong coupling

$$A - 2\pi\gamma > 0. \quad (6.223)$$

Because $R(x_n)$ never crosses the abscissa, according to (6.220) $x_{n+1} - x_n$ is always positive, i.e. x_n increases forever. For large enough x_n , (6.220) simplifies to

$$x_{n+1} - x_n = A - 2\pi\gamma, \quad (6.224)$$

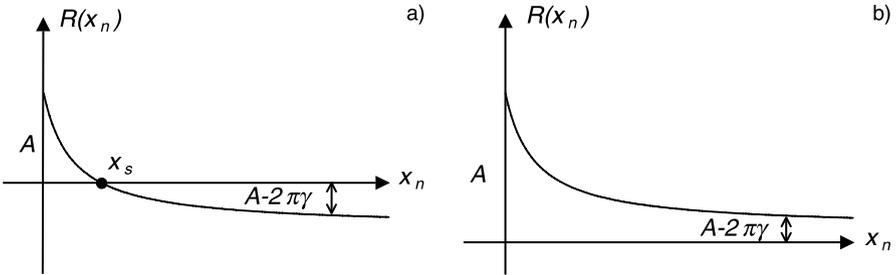


Fig. 6.5. **a)** The function $R(x_n)$ (6.221) versus x_n for $A - 2\pi\gamma < 0$; **b)** Same as **a)**, but $A - 2\pi\gamma > 0$

which possesses the solution

$$x_n = (A - 2\pi\gamma)n + \text{const.} \quad (6.225)$$

as we may immediately verify. Bearing in mind that x_n contributes to the pulse rate $\dot{\phi}$ according to (6.212), we obtain our final result that $\dot{\phi}$ increases linearly with n . Equivalently, the pulse intervals Δ_n decrease according to (6.219) and (6.225)

$$\Delta_n = \frac{2\pi}{(A - 2\pi\gamma)n + \text{const.}} \quad (6.226)$$

Because of the definition of $\Delta_n \equiv t_{n+1} - t_n$, we may now establish a relation between t_n and n . As a simple analysis (see the exercise at the end of this section) reveals, t_n increases logarithmically with n , i.e.

$$t_n \approx \frac{2\pi}{(A - 2\pi\gamma)} \ln n + \text{const.} \quad (6.227)$$

for n large. On the other hand, we may express n by t_n to obtain

$$n = n_0 \exp[(A/2\pi - \gamma)t_n] \quad (6.228)$$

This means that Δ_n *decreases* exponentially with time, or that x_n and thus the pulse rate $\dot{\phi}$ *increases* exponentially. Let us now recall that the pulse rate is directly given by the saturation function S according to (6.3), i.e. by

$$\dot{\phi} = S. \quad (6.229)$$

If $\dot{\phi}$ becomes large, the quasilinear range of S is abandoned and S becomes a constant, i.e. it saturates,

$$S = S_{\text{max}}. \quad (6.230)$$

Summing up the results of this section, we may state that in the strong coupling case the pulse rate increases exponentially with time until it saturates. Our derivation of the time dependence of Δ_n and x_n has been systematic, but a bit clumsy. A more direct way, based on the guess that Δ_n decays exponentially is this: In order to solve (6.215) we make the hypothesis

$$\Delta_n = \Delta_0 e^{-\Gamma t_n} \quad (6.231)$$

with yet unknown Δ_0 and Γ . Inserting this into (6.215) and neglecting the small term $c\Delta_n$ in (6.218) yields

$$x_n \Delta_0 e^{-\Gamma t_n} = 2\pi. \quad (6.232)$$

We then make the hypothesis

$$x_n = x_0 e^{\Gamma t_n}, \quad (6.233)$$

from which follows

$$x_0 \Delta_0 = 2\pi. \quad (6.234)$$

Inserting (6.233) into (6.214) yields

$$x_0 e^{\Gamma t_{n+1}} = e^{-\gamma \Delta_n} x_0 e^{\Gamma t_n} + A. \quad (6.235)$$

Using

$$t_{n+1} = t_n + \Delta_n, \quad (6.236)$$

we obtain

$$x_0 e^{\Gamma \Delta_n} = e^{-\gamma \Delta_n} x_0 + A e^{-\Gamma t_n}. \quad (6.237)$$

Using the hypothesis (6.231) on both sides of (6.237) and expanding the exponential functions, we obtain

$$x_0(1 + \Delta_0 \Gamma e^{-\gamma t_n}) = x_0(1 - \gamma \Delta_0 e^{-\Gamma t_n}) + A e^{-\Gamma t_n}. \quad (6.238)$$

Comparing the corresponding terms on the left- and right-hand side of (6.238), we obtain

$$x_0 \Delta_0 \Gamma = -\gamma x_0 \Delta_0 + A, \quad (6.239)$$

from which we conclude, with the help of (6.234),

$$\Gamma = -\gamma + A/(2\pi). \quad (6.240)$$

This agrees with the results obtained using our “systematic” procedure above.

Exercise. (1) Prove (6.227)

Hint: Approximate $\Delta_n \equiv t_{n+1} - t_n$ by dt/dn . Solve the resulting differential equation for large n .

6.13 Fully Nonlinear Treatment of the Phase-Locked State*

Our approach has been nonlinear in so far as the phase angles ϕ appear under a series of δ -functions. On the other hand, we linearized the sigmoid function S . In this section we want to perform a fully nonlinear treatment in which also the nonlinearity of S is maintained. In contrast to Sect. 6.12, where we studied the transient phase-locked solution, here we deal with the steady-state solution. Since the most important observable is the pulse interval Δ , we will determine it here. The calculations are somewhat lengthy. Thus the speedy reader may skip all the intermediate steps and proceed to the final result that relates Δ to the neural parameters, such as synaptic strengths,

etc. These results are presented in (6.270) with its special cases for linear S (6.271) and saturated S (6.276).

First we remind the reader of the basic equations for the dendritic currents

$$\dot{\psi}_m = -\gamma\psi_m + \sum_k a_{mk}f(\phi_k) \quad (6.241)$$

and the axonal phases

$$\dot{\phi}_k = S \left(\sum_m c_{km}\psi_m(t - \tau'_{km}) + p_{\text{ext},k}, Q_k \right). \quad (6.242)$$

The notation is the same as in our earlier chapters. By use of the Green's function of Sect. 4.4, we can express ψ_m directly by the last term in (6.241) and insert the result into (6.242). In anticipation of the phase-locked state, we put $\phi_k = \phi$ and obtain

$$\dot{\phi}(t) = S \left(A_k \int_0^t e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} f(\phi(\sigma)) d\sigma + p_{\text{ext},k}(t), Q_k \right), \quad (6.243)$$

where

$$A_k = \sum_{k'} \sum_m c_{km} a_{mk'}. \quad (6.244)$$

Since the l.h.s. is independent of the index k , so must be the r.h.s. A sufficient condition will be that $A_k, p_{\text{ext},k}$ and Q_k are independent of k . Using the explicit form of f and assuming a steady state, we first evaluate the integral of (6.243), i.e.

$$\int_0^t e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} \sum_{n=0}^N \delta(\sigma - n\Delta) d\sigma. \quad (6.245)$$

We use the definition

$$N = [t/\Delta], \quad (6.246)$$

where the square bracket means: Take the biggest integer number that is smaller than or equal to t/Δ . Using the property of the δ -function and summing the resulting geometric series, we obtain in the limit of large times t

$$(6.245) = e^{-\gamma t} \sum_{n=0}^N e^{\gamma n\Delta} = e^{\gamma((N+1)\Delta-t)} \frac{1}{e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1}. \quad (6.247)$$

We use the Naka–Rushton formula for S

$$S(X) = \frac{rX^M}{Q^M + X^M}, \quad (6.248)$$

where in the present case

$$X = Ae^{\gamma((N+1)\Delta-t)} \frac{1}{e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1} + p \quad (6.249)$$

and

$$p_{\text{ext},k}(t) = p. \quad (6.250)$$

Using (6.245)–(6.250) in (6.243), we can immediately determine the phase velocity $\dot{\phi}$, provided we know the pulse interval Δ . In order to fix the still unknown Δ , we postulate

$$\int_{t_N+\epsilon}^{t_{N+1}+\epsilon} \dot{\phi}(\sigma) d\sigma = \int_{t_{N+1}-\epsilon}^{t_{N+1}+\epsilon} \dot{\phi}(\sigma) d\sigma = 2\pi. \quad (6.251)$$

In the following, we will evaluate the integral explicitly for $M = 1$ and show in the exercise how it can be determined for integer $M > 1$.

We write (6.248) in the form

$$S(X) = \frac{r(X/Q)^M}{1 + (X/Q)^M} \quad (6.252)$$

and introduce the abbreviation

$$X/Q = \tilde{A} \cdot e^{\gamma(t_{N+1}-t)} + \tilde{p}, \quad (6.253)$$

where

$$\tilde{A} = \frac{A}{Q} (e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1)^{-1}, \quad \frac{p}{Q} = \tilde{p}. \quad (6.254)$$

After shifting the limits of the integration, we have to evaluate

$$\int_0^\Delta \frac{(\tilde{A}e^{\gamma\sigma} + \tilde{p})^M}{1 + (\tilde{A}e^{\gamma\sigma} + \tilde{p})^M} d\sigma. \quad (6.255)$$

To this end we put

$$\tilde{A}e^{\gamma\sigma} + \tilde{p} = y \quad (6.256)$$

and accordingly

$$\tilde{A}\gamma e^{\gamma\sigma} d\sigma = dy. \quad (6.257)$$

From (6.256) and (6.257) we deduce

$$d\sigma = \frac{1}{\gamma} \frac{1}{y - \tilde{p}} dy, \quad (6.258)$$

so that we are, eventually, left with the evaluation of the integral

$$\frac{1}{\gamma} \int_{y_0}^{y_1} \frac{y^M}{1+y^M} \frac{1}{(y-\tilde{p})} dy. \quad (6.259)$$

We will determine the integration limits below. In order to perform the integration, we use the decomposition

$$\frac{y^M}{1+y^M} \frac{1}{y-\tilde{p}} = \frac{g(y)}{1+y^M} + \frac{\alpha}{y-\tilde{p}}, \quad (6.260)$$

where $g(y)$ is determined by

$$g(y)(y-\tilde{p}) = y^M(1-\alpha) - \alpha. \quad (6.261)$$

The unknown coefficient α can be fixed by putting $y = \tilde{p}$ on both sides, which yields

$$0 = \tilde{p}^M(1-\alpha) - \alpha, \quad (6.262)$$

and thus

$$\alpha = \frac{\tilde{p}^M}{1+\tilde{p}^M}. \quad (6.263)$$

In the special case $M = 1$ that we will treat here explicitly, we obtain

$$g(y) = \frac{1}{1+\tilde{p}}, \quad \alpha = \frac{\tilde{p}}{1+\tilde{p}}. \quad (6.264)$$

We are left with evaluating

$$\frac{1}{\gamma} \int_{y_0}^{y_1} \frac{y}{1+y} \frac{1}{(y-\tilde{p})} dy = \frac{1}{\gamma} \left(\int_{y_0}^{y_1} \frac{(1-\alpha)dy}{1+y} + \int_{y_0}^{y_1} \frac{\alpha dy}{(y-\tilde{p})} \right), \quad (6.265)$$

which immediately yields

$$(6.265) = \left(\frac{1}{\gamma}(1-\alpha) \ln(1+y) + \frac{1}{\gamma} \alpha \ln |y-\tilde{p}| \right) \Big|_{y_0}^{y_1}. \quad (6.266)$$

Inserting (6.256) and the integration limits,

$$t = 0 \leftrightarrow y_0 = \tilde{A} + \tilde{p}, \quad (6.267)$$

$$t = \Delta \leftrightarrow y_1 = \tilde{A}e^{\gamma\Delta} + \tilde{p}, \quad (6.268)$$

we find

$$\begin{aligned}
 (6.265) &= \frac{1}{\gamma} \frac{1}{1 + \tilde{p}} \left(\ln \left(1 + \frac{A}{Q} (e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1)^{-1} e^{\gamma\Delta} + p/Q \right) \right. \\
 &\quad \left. - \ln \left(1 + \frac{A}{Q} (e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1)^{-1} + p/Q \right) \right) \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{\gamma} \frac{\tilde{p}}{1 + \tilde{p}} \left(\ln \left(\frac{A}{Q} (e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1)^{-1} e^{\gamma\Delta} \right) - \ln \left(\frac{A}{Q} (e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1)^{-1} \right) \right) \\
 &= 2\pi/r. \tag{6.269}
 \end{aligned}$$

After some elementary manipulations (using $\ln x + \ln y = \ln(xy)$), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{1}{\gamma} \frac{1}{1 + p/Q} \ln \left(1 + \frac{A/Q}{1 + (A/Q) (e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1)^{-1} + p/Q} \right) + \frac{p/Q}{1 + p/Q} \Delta \\
 = 2\pi/r. \tag{6.270}
 \end{aligned}$$

This is the desired equation that allows us to determine the pulse interval Δ as a function of the various parameters. This implicit equation can only be solved numerically, but we are in a position to explicitly treat the limiting cases of large Q , corresponding to a linearization of S , and of small Q , where we expect saturation effects.

In the case $Q \rightarrow \infty$, we expand the l.h.s. of (6.270) into powers of $1/Q$, where we obtain in the leading approximation

$$\frac{1}{\gamma} \frac{Ar}{Q} + \frac{pr}{Q} \Delta = 2\pi, \tag{6.271}$$

which corresponds to our earlier result (5.47) by identifying

$$Ar/Q \quad \text{with} \quad A \tag{6.272}$$

and

$$pr/Q \quad \text{with} \quad c. \tag{6.273}$$

We now consider the case of small Q , or, equivalently, the case in which either the coupling between the neurons A or the external input becomes very large. To treat the first case,

$$A \rightarrow \infty, \quad Q, p \text{ finite}, \tag{6.274}$$

we rewrite (6.270) in the form

$$\frac{1}{\gamma} \frac{Q}{Q + p} \ln \left(1 + \frac{1}{Q/A + (e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1)^{-1} + p/A} \right) + \frac{p}{Q + p} \Delta = 2\pi/r. \tag{6.275}$$

In the limit (6.274) it readily reduces to the simple result

$$\Delta = 2\pi/r. \tag{6.276}$$

The same result is obtained in the limiting case

$$p \rightarrow \infty \quad Q, A \text{ finite:} \quad \Delta = 2\pi/r. \quad (6.277)$$

The results (6.276) and (6.277) mean that for large inputs saturation of the neuron's response sets in, in which case the pulse intervals become independent of the size of the input. In the exercises, we will treat the case in which S (6.248) is used with $M = 2$, and indicate how to deal with the general case. So far, we determined Δ . With this parameter known, $\dot{\phi}$, and by mere integration over time, ϕ can be determined by means of (6.243).

7. Integrate and Fire Models (IFM)

The lighthouse model belongs to the large and important class of models that aim at studying phase locking and, in particular, synchronization among spiking neurons. In this and the following Chap. 8 we will deal with integrate and fire models (IFM) that serve the same purpose.

The basic differences between and commonalities of these models are as follows: The lighthouse model uses phases ϕ_k and dendritic currents as basic variables. The phases have only a formal meaning except that they determine the spike rate. They may grow to infinity. IFMs are based on model equations for the action potentials U_k of the neurons. These potentials are limited to a finite interval and, after firing, are reset to their origin. The general equations of Sect. 7.1 give a first clue to the relationship between these two kinds of models. Section 7.2 is devoted to a particularly simple example of an IFM. At least the first part of Sect. 7.3 (till (7.24)) is of general interest, because it shows how the relaxation of membrane potentials can be incorporated in lighthouse models.

7.1 The General Equations of IFM

The action potential U_k of neuron k obeys the equation

$$\frac{dU_k}{dt} = -\frac{U_k}{\tau} + I_k + I_k^{\text{ext}}. \quad (7.1)$$

The first term on the r.h.s. describes relaxation of U_k towards the resting potential with a relaxation time τ . In most models, the resting potential is set equal to zero and U_k is normalized so that it acquires its maximum value 1, that means

$$0 \leq U_k \leq 1. \quad (7.2)$$

The next term in (7.1) is defined as follows:

$$I_k: \text{ input from other neurons.} \quad (7.3)$$

It consists of the sum of the postsynaptic potentials (PSPs) that are triggered by pulses of afferent neurons at times t' (see (7.6)). I_k^{ext} represents external input stemming from sensory neurons

$$I_k^{\text{ext}}: \text{ external input.} \quad (7.4)$$

A comparison between (7.1) and the equation of the phases as derived in (5.20) reveals that these equations have the same structure except for the first term on the r.h.s. in (7.1). Actually, the analogy between the models is quite close. A minor difference is this: While U_k adopts its values according to (7.2), ϕ_k runs in its first segment from 0 to 2π so that we arrive at the relationship

$$\phi_k = 2\pi U_k. \quad (7.5)$$

But in contrast to the integrate and fire models with (7.2), in the lighthouse model ϕ_k may increase indefinitely. We will discuss the relation between U_k and ϕ_k for $\phi_k > 2\pi$, i.e. in its higher segments, in (7.24).

Our considerations on the lighthouse model have taught us how to model the impact of the other neurons on the neuron under consideration by means of the processes within synapses and dendrites. When we eliminate the dynamics of the synapses and dendrites, we arrive at the relationship between the neuronal pulses and the input I_k . This relationship can be written in the form

$$I_k = \int_0^t K(t-t') \sum_{j \neq k} w_{kj} P_j(t') dt' \quad (7.6)$$

(see also (5.20)). The kernel K stems from the dynamics of the synapses and dendrites and will be specified below. w_{kj} represents synaptic strengths. The input in the form of pulses can be written as

$$P_j(t') = \sum_n \delta(t' - t_{j,n}), \quad (7.7)$$

where δ is the well-known Dirac-function and $t_{j,n}$ represents the arrival times of the pulses of axon j . Because of the δ -functions, (7.6) reduces to

$$I_k = \sum_{j \neq k, n} w_{kj} K(t - t_{j,n}), \quad (7.8)$$

where, depending on the dynamics of dendrites and synapses, K is given by

$$K(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \\ e^{-\gamma t} & \text{for } t \geq 0 \end{cases}. \quad (7.9)$$

In this case, K is the Green's function of (5.1), see also (4.3). A general relationship for K that comes closer to physiological facts is given by

$$K(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \\ c(\exp(-t/\tau_1) - \exp(-t/\tau_2)) & \text{for } t \geq 0 \end{cases}, \quad (7.10)$$

where τ_1 and τ_2 are appropriately chosen relaxation times. We leave it as an exercise to the reader to determine a differential equation for which (7.10)

is its Green's function. As will be further shown in the exercises, if we let $\tau_1 \rightarrow \tau_2$, a new kernel K can be obtained that is given by

$$K(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \\ c\alpha^2 t \exp(-\alpha t) & t \geq 0 \end{cases}. \quad (7.11)$$

This K can be also obtained as the Green's function of (4.85) and is called Rall's α -function.

After having formulated the basic equations, we may discuss a method for their solution in the frame of IFM. The idea is to solve (7.1) with (7.8) explicitly until U_k reaches the value 1. This time fixes the initial time of a pulse from neuron k , whereupon the action potential of that neuron U_k is reset to zero. In practical applications, these equations have been solved numerically, which requires a considerable amount of computation time so that only few interacting neurons have been treated. In order to treat larger nets, considerable simplifications have been made. In the following, we will discuss a model due to Peskin that has been extended by Mirollo and Strogatz.

7.2 Peskin's Model

In the context of the synchronization of cardiac rhythms, Peskin derived a model that was later adopted to deal with synchronizing neurons by Mirollo and Strogatz. The activity of neuron k is described by a variable x_k , which obeys

$$\frac{dx_k}{dt} = S_0 - \gamma x_k, \quad k = 1, \dots, N \quad (7.12)$$

and assumes the values

$$0 \leq x_k \leq 1. \quad (7.13)$$

At an initial time, individual values x_k obeying (7.13) are prescribed. Then when time runs, because we assume $S_0 > 0$, according to (7.12) x_k will increase and reach the value 1, where a pulse is emitted by that neuron. Thereupon at an infinitesimally later time, t^+ , the values x of all other neurons are increased by an amount ϵ or the other neuron fires when reaching $x_j = 1$. Thus, in short,

$$\begin{aligned} x_k(t) = 1 \rightarrow x_j(t^+) = x_j(t) + \epsilon & \quad \text{if } x_j(t) + \epsilon < 1 \\ \text{or fires: } x_j = 1. & \end{aligned} \quad (7.14)$$

Peskin and later, in a more general frame, Mirollo and Strogatz could show that after some time all firings become synchronized. Let us try to make contact between this model and the lighthouse model on the one hand and the integrate and fire models on the other hand. Quite clearly, we have to

identify

$$I_k^{\text{ext}} \leftrightarrow S_0 \quad (7.15)$$

and we will put

$$I_k^{\text{ext}} = I_0, \quad (7.16)$$

i.e. all external signals are the same. Now we may use our knowledge about first-order differential equations that contain δ -functions (cf. Chap. 4). As we know, a jump of a variable can be caused by means of a δ -function. This leads us to make the hypothesis

$$I_k = \epsilon \sum_{j \neq k} \delta(t - t_j). \quad (7.17)$$

For the sake of simplicity we further put

$$\gamma' = 1/\tau. \quad (7.18)$$

Clearly we will identify x_k with the action potential U_k . Thus the processes described by (7.12) and (7.14) are captured by

$$\frac{dU_k}{dt} = -\gamma' U_k + I_0 + \epsilon \sum_{j \neq k} \delta(t - t_j). \quad (7.19)$$

According to Chap. 4 we know how the solution of (7.19) looks like, namely

$$U_k(t) = \int_0^t e^{-\gamma'(t-\sigma)} \left(I_0 + \epsilon \sum_{j \neq k} \delta(\sigma - t_j) \right) d\sigma, \quad (7.20)$$

or, in a more explicit form,

$$U_k(t) = I_0 \frac{1}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma' t} \right) + \epsilon \sum_{j \neq k} e^{-\gamma'(t-t_j)} H(t - t_j), \quad (7.21)$$

where H is the Heaviside function introduced in (4.15). Since we will study the synchronized solution of (7.20) and its stability in great generality in Chap. 8, we will confine ourselves to one remark only, namely the determination of the phase-locked state. In this case, the neurons emit their pulses at the same time and according to the rule (7.14) their action potentials jump at the same time. This leads to the condition

$$U_k(t) = I_0 \frac{1}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma' t} \right) + \epsilon N = 1, \quad (7.22)$$

from which the time t , i.e. the time interval between pulses, can be deduced. Quite evidently, a sensitive result can be obtained only under the condition $\epsilon N < 1$. As we see by comparing (7.19) and (7.1) with (7.8), Peskin's model

implies that the response via synapses and dendrites is without any delay, or, in other words, that the kernel K is a δ -function (see Exercise 3).

In the next section, we will study a model in which that response time is very long. This model has not yet been treated in the literature and those readers who would have fun studying a further model are referred to the next section.

7.3 A Model with Long Relaxation Times of Synaptic and Dendritic Responses

This section is devoted to those readers who are particularly interested in mathematical modelling. The first part of this section may also be considered as a preparation for Chap. 8. Our model bridges the gap between the lighthouse models that were treated in Chaps. 5 and 6 and the integrate and fire models that we discussed at the beginning of the present chapter. To bring out the essentials, we again consider two interacting neurons. We describe their activities using the phase angles ϕ_1, ϕ_2 . First of all, we generalize the lighthouse model by taking into account a damping of the rotation speed in between two firings. This means we want to mimic the effect of the damping term that occurs on the r.h.s. of (7.1) with (7.18). We are not allowed, however, to use the corresponding damping term $\gamma'\phi$ alone, because with increasing $\phi (> 2\pi)$ this expression would overestimate the effect of damping. Rather we have to take into account the fact that U is restricted to the region between 0 and 1, or correspondingly that the relaxation dynamics of ϕ in the intervals $[n2\pi, (n+1)2\pi]$ must be selfsimilar. In other words, we must reduce ϕ after each rotation. This is achieved by replacing ϕ with $\phi \bmod 2\pi$. In our present context, this mathematical expression means: if $\phi > 2\pi$, reduce it by an integer multiple of 2π so that $\phi' = \phi - 2\pi n$ with $0 \leq \phi' < 2\pi$. As can be seen by means of Fig. 5.11, this reduction can be achieved also with the help of a sum of Heaviside functions, H introduced in Sect. 4.1

$$\phi \bmod 2\pi = \phi - 2\pi \sum_{n \geq 1} H(\phi - 2\pi n). \quad (7.23)$$

Thus when we “translate” the damping term on the r.h.s. of (7.1) into one for ϕ , we must apply the rules (7.5) and (7.23). This explains the meaning of the l.h.s. of the following

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\phi}_1 + \gamma'\phi_1 - 2\pi\gamma' \sum_{n \geq 1} H(\phi_1 - 2\pi n) \\ = \sum_{n \geq 1} A(H(\phi_2 - 2\pi n) - H(\phi_1 - 2\pi(n+1))) + p. \end{aligned} \quad (7.24)$$

The terms on the r.h.s. originate from the following mechanism: When the phase ϕ_2 of neuron 2 reaches $2\pi n$ that neuron fires and causes a change

of the action potential of neuron 1. If the relaxation time γ of the synapses and dendrites is very large, we may assume that the corresponding term I_k in (7.1) does not decay. But then when ϕ_1 reaches 2π and the neuron is assumed to fire that influence on neuron 1 drops to zero. This is taken care of by a second term in the second sum in (7.24). p describes the external signal. A is a coupling coefficient. For neuron 2, we may write down an equation that is analogous to (7.24), namely

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\phi}_2 + \gamma' \phi_2 &= 2\pi\gamma' \sum_{n \geq 1} H(\phi_2 - 2\pi n) \\ &+ \sum_{n \geq 1} A(H(\phi_1 - 2\pi n) - H(\phi_2 - 2\pi(n+1))) + p. \end{aligned} \quad (7.25)$$

The phase-locked state obeys the

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\phi} + \gamma' \phi &= 2\pi\gamma' \sum_{n \geq 1} H(\phi - 2\pi n) \\ &+ \sum_{n \geq 1} A(H(\phi - 2\pi n) - H(\phi - 2\pi(n+1))) + p. \end{aligned} \quad (7.26)$$

In order to find its solution, we first rearrange the terms in the second sum according to

$$\sum_{n \geq 1} AH(\phi - 2\pi n) - \sum_{n \geq 2} AH(\phi - 2\pi n), \quad (7.27)$$

which yields

$$(7.27) = A(H(\phi - 2\pi)) \quad (7.28)$$

and finally

$$(7.27) = A \quad \text{for} \quad \phi \geq 2\pi. \quad (7.29)$$

In this way, (7.26) can be transformed into

$$\dot{\phi} + \gamma' \phi = 2\pi\gamma' \sum_{n' \geq 1} H(\phi - 2\pi n') + p' \quad \text{with} \quad p' = p + A. \quad (7.30)$$

Let us briefly determine its solution with the initial condition

$$\phi(0) = \phi_0, \quad \text{where} \quad 0 \leq \phi_0 < 2\pi. \quad (7.31)$$

For a first interval, we obtain

$$n = 1: \quad 0 \leq t < t_1: \quad \phi(t) = p'/\gamma' + \alpha_0 e^{-\gamma t}. \quad (7.32)$$

The initial condition

$$t = 0: \quad p'/\gamma' + \alpha_0 = \phi_0 \quad (7.33)$$

fixes the constant

$$\alpha_0 = \phi_0 - p'/\gamma' \quad (7.34)$$

so that the solution reads

$$\phi(t) = p'/\gamma' + (\phi_0 - p'/\gamma')e^{-\gamma't}. \quad (7.35)$$

We determine the first firing time by the requirement

$$t = t_1 \equiv \Delta_1: \quad \phi(t_1) = 2\pi, \quad (7.36)$$

which yields

$$p'/\gamma' + (\phi_0 - p'/\gamma')e^{-\gamma't_1} = 2\pi, \quad (7.37)$$

or, explicitly,

$$e^{\gamma'\Delta_1} = \frac{p'/\gamma' - \phi_0}{p'/\gamma' - 2\pi}, \quad (7.38)$$

whereby we have to observe the requirement of a sufficiently strong external signal, namely

$$p'/\gamma' > 2\pi. \quad (7.39)$$

For the next interval, we obtain

$$n = 2: \quad \Delta_1 \leq t < t_2: \quad 2\pi \leq \phi < 4\pi, \quad H(\phi - 2\pi) = 1. \quad (7.40)$$

By complete analogy with the just-performed steps, we obtain

$$\phi(t_2) = 2\pi + p'/\gamma' \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'(t_2 - t_1)} \right), \quad (7.41)$$

and for the interval

$$t_2 - t_1 = \Delta_2 \quad (7.42)$$

the relation

$$\frac{1}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'\Delta_2} \right) = 2\pi/p'. \quad (7.43)$$

The time t_2 is determined by

$$t_2 = \Delta_2 + \Delta_1. \quad (7.44)$$

For

$$\text{arbitrary } n > 2: \quad t_{n-1} \leq t < t_n \quad (7.45)$$

we obtain

$$t_n = \Delta_1 + \Delta_2 + \dots + \Delta_n = \Delta_1 + (n-1)\Delta, \quad (7.46)$$

where

$$\Delta_n = \Delta \quad \text{for } n \geq 2. \quad (7.47)$$

The general solution reads

$$\phi(t) = 2\pi(n-1) + p'/\gamma' \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'(t-t_{n-1})}\right). \quad (7.48)$$

With the requirements

$$t = t_n, \quad \phi(t_n) = 2\pi n, \quad (7.49)$$

we obtain

$$\frac{1}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma' \Delta_n}\right) = 2\pi/p'. \quad (7.50)$$

These simple considerations have allowed us to determine the explicit form of the phase-locked state $\phi(t)$. In order to study its stability, we use the usual hypothesis

$$\phi_1 = \phi + \xi_1, \quad \phi_2 = \phi + \xi_2, \quad (7.51)$$

which again in the usual way leads, for example, to the following equation for $\xi_2(t)$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\xi}_2 + \gamma' \xi_2 &= 2\pi\gamma' \sum_{n \geq 1} (H(\phi + \xi_2 - 2\pi n) - H(\phi - 2\pi n)) \\ &+ A \sum_{n \geq 1} (H(\phi + \xi_1 - 2\pi n) - H(\phi - 2\pi n)) \\ &- A \sum_{n \geq 1} (H(\phi + \xi_2 - 2\pi(n+1)) - H(\phi - 2\pi(n+1))) \end{aligned} \quad (7.52)$$

that originates from the subtraction of (7.26) from (7.25). Making the assumption that ξ_2 is a small quantity, we may expand the Heaviside functions occurring in (7.52) with respect to the arguments ξ_2 so that the conventional δ -functions appear. These δ -functions are formulated with arguments ϕ . When we proceed from them to those with arguments t_n , where the connection between t and ϕ is provided by (7.49), we obtain in the by now well-known way (cf. (5.112)–(5.115))

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\xi}_2 + \gamma' \xi_2 &= 2\pi\gamma' \sum_{n \geq 1} \delta(t - t_n) \xi_2(t_n) / \dot{\phi}(t_n) \\ &+ A \sum_{n \geq 1} \delta(t - t_n) \xi_1(t_n) / \dot{\phi}(t_n) \\ &- A \sum_{n \geq 1} \delta(t - t_{n+1}) \xi_2(t_{n+1}) / \dot{\phi}(t_{n+1}). \end{aligned} \quad (7.53)$$

An analogous equation can be derived for ξ_1 and we may then deduce equations for the sum $Z(t) = \xi_1 + \xi_2$ and the difference $\xi = \xi_2 - \xi_1$. The equations read

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{Z} + \gamma' Z &= \delta(t - t_1)(2\pi\gamma' + A)Z(t_1)/\dot{\phi}(t_1) \\ &+ \sum_{n \geq 2} \delta(t - t_n)2\pi\gamma' Z(t_n)/\dot{\phi}(t_1) \end{aligned} \quad (7.54)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\xi} + \gamma' \xi &= \delta(t - t_1)(2\pi\gamma' - A)\xi(t_1)/\dot{\phi}(t_1) \\ &+ \sum_{n \geq 2} \delta(t - t_n)(2\pi\gamma' - 2A)\xi(t_n)/\dot{\phi}(t_1). \end{aligned} \quad (7.55)$$

The first term on the r.h.s. of (7.54) and (7.55), respectively, can be ignored if we let the process start at $t > t_1$. Then both equations bear a close resemblance to our previously derived (5.119), (5.121) with $B_1 = B_2 = 0$, where we may identify

$$a = 2\pi\gamma'/\dot{\phi} \quad \text{and} \quad -a = (2\pi\gamma' - 2A)/\dot{\phi}. \quad (7.56)$$

Quite clearly, these equations allow us to study the stability of the phase-locked state by complete analogy with Sect. 5.6. Then, for $t > t_1$, one may show that

$$Z(t_n + \epsilon) = Z(t_{n-1} + \epsilon), \quad \epsilon \rightarrow 0 \quad (7.57)$$

up to higher orders of γ' in the frame of our approach, which neglects the jump of $\dot{\phi}(t_n)$ at $t_n \pm \epsilon$. If this jump is taken into account (see exercise), (7.57) is even exact. Stability of the phase-locked is secured if $A > 0$.

Our results shed new light on the question of stability, or, in other words, on the reasons why instability may occur. As we have seen above, there are two processes, namely the build-up of the action potential because of the terms with positive A in (7.24), (7.25) and then its decay caused by the negative term originating from the firing. In other words, if the build-up of the action potential cannot be compensated for strongly enough, an instability occurs (see also Exercise 6). Note that the damping constants γ, γ' in (5.121), (7.55) have quite different origins: γ stems from the damping of dendritic currents, while γ' from that of the action potential. In Chap. 8 we will study their combined effects.

We leave it as an exercise to the reader to generalize this section to N neurons.

Exercise 1. To which differential equation is

$$K(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t \leq 0, \\ a(e^{-\gamma_1 t} - e^{-\gamma_2 t}) & \text{for } t \geq 0, \gamma_1 \neq \gamma_2 \end{cases}$$

the Green's function? Determine a !

Exercise 2. Derive (7.11) from (7.10) for $\tau_1 \rightarrow \tau_2$.

Hint: Put $c \propto (1/\tau_1 - 1/\tau_2)$.

Exercise 3. Show that (7.17) results from the elimination of dendritic currents in the lighthouse model for $\gamma \rightarrow \infty$, $a_{jk} \rightarrow \infty$, and a_{jk}/γ finite.

Exercise 4. Extend (7.24), (7.25) to many neurons.

8. Many Neurons, General Case, Connection with Integrate and Fire Model

8.1 Introductory Remarks

The lighthouse model treated in Chaps. 5 and 6 had the advantage of simplicity that enabled us to study in particular the effects of delay and noise. In the present chapter we want to treat the more realistic model of Chap. 7 in detail. It connects the phase of the axonal pulses with the action potential U of the corresponding neuron and takes the damping of U into account. Furthermore, in accordance with other neuronal models, the response of the dendritic currents to the axonal pulses is determined by a second-order differential equation rather than by a first-order differential equation (as in the lighthouse model). The corresponding solution, i.e. the dendritic response, increases smoothly after the arrival of a pulse from another neuron. When the dendritic currents are eliminated from the coupled equations, we may make contact with the integrate and fire model. Our approach includes the effect of delays and noise. We will treat the first-order and second-order differential equations for the dendritic currents using the same formalism so that we can compare the commonalities of and differences between the results of the two approaches. The network connections of excitatory or inhibitory nature may be general, though the occurrence of the phase-locked state requires a somewhat more restricted assumption.

8.2 Basic Equations Including Delay and Noise

We denote the dendritic current of dendrite m by ψ_m and the axonal pulse of axon k by P_k . The equations for the dendritic currents read

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma\right)^\alpha \psi_m(t) = \sum_k a_{mk} P_k(t - \tau_{km}) + F_{\psi,m}(t), \quad (8.1)$$

where $\alpha = 1$ refers to the lighthouse model and $\alpha = 2$ to the integrate and fire model. Below we shall also discuss the extension of our approach to non-integer values of α . The constants and quantities in (8.1) have the following meaning: γ , damping constant; a_{mk} , coupling coefficient (synaptic strength)

τ_{km} , delay time; $F_{\psi,m}(t)$, fluctuating forces. The pulses P are expressed in the form

$$P(t) = f(\phi(t)), \quad (8.2)$$

where f is a periodic function of the phase ϕ that is strongly peaked and represented in the form

$$f(\phi(t)) = \dot{\phi} \sum_n \delta(\phi - 2\pi n), \quad (8.3)$$

or seen as a function of time t in the form

$$f(\phi(t)) = \tilde{f}(t) = \sum_n \delta(t - t_n). \quad (8.4)$$

The times t_n are defined by

$$t_n: \phi(t_n) = 2\pi n. \quad (8.5)$$

ϕ is interpreted as a phase angle that obeys

$$\dot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma' \phi_j(t) \bmod 2\pi = S \left(\sum_m c_{jm} \psi_m(t - \tau'_{mj}) + p_{\text{ext},j}, \Theta_j \right) + F_{\phi,j}(t). \quad (8.6)$$

Depending on

$$\gamma' = 0, \quad \text{or} \quad \gamma' = 1, \quad (8.7)$$

we are dealing with the lighthouse model in the first case and with the integrate and fire model in the second case, where we use the usual scaling of γ' . The connection between the phase angle ϕ and the action potential U is given by

$$\phi(t) \bmod 2\pi = 2\pi U(t). \quad (8.8)$$

We present the sigmoid function S that is well established by physiological experiments, e.g. Wilson [3], by the Naka–Rushton formula (5.7), or, in a rather good approximation, in the following form

$$S(X, \Theta) = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad X < X_{\min}, \quad (8.9)$$

$$= X \quad \text{for} \quad X_{\min} \leq X \leq X_{\max}, \quad (8.10)$$

$$= S_{\max} \quad \text{for} \quad X \geq X_{\max}. \quad (8.11)$$

The quantities in (8.6) have the following meaning: c_{jm} , coupling constants; τ'_{mj} , delay times; $p_{\text{ext},j}$, external signal; Θ_j , threshold; $F_{\phi,j}$, fluctuating forces.

8.3 Response of Dendritic Currents

In order to make contact with the more conventional representation of the integrate and fire model, we eliminate the dendritic currents. Equation (8.1) is of the form

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma\right)^\alpha \psi(t) = g(t), \quad (8.12)$$

which may be supplemented by the initial conditions

$$\alpha = 1: \psi(0) = 0 \quad (8.13)$$

or

$$\alpha = 2: \psi(0) = \dot{\psi}(0) = 0. \quad (8.14)$$

Using a Green's function (see Sect. 4.4)

$$K_\alpha(t - \sigma) = (t - \sigma)^{\alpha-1} e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)}, \quad (8.15)$$

the solution of (8.12) reads

$$\psi(t) = \int_0^t K_\alpha(t - \sigma) g(\sigma) d\sigma. \quad (8.16)$$

The Green's function possesses an important biophysical meaning: it represents the response of the dendritic current to a single spike – a δ -pulse – at time $t = \sigma$. According to the different values of α , the rise of the response may have various shapes (Figs. 4.11 and 4.12). In this way, the value of α can be experimentally determined and seems to be about 1.5, i.e. non-integer. Later we shall see how to deal mathematically with such non-integer values of α . In principle, (8.16) is a special solution of (8.12), whose general solution is found by adding to (8.16) a solution of the homogeneous equation (i.e. (8.12) with $g(t) \equiv 0$). In this way, any admitted initial condition on ψ can be realized. Because of (8.13) or (8.14) the solution of the homogenous equation vanishes so that (8.16) is already the general solution. Applying the relationship (8.16) to the general (8.1), and inserting the result into (8.6), yields the basic equations for the phases ϕ_j

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma' \phi_j(t) \bmod 2\pi = S \left(\sum_m c_{jm} \int_0^{t-\tau'_{mj}} K_\alpha(t - \tau'_{mj} - \sigma) \{ \dots \} d\sigma \right. \\ \left. + p_{\text{ext},j}, \Theta_j \right) + F_{\phi,j}(t), \quad (8.17) \end{aligned}$$

where we abbreviated using the curly bracket

$$\{\dots\} = \sum_k a_{mk} P_k(\sigma - \tau_{km}) + F_{\psi,m}(\sigma). \quad (8.18)$$

In the following we shall assume

$$a_{mk} \text{ time-independent, } F = 0, \quad S \text{ linear} \quad (8.19)$$

and put

$$S(p_{\text{ext},j}, \Theta_j) = C_j. \quad (8.20)$$

Equation (8.17) can be rearranged to

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma' \phi_j(t) \bmod 2\pi \\ = \sum_{mk} c_{jm} a_{mk} \times \int_{\tau'_{mj}}^t K_\alpha(t - \sigma) P_k(\sigma - \tau_{kmj}) d\sigma + C_j \end{aligned} \quad (8.21)$$

with

$$\tau_{kmj} = \tau_{km} + \tau'_{jm}. \quad (8.22)$$

In order not to overload our presentation, we make the following simplification

$$K_\alpha \rightarrow K. \quad (8.23)$$

Furthermore we introduce a relabeling

$$\tau_{kmj} \rightarrow \tau_\ell, \quad (8.24)$$

and

$$c_{jm} a_{mk} \rightarrow A_{jk,\ell}. \quad (8.25)$$

Note that these replacements do not mean any restriction. Equation (8.21) can be rewritten as

$$\dot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma' \phi_j(t) \bmod 2\pi = \sum_{k\ell} A_{jk,\ell} \int_0^t K(t - \sigma) f(\phi_k(\sigma - \tau_\ell)) d\sigma + C_j. \quad (8.26)$$

In the integral in (8.26) we replaced the lower limit by $\tau = 0$, which has no effect on our final results as may be shown by a more detailed analysis.

8.4 The Phase-Locked State

The phase-locked state is defined by

$$\phi_j = \phi, \quad j = 1, \dots, N \quad (8.27)$$

and has to obey

$$\dot{\phi}(t) + \gamma' \phi(t) \bmod 2\pi = \sum_{k\ell} A_{jk,\ell} \int_0^t K(t-\sigma) f(\phi(\sigma - \tau_\ell)) d\sigma + C_j, \quad (8.28)$$

where we assume

$$C_j = C, \quad \sum_k A_{jk,\ell} = A_\ell \quad (8.29)$$

so that the r.h.s. of (8.28) becomes independent of j . As can be shown in a self-consistent way, under steady-state conditions, ϕ is periodic

$$\phi(t_n) = 2\pi n, \quad (8.30)$$

and we shall use the abbreviation

$$t_{n+1} - t_n = n\Delta, \quad n \text{ an integer.} \quad (8.31)$$

We establish the formal solution of (8.28) in the interval $t_n \leq t \leq t_{n+1}$ and put

$$\phi(t) = \phi(t_n) + \chi(t) \quad (8.32)$$

with

$$\chi(t_n) = 0 \text{ and } \dot{\chi} \geq 0. \quad (8.33)$$

Using (8.32), (8.31) and (8.33), we may transform (8.28) into

$$\dot{\chi}(t) + \gamma' \chi(t) = G(t), \quad (8.34)$$

where G is an abbreviation of the r.h.s. of (8.28). Using the Green's function (8.15) with $\alpha = 1$ and replacing γ with γ' , the solution of (8.34) reads

$$\begin{aligned} \chi(t) \equiv \phi(t) - \phi(t_n) &= \sum_{\ell} A_{\ell} \int_{t_n}^t e^{-\gamma'(t-\sigma')} d\sigma' \int_0^{\sigma'} K(\sigma' - \sigma) \\ &\times \sum_m \delta(\sigma - \tau_\ell - t_m) d\sigma + \int_{t_n}^t e^{-\gamma'(t-\sigma')} C d\sigma'. \end{aligned} \quad (8.35)$$

In order to derive an equation for the interval Δ , we put $t = t_{n+1}$. Because of the δ -functions, we can easily evaluate the integrals (see Appendix 1). The solution reads

$$\phi(t_{n+1}) - \phi(t_n) = \sum_{\ell} A_{\ell} h_{\alpha}(\Delta, \gamma, \gamma', \tau'_{\ell}) + \frac{C}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma' \Delta}\right), \quad (8.36)$$

where in the case of the lighthouse model $\alpha = 1$,

$$h_1(\Delta, \gamma, \gamma', \tau'_{\ell}) = \frac{e^{\gamma \tau'_{\ell}}}{\gamma' - \gamma} \cdot \frac{e^{-\gamma \Delta} - e^{-\gamma' \Delta}}{e^{\gamma \Delta} - 1} + \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(e^{-\gamma \Delta + \gamma \tau'_{\ell}} - e^{-\gamma' \Delta + \gamma' \tau'_{\ell}} \right), \quad (8.37)$$

$$\tau'_{\ell} = \tau_{\ell} \bmod \Delta.$$

If

$$\gamma' \Delta \ll 1, \quad \gamma \Delta \ll 1 \quad (8.38)$$

hold, (8.37) reduces to

$$h_1 = \frac{1}{\gamma}. \quad (8.39)$$

Because the Green's function K_2 can be obtained by differentiating K_1 with respect to γ , up to a factor -1 , also h_2 can be obtained in this way,

$$h_2(\Delta, \gamma, \gamma', \tau_{\ell}) = -\frac{\partial}{\partial \gamma} h_1(\Delta, \gamma, \gamma', \tau_{\ell}). \quad (8.40)$$

In the case of (8.38) this reduces to

$$h_2 = \frac{1}{\gamma^2}. \quad (8.41)$$

Because due to (8.30) the l.h.s. of (8.36) is equal to 2π , (8.36) is an equation for Δ , which in the cases (8.38), (8.39) and (8.41) becomes particularly simple and coincides with our former results in Sect. 6.6. Also the case in which K_{α} (8.15) is defined for non-integers, α can be included using the results of Appendix 2 of Chap. 8. We thus obtain, again under the conditions of (8.38), $h_{\alpha} = (-1)^{1-\alpha} (d^{\alpha-1}/d\gamma^{\alpha-1})(1/\gamma)$, or, explicitly, $h_{\alpha} = \Gamma(\alpha - 1)\gamma^{-\alpha}$, where Γ is the usual Γ -function (which represents an extension of the factorial $n! = \Gamma(n)$ for an integer n to non-integer arguments (see Appendix 2)).

8.5 Stability of the Phase-Locked State: Eigenvalue Equations

In order not to overload our formulas, we first treat the case of a single delay time τ , where we put

$$\tau = M\Delta + \tau', \quad 0 \leq \tau' < \Delta, \quad M \text{ an integer}, \quad (8.42)$$

and drop the index ℓ everywhere. For a linear stability analysis, we make the hypothesis

$$\phi_j(t) = \phi(t) + \xi_j(t). \quad (8.43)$$

Inserting it into (8.26) and subtracting (8.28), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} & \dot{\xi}_j(t) + \gamma'((\phi(t) + \xi_j(t)) \bmod 2\pi - \phi(t) \bmod 2\pi) \\ &= \sum_k A_{jk} \int_0^t K(t, \sigma) \cdot \{f(\phi(\sigma') + \xi_k(\sigma')) - f(\phi(\sigma'))\} d\sigma, \end{aligned} \quad (8.44)$$

where $\sigma' = \sigma - \tau$. The evaluation of the curly bracket in (8.44), with $f(\phi)$ given by (8.3), in the limit of small $|\xi_k|$ can be done by close analogy with that of the r.h.s. of (5.109). Using the intermediate steps (5.110)–(5.115), we obtain (see also Exercise 1)

$$\begin{aligned} & \dot{\xi}_j(t) + \gamma'[(\phi(t) + \xi_j(t)) \bmod 2\pi - \phi(t) \bmod 2\pi] \\ &= \sum_k A_{jk} \int_0^t K(t, \sigma) \sum_n \frac{d}{d\sigma} \delta(\sigma - \tau - t_n) d\sigma \xi_k(t_n) \dot{\phi}(t_n)^{-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (8.45)$$

For a stationary phase-locked state, we may replace $\dot{\phi}(t_n)$ with $\dot{\phi}(t_0)$. It remains to evaluate the square bracket on the l.h.s. of (8.45) for small $|\xi_j|$. This was done in Sect. 7.3 with the result

$$[\dots] = \xi_j(t) - 2\pi \dot{\phi}(t_0)^{-1} \sum_{n=0} \delta(t - t_n) \xi_j(t_n). \quad (8.46)$$

We are now in a position to write down an important first result of the transformed (8.44). Incidentally, to arrive at a concise presentation, we use on both sides of (8.44) the vector notation

$$\boldsymbol{\xi} = \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \\ \vdots \\ \xi_L \end{pmatrix}, \quad (8.47)$$

and the matrix

$$\tilde{A} = \dot{\phi}(t_0)^{-1} (A_{jk}). \quad (8.48)$$

On the r.h.s. of (8.45), we make use of (8.42) and put

$$t_{n'} = M\Delta + t_n, \quad (8.49)$$

or equivalently

$$n' = M + n. \quad (8.50)$$

Correspondingly, we replace n by $n' - M$ in (8.45). Finally, we drop the prime of n' . With the abbreviation

$$\hat{\gamma} = \gamma' 2\pi \dot{\phi}(t_0)^{-1} \quad (8.51)$$

we obtain, after a slight rearrangement, instead of (8.45) our final equation

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\xi} + \gamma' \xi &= \tilde{A} \int_0^t K(t, \sigma) \sum_n \frac{d}{d\sigma} \delta(\sigma - \tau' - t_n) \xi(t_{n-M}) d\sigma \\ &+ \hat{\gamma} \sum_{n=0} \delta(t - t_n) \xi(t_n). \end{aligned} \quad (8.52)$$

We now turn to the solution of this equation and use, in a first step, the Green's function method to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \xi(t) &= \tilde{A} \int_0^t e^{-\gamma'(t-s)} ds \int_0^s K(s, \sigma) \sum_n \frac{d}{d\sigma} \delta(\sigma - \tau' - t_n) \xi(t_{n-M}) d\sigma \\ &+ \hat{\gamma} \int_0^t e^{-\gamma'(t-\sigma)} \sum_n \delta(\sigma - t_n) \xi_n(t_n) d\sigma + \xi_{hom}(t), \end{aligned} \quad (8.53)$$

where $\xi_{hom}(t)$ is a solution of the homogeneous (8.52). Clearly, to determine $\xi(t)$ as a function of time, we need only the values of ξ at discrete times t_n . Therefore on both sides of (8.53) we put $t = t_n$. This converts (8.53) into a set of linear equations with time-independent coefficients. For the solution we can make the usual hypothesis

$$\xi(t_n) = \xi_0 \beta^n. \quad (8.54)$$

The evaluation of the first term (containing the double integral) on the r.h.s. of (8.53) depends on the explicit form of $K(t, \sigma)$. We first use (cf. (8.15) with $\alpha = 1$)

$$K(t, \sigma) \equiv K_1(t, \sigma) = e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)}. \quad (8.55)$$

Because of the (derivative of the) δ -function, the integrals can easily be performed and we obtain for $t = t_N = N\Delta$, N an integer, $0 < \tau' < \Delta$,

$$\begin{aligned} R_1 \equiv \text{first term r.h.s. (8.53)} &= -\tilde{A} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \xi(t_{n-M}) \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} (\gamma e^{-\gamma(t-t_n-\tau')} \\ &- \gamma' e^{-\gamma'(t-t_n-\tau')}). \end{aligned} \quad (8.56)$$

To evaluate the sum, we use the hypothesis (8.54), which yields

$$\begin{aligned} R_1 &= -\tilde{A} \xi_0 \beta^{-M} \left\{ \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma} \cdot e^{\gamma\tau'} \frac{\beta^N - e^{-\gamma N\Delta}}{\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1} \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma' - \gamma} e^{\gamma'\tau'} \frac{\beta^N - e^{-\gamma' N\Delta}}{\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1} \right\}. \end{aligned} \quad (8.57)$$

The evaluation of the second term in (8.53) is still simpler and yields

$$\hat{\gamma} \frac{\beta^N - e^{-\gamma' N \Delta}}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} \xi_0. \quad (8.58)$$

Using the results (8.57) and (8.58), we obtain for (8.53) our final result

$$\begin{aligned} \xi_0 \beta^N = & -\tilde{A} \xi_0 \beta^{-M} \left\{ \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma} e^{\gamma \tau'} \frac{\beta^N}{\beta e^{\gamma \Delta} - 1} \right. \\ & \left. - \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma' - \gamma} e^{\gamma' \tau'} \frac{\beta^N}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} \right\} \\ & + \hat{\gamma} \frac{\beta^N}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} \xi_0 + \xi_{hom}(t_N) + \text{terms independent of } \beta^N. \end{aligned} \quad (8.59)$$

This equation has been derived using $K = K_1$ in (8.53), as shown in (8.55). The result for $K = K_2(t, \sigma) = -dK_1/d\gamma$ can be immediately obtained by replacing R_1 with

$$R_2 = -dR_1/d\gamma. \quad (8.60)$$

We leave it as an exercise to the reader to perform the steps explicitly. In the case of non integer values of α in K_α , we can proceed correspondingly using fractal derivatives (see Appendix 2 to Chap. 8).

In order to see how to extract the eigenvalues β from (8.59), we consider a related example.

Exercise 1. Derive (8.45) in detail.

8.6 Example of the Solution of an Eigenvalue Equation of the Form of (8.59)

The determination of the eigenvalues β (or equivalently Γ with $\beta = e^\Gamma$) is somewhat tricky because we are dealing with an integral equation instead of the original differential equations for ψ and ϕ . To elucidate the problem, let us consider the differential equation

$$\dot{x} + \Gamma x = 0 \quad (8.61)$$

with its solution

$$x = x_0 e^{-\Gamma t}. \quad (8.62)$$

We write (8.61) in a different form

$$\dot{x} + \gamma x = -\gamma' x \quad (8.63)$$

with

$$\gamma + \gamma' = \Gamma. \quad (8.64)$$

Using the by now well-known Green's function, the formal solution of (8.63) reads

$$x(t) = \int_0^t e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} (-\gamma') x(\sigma) d\sigma + \alpha e^{-\gamma t}, \quad (8.65)$$

where $\alpha e^{-\gamma t}$ is the solution of the “homogeneous” (8.63). Because we are seeking a solution of the form of (8.62), we make the hypothesis

$$x(t) = \hat{x}_0 e^{-\hat{\Gamma} t} \quad (8.66)$$

and insert it into (8.65). The resulting integral can be easily solved and we obtain

$$\hat{x}_0 e^{-\hat{\Gamma} t} = \hat{x}_0 (-\gamma') \frac{1}{\gamma - \hat{\Gamma}} e^{-\hat{\Gamma} t} + \hat{x}_0 \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma - \hat{\Gamma}} e^{-\gamma t} + \alpha e^{-\gamma t}. \quad (8.67)$$

As the reader will note, the structure of this equation is entirely analogous to that of (8.59), namely the r.h. sides contain terms β^N ($\leftrightarrow e^{\Gamma t}$) and terms of a different type. Thus when solving the “puzzle” of (8.67), we know how to deal with (8.59). Comparing the coefficients of $e^{\hat{\Gamma} t}$ or of $e^{-\gamma t}$ in (8.67), we obtain

$$1 = -\frac{\gamma'}{\gamma - \hat{\Gamma}} \quad (8.68)$$

and thus

$$\hat{\Gamma} = \gamma + \gamma', \quad (8.69)$$

as well as

$$\alpha = -\hat{x}_0 \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma - \hat{\Gamma}} \quad (8.70)$$

and thus

$$\alpha = \hat{x}_0. \quad (8.71)$$

In the context of (8.59), we are only interested in the eigenvalues β . Thus our example provides us with the rule: The terms $\xi_{hom}(t)$ and *terms independent of β^N* cancel each other, and we need only to take terms with powers of β into account.

8.7 Stability of Phase-Locked State I: The Eigenvalues of the Lighthouse Model with $\gamma' \neq 0$

Dropping the last two terms in (8.59) and dividing both sides by β^N (N arbitrary), we obtain our fundamental eigenvalue equations (for the lighthouse model, $\alpha = 1$, but $\gamma' \neq 0$)

$$\begin{aligned} \xi_0 = & -\tilde{A}\xi_0\beta^{-M} \left\{ \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma} e^{\gamma\tau'} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1} \right. \\ & \left. - \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma' - \gamma} e^{\gamma'\tau'} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1} \right\} + \hat{\gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1} \xi_0. \end{aligned} \quad (8.72)$$

The most elegant way to solve this is to choose ξ_0 as the solution to

$$\tilde{A}\xi_\mu = \lambda_\mu \xi_\mu, \quad (8.73)$$

where we distinguish the eigenvalues and eigenvectors by the index μ . Choosing ξ_0 this way, we can transform (8.72) into

$$\begin{aligned} 1 = & -\lambda_\mu \beta^{-M} \left\{ \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma} e^{\gamma\tau'} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1} - \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma' - \gamma} e^{\gamma'\tau'} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1} \right\} \\ & + \hat{\gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1}. \end{aligned} \quad (8.74)$$

Putting $\gamma' = \hat{\gamma} = 0$, we obtain the result for the original lighthouse model

$$1 = \lambda_\mu \beta^{-M} \frac{e^{\gamma\tau'}}{\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1}, \quad (8.75)$$

from which we deduce the equation

$$\beta^{M+1} - \beta^M e^{-\gamma\Delta} = \lambda_\mu e^{\gamma\tau' - \gamma\Delta}. \quad (8.76)$$

We discussed the solutions of this type of equation in Sect. 5.7. Let us turn to (8.74). In order not to overload our discussion, we assume $\gamma' \neq \gamma$, $\tau' = 0$, and λ_μ is small. Because of the terms $\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1$ and $\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1$ in the denominators, we seek three types of solutions that use the resulting singularities for

$$\beta_1 \text{ with } \beta_1 e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1 = \epsilon_1, \quad (8.77)$$

$$\beta_2 \text{ with } \beta_2 e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1 = \epsilon_2, \quad (8.78)$$

$$\beta_3 \neq \beta_1, \beta_2. \quad (8.79)$$

We assume ϵ_1 is small and obtain in (8.74) up to order ϵ_1

$$\epsilon_1 e^{-\gamma\Delta M} = -\lambda_\mu \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(\gamma - \frac{\gamma' \epsilon_1}{e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta} - 1} \right) + \hat{\gamma} \frac{\epsilon_1 e^{-\gamma\Delta M}}{e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta} - 1}, \quad (8.80)$$

or

$$\epsilon_1 = \left(e^{-\gamma\Delta M} - \frac{\lambda_\mu \cdot \gamma' + \hat{\gamma}e^{-\gamma\Delta M}}{e^{(\gamma'-\gamma)\Delta} - 1} \right)^{-1} \frac{\gamma\lambda_\mu}{\gamma - \gamma'}. \quad (8.81)$$

We may determine β_2 similarly and obtain

$$\epsilon_2 = \left(e^{-\gamma'\Delta M} + \lambda_\mu \frac{\gamma}{e^{(\gamma-\gamma')\Delta} - 1} \right)^{-1} \left(\lambda_\mu \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma' - \gamma} + \hat{\gamma}e^{-\gamma\Delta M} \right). \quad (8.82)$$

In order to obtain the third class of roots, β_3 , we assume that in a self-consistent manner

$$|\beta_3| e^{\gamma'\Delta} \ll 1, \quad |\beta_3| e^{\gamma\Delta} \ll 1. \quad (8.83)$$

Again for $\tau' = 0$, we obtain from (8.74)

$$\beta_3^M = \lambda_\mu (1 + \hat{\gamma})^{-1}, \quad (8.84)$$

which possesses the M roots

$$\beta_3 = {}^M\sqrt{\lambda_\mu (1 + \hat{\gamma})^{-1} e^{2\pi i j / M}}, \quad j = 0, \dots, M - 1. \quad (8.85)$$

Because of these roots, oscillatory damping occurs. The above results can be further simplified, for instance for

$$e^{(\gamma'-\gamma)\Delta} - 1 \approx (\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta. \quad (8.86)$$

It is interesting to study the impact of the damping of the action potential, which is determined by γ' , and to compare the eigenvalues β for $\gamma' \neq 0$ with those for $\gamma' = 0$. First of all, by $\gamma' \neq 0$ a new eigenvalue (connected with new eigenvectors) is introduced, namely β_2 . At least for small $|\lambda_\mu|$, it leads to damping. The other eigenvalues β_1, β_3 correspond to (5.169), (5.170), respectively. In β_3 , a $\gamma' \neq 0$ increases the damping, while the changes of β_2 due to $\gamma' \neq 0$ depend in a somewhat intricate way on λ_μ .

8.8 Stability of Phase-Locked State II: The Eigenvalues of the Integrate and Fire Model

We now turn to the integrate and fire model, i.e.

$$\alpha = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma' \neq 0. \quad (8.87)$$

As mentioned above (cf. (8.60)), we can obtain the eigenvalue equation by differentiating the curly bracket on the r.h.s. of (8.74) with respect to γ , multiplied by (-1) . Since the eigenvalues β are only weakly influenced by $e^{\gamma\tau'}$ and $e^{\gamma'\tau'}$, we put these factors equal to unity. After a slight rearrangement

of terms, we obtain

$$1 = \beta^{-M+1} \lambda_\mu \left\{ \frac{\gamma'}{(\gamma' - \gamma)^2} \frac{(e^{\gamma'\Delta} - e^{\gamma\Delta})}{(\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1)(\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1)} - \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma} \frac{\Delta}{(\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1)^2} \right\} + \hat{\gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1}. \quad (8.88)$$

In the cases $M = 0$ and $M = 1$, this is an equation of third order that can be solved using Cardano's formula. For $M > 1$, (8.88) must be solved numerically. In all cases, for $M \geq 0$, we can obtain the eigenvalues to a good approximation, however, provided γ' and γ are sufficiently far away from each other and $\hat{\gamma} \ll 1$, $|\lambda_\mu \gamma \Delta|$ and $|\lambda_\mu \gamma' \Delta| \ll |\gamma' - \gamma|$. Since the resulting expressions are still rather complicated, we first summarize the salient results. Again, as in the foregoing section, we obtain three classes of eigenvalues $\beta_1, \beta_2, \beta_3$, corresponding to (8.77), (8.78) and (8.85). The main qualitative difference consists in a splitting of β_1 into two eigenvalues, cf. (8.99). While β_1 (8.77) implied pure damping, the new eigenvalues β_1 (cf. (8.101)) imply oscillations provided $\lambda_\mu < 0$. Let us now derive and discuss the eigenvalues in more detail. In order not to overload our treatment of (8.88), we approximate

$$e^{\gamma'\Delta} - e^{\gamma\Delta} \quad \text{using} \quad (\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta. \quad (8.89)$$

Using this approximation in (8.88) and rearranging terms, we obtain

$$\left(1 - \hat{\gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1}\right) \beta^{M-1} = \frac{\lambda \gamma' \Delta}{\gamma' - \gamma} \frac{1}{(\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1)(\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1)} - \frac{\lambda \gamma \Delta}{\gamma' - \gamma} \frac{1}{(\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1)^2}. \quad (8.90)$$

Incidentally, we drop the index μ of λ_μ and will add it only at the end. We seek the first kind of eigenvalues β_1 (for λ fixed) using the hypothesis

$$\beta_1 = e^{-\gamma\Delta}(1 + \epsilon_1), \quad (8.91)$$

where ϵ_1 is a small quantity. Inserting (8.91) into (8.90) yields

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(1 - \hat{\gamma} \frac{1}{e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta} - 1}\right) e^{-\gamma\Delta(M-1)} \epsilon_1^2 \\ &= \frac{\lambda \gamma' \Delta}{\gamma' - \gamma} \frac{\epsilon_1}{e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta}(1 + \epsilon_1) - 1} - \frac{\lambda \gamma \Delta}{\gamma' - \gamma}. \end{aligned} \quad (8.92)$$

Because of (8.51) and $\dot{\phi} \approx 2\pi/\Delta$, we put $\hat{\gamma} = \gamma'\Delta$. With (8.89), the bracket on the l.h.s. of (8.92) yields (up to higher order in $\gamma'\Delta, \gamma\Delta$)

$$-\frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma}. \quad (8.93)$$

Under the assumption

$$\epsilon_1 e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta} < |e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta} - 1| \approx |\gamma' - \gamma| \Delta \quad (8.94)$$

we may expand the r.h.s. of (8.92) up to ϵ_1^2 . After a rearrangement of terms and multiplying the resulting equation by $\gamma' - \gamma$, we finally obtain a quadratic algebraic equation of the form

$$a\epsilon_1^2 - b\epsilon_1 + c = 0, \quad (8.95)$$

where

$$a = \lambda\gamma' \frac{e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta}}{(\gamma' - \gamma)^2 \Delta} - \gamma e^{-\gamma\Delta(M-1)}, \quad (8.96)$$

$$b = \frac{\lambda\gamma'}{(\gamma' - \gamma)}, \quad (8.97)$$

$$c = \lambda\gamma\Delta. \quad (8.98)$$

Inserting (8.96)–(8.98) into the standard formula for the solution of (8.95), i.e.

$$\epsilon_1 = \frac{b}{2a} \pm \sqrt{\frac{b^2}{4a^2} - \frac{c}{a}} \quad (8.99)$$

yields rather lengthy expressions so that we prefer to discuss some general aspects. We note that there are two branches, \pm , of the solutions. Provided

$$\gamma' \ll \gamma, \quad (8.100)$$

(8.100) reduces in its lowest approximation to

$$\epsilon_1 = \pm \sqrt{\Delta\lambda} e^{\gamma\Delta(M-1)/2}. \quad (8.101)$$

Note that ϵ_1 becomes imaginary for $\lambda < 0$, and thus the eigenvalue β_1 becomes complex, leading to an oscillatory relaxation process. If, on the other hand,

$$\gamma \ll \gamma', \quad (8.102)$$

the evaluation of (8.99) and its discussion become rather involved. The case $M = 1$, $\gamma \rightarrow 0$, is, however, particularly simple and the quadratic equation (8.88) for β can be easily solved, yielding

$$\beta = 1 \pm \sqrt{\lambda\Delta} e^{-\gamma'\Delta/2}, \quad (8.103)$$

which, for $\lambda > 0$, implies an instability.

Let us turn to the second class of eigenvalues, where we put

$$\beta_2 = e^{-\gamma'\Delta}(1 + \epsilon_2), \quad (8.104)$$

where ϵ_2 is assumed to be small. Because of the kind of singularity, it suffices to retain terms up to ϵ_2 in (8.88). The straightforward result reads

$$\begin{aligned} \epsilon_2 = & \left(e^{-\gamma' \Delta(M-1)} + \frac{\lambda \gamma}{(\gamma' - \gamma)^3 \Delta} \right)^{-1} \\ & \times \left(\Delta e^{-\gamma' \Delta(M-1)} - \frac{\lambda}{(\gamma' - \gamma)^2} \right) \gamma'. \end{aligned} \quad (8.105)$$

Again, a number of special cases may be discussed, which is left to the reader as exercise.

Finally, we discuss the third class of solutions β_3 . Under the assumptions

$$|\beta_3 e^{\gamma' \Delta}| \ll 1, |\beta_3 e^{\gamma \Delta}| \ll 1 \quad (8.106)$$

(8.90) reduces to

$$(1 + \hat{\gamma}) \beta^{M-1} = \lambda \Delta \quad (8.107)$$

which possesses the by now well-known complex solutions

$$\beta = {}^{M-1}\sqrt{(1 + \gamma' \Delta)^{-1} \lambda \Delta} e^{2\pi i j / (M-1)}, \quad j = 0, \dots, M-2 \quad (8.108)$$

for $M > 1$. The cases $M = 0$ and $M = 1$ need not be considered here, because they are covered by the solutions β_1, β_2 (cubic equations!). In all the above results for $\beta_1, \beta_2, \beta_3$, we must finally replace λ by λ_μ . At any rate, in all cases, except (8.102), stability of the phase-locked state is guaranteed if $|\lambda_\mu \Delta|$ is small enough. This condition can be fulfilled if either the coupling between the neurons or $\Delta \propto \dot{\phi}^{-1}$ is small enough. $\dot{\phi}^{-1}$ small can be achieved if the external signal is large.

Exercise. Derive the eigenvalue equation corresponding to (8.88) for the kernel $K_\alpha(t, \sigma)$ with $\alpha = 1.5$.

Hint: Start from (8.74) and use the formalism of fractal derivatives (Appendix 2 to Chap. 8).

8.9 Generalization to Several Delay Times

In order to generalize the fundamental eigenvalue (8.88), that we derived for a single delay time to several delay times τ_ℓ , we have to start from (8.26). It is a simple matter to recognize that all we have to do are two things:

1) We put

$$\tau_\ell = M_\ell \Delta + \tau'_\ell, \quad M_\ell \text{ an integer, } 0 \leq \tau'_\ell < \Delta,$$

and neglect τ'_ℓ .

2) While in our derivation of (8.88) we considered only a single τ_ℓ in (8.26), we now take all terms of $\sum_\ell A_{jk, \ell} \dots$ in (8.26) into account. We introduce the matrices

$$\tilde{A}_\ell = (A_{jk,\ell}) \dot{\phi}(t_0)^{-1}. \quad (8.109)$$

The general eigenvalue equation reads

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\xi}(0) = \left[\sum_{\ell} \tilde{A}_\ell \left\{ \frac{\gamma'}{(\gamma' - \gamma)^2} (e^{\gamma'\Delta} - e^{\gamma\Delta}) (1 - e^{\gamma'\Delta}\beta)^{-1} (1 - e^{\gamma\Delta}\beta)^{-1} \right. \right. \\ \left. \left. - \frac{\gamma\Delta}{\gamma' - \gamma} e^{\gamma\Delta} (1 - e^{\gamma\Delta}\beta)^{-2} \right\} \beta^{-M_\ell+1} - \hat{\gamma} (1 - e^{\gamma'\Delta})^{-1} \right] \boldsymbol{\xi}(0). \end{aligned} \quad (8.110)$$

Since the vector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is high-dimensional, this matrix equation is high-dimensional also and cannot be solved explicitly except for special cases or by numerical procedures. A considerable simplification can be achieved, however, if all matrices can be simultaneously diagonalized. This is, for instance, the case if \tilde{A}_ℓ depends on the difference of the indices j and k

$$\tilde{A}_{jk,\ell} = \tilde{a}_\ell(j - k). \quad (8.111)$$

In this case the eigenvectors of the corresponding matrix are plane waves under the assumption of periodic boundary conditions (cf. Sect. 6.9). We denote the eigenvalues of \tilde{A}_ℓ by $\lambda_{\mu\ell}$ and obtain from (8.110)

$$\begin{aligned} 1 = \sum_{\ell} a_{\ell,1} (1 - e^{\gamma'\Delta}\beta)^{-1} (1 - e^{\gamma\Delta}\beta)^{-1} \beta^{-M_\ell+1} \\ - \sum_{\ell} a_{\ell,2} (1 - e^{\gamma\Delta}\beta)^{-2} \beta^{-M_\ell+1} - \hat{\gamma} (1 - e^{\gamma'\Delta}\beta)^{-1} \end{aligned} \quad (8.112)$$

with

$$a_{\ell,1} = \lambda_{\mu\ell} \frac{\gamma'}{(\gamma' - \gamma)^2} (e^{\gamma'\Delta} - e^{\gamma\Delta}), \quad (8.113)$$

$$a_{\ell,2} = \lambda_{\mu\ell} \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma} \Delta e^{\gamma\Delta}. \quad (8.114)$$

The solution of (8.112) is equivalent to looking for the zeros of a polynomial.

8.10 Time-Dependent Sensory Inputs

In order to study the phase-locked state and its stability, we assumed that all sensory inputs, i.e.

$$C_j(t) \propto p_{\text{ext}} \quad (8.115)$$

are equal and time-independent. Now we wish to discuss the case in which all inputs are still equal but time-dependent

$$C_j = C(t). \quad (8.116)$$

Then the eigenvalues of the stability analysis allow us to estimate what happens if C varies in time. On general grounds we may state that if $C(t)$ changes slowly, compared to the time constants inherent in the eigenvalues, we may assume that phase locking persists, i.e. that the common phase follows adiabatically the changes of C . If C changes abruptly, complicated transients will occur that require the knowledge of the eigenvectors, which is, however, beyond the scope of the present book. If for some time all C_j have been equal and then suddenly adopt different values,

$$C_j = C \rightarrow \begin{cases} C_1 \\ C_2 \\ \vdots \\ C_N, \end{cases} \quad (8.117)$$

phase locking will break down. This is actually observed in experiments on phase locking between neurons of the visual cortex (cf. Chap. 3).

8.11 Impact of Noise and Delay

The combined influence of noise and delay was studied in detail in Chap. 6, where we examined the lighthouse model. The treatment of the integrate and fire model is basically the same, but the determination of the necessary eigenvectors is far more complicated and beyond the scope of this book. A few general comments may therefore suffice here.

By analogy with the result (6.202), we may expect that the time-dependence of the correlation function between neurons at times t_N and $t_{N'}$ is essentially determined by a superposition of powers of the eigenvalues, i.e. $\beta^{N-N'}$. While such delays may be experimentally observable, the determination of the coefficients may present a major problem and shall not be discussed here further.

8.12 Partial Phase Locking

In a complex neural network it may happen that only a subgroup of neurons becomes phase-locked, whereas other neurons are unlocked. So let us consider as an example a group of phase-locked neurons, whose indices we denote by J, K , and the remaining neurons, whose indices we denote by j', k' . In such a case, the original equations of the full network (without time delays)

$$\dot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma' \phi_j(t) \bmod 2\pi = \sum_k A_{jk} G(\phi_k(t)) + C_j + \hat{F}_j(t) \quad (8.118)$$

can be decomposed into the two groups of equations

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\phi}_J(t) + \gamma' \phi_J(t) \bmod 2\pi = & \sum_K A_{JK} G(\phi_K) + C_J + \hat{F}_J(t) \\ & + \sum_{k'} A_{Jk'} G(\phi_{k'}) , \end{aligned} \quad (8.119)$$

where

$$\phi_J = \phi_K = \phi , \quad (8.120)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\phi}_{j'}(t) + \gamma' \phi_{j'}(t) \bmod 2\pi = & \sum_{k'} A_{j'k'} G(\phi_{k'}) + C_{j'} + \hat{F}_{j'} \\ & + \sum_K A_{j'K} G(\phi) . \end{aligned} \quad (8.121)$$

Since the neurons with indices j', k' are not phase-locked, in (8.119) they act as some kind of incoherent noise source on the phase-locked neurons. The noise source is represented by the last sum in (8.119). On the other hand, the last term in (8.121) acts as a coherent driving force. Depending on the coefficients $A_{j'K}$, this force may or may not be important for the behavior of the neurons with indices j' . If the latter force becomes too strong, one may expect that also the hitherto unlocked neurons will become locked to the first group and the last term in (8.119) will lose its character as a noise term. Clearly, our approach can include time-delays.

8.13 Derivation of Pulse-Averaged Equations

Our starting point is the set of (8.1)–(8.6), from which we will derive equations for quantities that are averages over a time interval T that contains several pulses. For the convenience of the reader we repeat the basic equations but drop the fluctuating forces $F_{\psi,m}, F_{\phi,j}$, because we assume that their time-averages vanish. The equations for the dendritic currents for $\alpha = 2$ (the integrate and fire model) then read

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma \right)^\alpha \psi_m(t) = \sum_k a_{mk} P_k(t - \tau_{km}) , \quad (8.122)$$

where the pulses are represented in the form

$$P_k(t) = f(\phi_k(t)) = \sum_n \delta(t - t_{nk}) , \quad (8.123)$$

where t_{nk} is the n th firing time of axon k . The equations for the phase angles ϕ_j read

$$\begin{aligned} & \dot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma' \phi_j(t) \bmod 2\pi \\ &= S \left(\sum_m c_{jm} \psi_m(t - \tau'_{mj}) + p_{\text{ext},j}(t), \Theta_j \right). \end{aligned} \quad (8.124)$$

The average of the first term on the l.h.s. of (8.124) over time T yields

$$\frac{1}{T} \int_t^{t+T} \dot{\phi}_j(t') dt' = \frac{1}{T} (\phi_j(t+T) - \phi_j(t)), \quad (8.125)$$

or

$$N_j 2\pi/T \equiv 2\pi\omega_j, \quad (8.126)$$

where N_j is the number of axonal pulses in interval T and ω_j is the pulse rate. The size of the second term on the l.h.s. of (8.124) can be estimated as follows. Since, according to its definition,

$$\phi(t) \bmod 2\pi, \quad (8.127)$$

runs in the interval

$$(0, 2\pi), \quad (8.128)$$

we obtain as an order of magnitude of the phase average

$$\overline{\phi(t) \bmod 2\pi} = \pi. \quad (8.129)$$

In the following we assume

$$\gamma'/2 \ll \omega_j, \quad (8.130)$$

which is fulfilled if the external input p is large enough, but S is not yet saturated.

We turn to the evaluation of the r.h.s. of (8.124). If the pulse rate changes only slowly, we may use the approximation

$$\overline{S(X)} \approx S(\overline{X}), \quad (8.131)$$

where, in view of (8.124),

$$\overline{\psi_m}(t - \tau) = \frac{1}{T} \int_{t-\tau}^{t-\tau+T} \psi_m(t') dt' = \frac{1}{T} \int_t^{t+T} \psi_m(t' - \tau) dt' \quad (8.132)$$

and

$$\overline{p_{\text{ext},j}}(t) = \frac{1}{T} \int_t^{t+T} p_{\text{ext},j}(t') dt'. \quad (8.133)$$

It remains to establish an equation for $\overline{\psi_m}$. To this end, using the Green's function $K_\alpha(t, \sigma)$, we transform (8.122) into

$$\psi_m(t) = \sum_k a_{mk} \int_0^t K_\alpha(t, \sigma) \sum_n \delta(\sigma - t_{nk}) d\sigma, \quad (8.134)$$

over which we take the average

$$\overline{\psi_m(t)} = \sum_k a_{mk} \frac{1}{T} \int_t^{t+T} dt' \int_0^{t'} K_\alpha(t', \sigma) \sum_n \delta(\sigma - t_{nk}) d\sigma. \quad (8.135)$$

(For simplicity we first treat the case $\tau_{km} = 0$.) Because of the δ -functions in (8.135), the integral over σ can be immediately evaluated so that we are left with considering

$$\frac{1}{T} \int_t^{t+T} dt' K_\alpha(t', t_{nk}). \quad (8.136)$$

We use the fact that K_α is a peaked function. Choosing T large enough and neglecting boundary effects, we obtain

$$(8.136) = \begin{cases} \overline{K_\alpha} = \text{const.} & \text{if } t_{nk} \in (t, t+T) \\ = 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (8.137)$$

Making use of (8.135)–(8.137), we readily obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\psi_m(t)} &= \sum_k a_{mk} \overline{K_\alpha} \frac{1}{T} (\text{number of pulses of axon } k \text{ in } (t, t+T)) \\ &= \sum_k a_{mk} \overline{K_\alpha} \omega_k(t). \end{aligned} \quad (8.138)$$

In order to correct for the neglect of τ_{km} in (8.134), we finally have to replace t with $t - \tau_{mk}$ on the r.h.s. of (8.138). This leads us to our final result

$$\overline{\psi_m(t)} = \sum_k a_{mk} \omega_k(t - \tau_{km}). \quad (8.139)$$

In conclusion, we may formulate the equations for the pulse rates ω_j , where we use (8.125), (8.126), (8.130)–(8.133)

$$\omega_j(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} S \left(\sum_m c_{jm} \overline{\psi_m}(t - \tau'_{mj}) + \overline{p}_{\text{ext},j}(t), \Theta_j \right). \quad (8.140)$$

Equations (8.139) and (8.140) constitute our final result, which is a general form of the Jirsa–Haken equation that we will discuss in Chap. 12. It is an easy matter to eliminate the dendritic currents from (8.139), (8.140) by

inserting (8.139) into (8.140)

$$\omega_j(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} S \left(\sum_{mk} c_{jm} a_{mk} \omega_k(t - \tau_{km} - \tau'_{mj}) + \bar{p}_{\text{ext},j}(t), \Theta_j \right). \quad (8.141)$$

When properly interpreted, these equations lead to the Wilson–Cowan equations (cf. Chap. 12) under the assumption that the relaxation time of the axonal pulse rates is small.

Appendix 1 to Chap. 8: Evaluation of (8.35)

In the following we will be concerned with the evaluation of (8.35) and here with the first double integral for $t = t_{n+1}$. We first note an important property of the kernel

$$K_\alpha(t - \sigma) = (t - \sigma)^{\alpha-1} e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)}, \quad (8.142)$$

which reads for $\alpha = 1$

$$K_1(t - \sigma) = e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)}, \quad (8.143)$$

and for $\alpha = 2$

$$K_2(t - \sigma) = (t - \sigma) e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)}. \quad (8.144)$$

Quite obviously, the kernel (8.144) can be obtained from (8.143) by means of a differentiation with respect to γ ,

$$K_2 = -\frac{\partial K_1}{\partial \gamma}. \quad (8.145)$$

A similar relationship holds even if α is a non-integer number. In such a case, by use of a fractal derivative (see Appendix 2 to Chap. 8), we may write

$$K_\alpha = (-1)^{1-\alpha} \frac{d^{\alpha-1}}{d\gamma^{\alpha-1}} K_1, \quad \alpha \text{ an integer or non-integer.} \quad (8.146)$$

Because of (8.143) and (8.145), it will be sufficient to first consider only the following expression

$$\int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} e^{-\gamma'(t_{n+1}-\sigma')} d\sigma' \int_0^{\sigma'} e^{-\gamma(\sigma'-\sigma)} \underbrace{\sum_{n'} \delta(\sigma - \tau - t_{n'})}_{\sum_{n''} \delta(\sigma - \tau' - n''\Delta)} d\sigma. \quad (8.147)$$

In the second line in (8.147), we have chosen τ' and n'' in such a way that τ' lies within Δ . Exchanging the sequence of integrations and observing the integration regions,

$$t_n \leq \sigma' \leq t_{n+1} \quad (8.148)$$

and

$$0 \leq \sigma \leq \sigma', \quad (8.149)$$

we may decompose (8.147) into

$$\int_0^{t_n} d\sigma \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} d\sigma' + \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} d\sigma \int_{\sigma}^{t_{n+1}} d\sigma', \quad (8.150)$$

where the integrands are the same as in (8.147). We first evaluate the first double integral in (8.150), namely

$$(I) = \int_0^{t_n} d\sigma \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} d\sigma' \sum_{n''} \delta(\sigma - \tau' - n''\Delta) e^{-\gamma'(t_{n+1}-\sigma')} e^{-\gamma(\sigma'-\sigma)}. \quad (8.151)$$

Performing the integration over σ' in (8.151) yields

$$(I) = \int_0^{t_n} d\sigma \sum_{n''} \delta(\sigma - \tau' - n''\Delta) \times e^{-\gamma't_{n+1}+\gamma\sigma} \left[\frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)t_{n+1}} - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)t_n} \right) \right]. \quad (8.152)$$

We introduce a new integration variable by

$$\sigma = \tilde{\sigma} + \tau', \quad (8.153)$$

which transforms (8.152) into

$$(I) = \int_{-\tau'}^{t_n - \tau'} d\tilde{\sigma} \sum_{n''} \delta(\tilde{\sigma} - n''\Delta) e^{-\gamma't_{n+1}+\gamma\tilde{\sigma}+\gamma\tau'} [\dots], \quad (8.154)$$

where the square bracket is the same as in (8.152). Because of the δ -function, the integral in (8.154) can be immediately evaluated so that

$$(I) = \sum_{n''=0}^{(n-1)} e^{\gamma\Delta n''} e^{-\gamma't_{n+1}+\gamma\tau'} [\dots]. \quad (8.155)$$

The sum in (8.155) is a geometric series that can immediately be evaluated to yield

$$(I) = \frac{e^{\gamma\Delta n} - 1}{e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1} e^{\gamma\tau'} \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(e^{-\gamma t_{n+1}} - e^{-\gamma t_n} e^{-\gamma'(t_{n+1}-t_n)} \right), \quad (8.156)$$

from which, in the limit $t_n, t_{n+1} \rightarrow \infty$, only

$$(I) = \frac{e^{\gamma\tau'}}{e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1} \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(e^{-\gamma\Delta} - e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \right) \quad (8.157)$$

remains. We now evaluate the second part of (8.150), i.e.

$$(II) = \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} d\sigma \int_{\sigma}^{t_{n+1}} d\sigma' \sum_{n''} \delta(\sigma - \tau' - n''\Delta) e^{-\gamma'(t_{n+1} - \sigma')} \cdot e^{-\gamma(\sigma' - \sigma)}, \quad (8.158)$$

which can be written as

$$(II) = e^{-\gamma't_{n+1}} \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} d\sigma \sum_{n''} \delta(\sigma - \tau' - n''\Delta) e^{\gamma\sigma} \int_{\sigma}^{t_{n+1}} d\sigma' \cdot e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\sigma'}. \quad (8.159)$$

The evaluation of the second integral yields

$$(II) = e^{-\gamma't_{n+1}} \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} d\sigma \sum_{n''} \delta(\sigma - \tau' - n''\Delta) e^{\gamma\sigma} [\dots], \quad (8.160)$$

where the square bracket is defined by

$$[\dots] = \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)t_{n+1}} - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\sigma} \right). \quad (8.161)$$

Observing the limits of integration

$$t_n \leq \sigma = \tau' + n''\Delta \leq t_{n+1}, \quad (8.162)$$

we note that because of the δ -function the only contribution to this integral stems from

$$\sigma = t_n + \tau'. \quad (8.163)$$

Thus (8.160) is transformed into

$$(II) = e^{-\gamma't_{n+1}} e^{\gamma(t_n + \tau')} \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)t_{n+1}} - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)(t_n + \tau')} \right). \quad (8.164)$$

In the limit

$$t_n, t_{n+1} \rightarrow \infty \quad (8.165)$$

this reduces to

$$(II) = \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(e^{-\gamma\Delta + \gamma\tau'} - e^{-\gamma'\Delta + \gamma'\tau'} \right). \quad (8.166)$$

With (8.157) and (8.166) our final result reads

$$(I) + (II) = \frac{e^{\gamma\tau'}}{e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1} \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(e^{-\gamma\Delta} - e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \right) + \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(e^{-\gamma\Delta + \gamma\tau'} - e^{-\gamma'\Delta + \gamma'\tau'} \right). \quad (8.167)$$

In the special case

$$\gamma\Delta \ll 1, \quad \gamma'\Delta \ll 1 \quad (8.168)$$

and thus

$$\gamma\tau' \ll 1, \quad \gamma'\tau' \ll 1. \quad (8.169)$$

Equation (8.167) readily reduces to

$$(8.167) = 1/\gamma. \quad (8.170)$$

Appendix 2 to Chap. 8: Fractal Derivatives

In the following we want to show how to introduce and deal with fractal derivatives at least as they are needed for the extension of the results of Chap. 8 to non-integer positive values of α in (8.17). In the following we will denote non-integers by α and β and we want to define

$$\frac{d^\alpha}{dx^\alpha} f(x) = ? . \quad (8.171)$$

We require that the result of the differentiation coincides with the usual results if α is an integer. Furthermore, we require

$$\frac{d^\alpha}{dx^\alpha} \frac{d^\beta}{dx^\beta} f(x) = \frac{d^{\alpha+\beta}}{dx^{\alpha+\beta}} f(x) . \quad (8.172)$$

A convenient function for our purposes is

$$f(x) = e^{-\gamma x} . \quad (8.173)$$

In accordance with the requirement (8.172), we define

$$\frac{d^\alpha}{dx^\alpha} e^{-\gamma x} = (-\gamma)^\alpha e^{-\gamma x} . \quad (8.174)$$

By means of (8.173), we can construct other functions, e.g.

$$\frac{1}{x} = \int_0^\infty e^{-\gamma x} d\gamma, \quad x > 0 . \quad (8.175)$$

The application of the rule (8.174) transforms (8.175) into

$$\frac{d^\alpha}{dx^\alpha} \frac{1}{x} = \int_0^\infty (-\gamma)^\alpha e^{-\gamma x} d\gamma . \quad (8.176)$$

Introducing the new variable

$$y = -\gamma x , \quad (8.177)$$

(8.176) is transformed into

$$\frac{d^\alpha}{dx^\alpha} \frac{1}{x} = x^{-\alpha-1} \int_{-\infty}^0 y^\alpha e^y dy. \quad (8.178)$$

By partial integration of the integral in (8.178), we obtain for $\alpha > 1$

$$\int_{-\infty}^0 y^\alpha e^y dy = y^\alpha e^y \Big|_{-\infty}^0 - \alpha \int_{-\infty}^0 y^{\alpha-1} e^y dy. \quad (8.179)$$

Introducing the abbreviation

$$\int_{-\infty}^0 y^\alpha e^y dy = \tilde{\Gamma}(\alpha), \quad (8.180)$$

we thus obtain the recursion relation

$$\tilde{\Gamma}(\alpha) = -\alpha \tilde{\Gamma}(\alpha - 1). \quad (8.181)$$

This is strongly reminiscent of the recursion relation for the factorial

$$n! = \int_0^\infty x^n e^{-x} dx, \quad (8.182)$$

where by partial integration we find

$$n! = -x^n e^{-x} \Big|_0^\infty + n \int_0^\infty x^{n-1} e^{-x} dx, \quad (8.183)$$

or, denoting the r.h.s. of (8.182) by $\Gamma(n)$ the relation

$$\Gamma(n) = n\Gamma(n - 1), \quad (8.184)$$

or for noninteger α

$$\Gamma(\alpha) = \alpha\Gamma(\alpha - 1). \quad (8.185)$$

Γ is nothing but the conventional Γ -function. In order to connect (8.181) and (8.185), we put

$$\tilde{\Gamma}(\alpha) = (-1)^\alpha \Gamma(\alpha). \quad (8.186)$$

Using (8.186) in (8.178), we find our final formula for the derivatives of $1/x$

$$\frac{d^\alpha}{dx^\alpha} \frac{1}{x} = (-1)^\alpha \Gamma(\alpha) x^{-\alpha-1}. \quad (8.187)$$

Note that within our formalism (8.187) may become complex because of $(-1)^\alpha$. This is, however, a fully consistent formalism for our present purposes. In this way also derivatives of any negative power of x can be obtained.

Another fractal derivative needed in Chap. 8 is that of the function

$$\frac{1}{x}e^{\lambda x} = \int_{-\infty}^{\lambda} e^{\gamma x} d\gamma, \quad x > 0, \quad (8.188)$$

where the l.h.s. has been expressed by the integral on the r.h.s. Proceeding as before, we obtain

$$\frac{d^\alpha}{dx^\alpha} \left(\frac{1}{x} e^{\lambda x} \right) = \int_{-\infty}^{\lambda} \gamma^\alpha e^{\gamma x} d\gamma, \quad (8.189)$$

and using a new integration variable

$$\frac{d^\alpha}{dx^\alpha} \left(\frac{1}{x} e^{\lambda x} \right) = x^{-\alpha-1} \int_{-\infty}^{\lambda/x} y^\alpha e^y dy. \quad (8.190)$$

The integral of the r.h.s. now obeys the recursion relation

$$Z(\alpha, A) = A^\alpha e^A - \alpha Z(\alpha - 1, A) \quad (8.191)$$

as can be checked by partial integration. We have put

$$A = \lambda/x. \quad (8.192)$$

By use of (8.191), any function Z for arbitrary α can be reduced to an expression that only contains

$$Z(\beta, A), \quad 0 \leq \beta < 1. \quad (8.193)$$

The recursion relation (8.191) can further be simplified by the hypothesis

$$Z(\alpha, A) = e^A G(\alpha, A) \quad (8.194)$$

that transforms (8.191) into

$$G(\alpha, A) = A^\alpha - \alpha G(\alpha - 1, A). \quad (8.195)$$

Exercise. Determine the fractal derivatives of

$$\begin{aligned} &(x - c)^{-n}, \quad n > 0 \quad \text{and an integer,} \\ &(x - c)^{-1} e^{-ax}, \\ &(x - c_1)^{-1} (x - c_2)^{-1} e^{-ax}. \end{aligned}$$

Hints: Write $(d^\alpha/dx^\alpha)(1/x^n)$ as $(d^\alpha/dx^\alpha)(d^{n-1}/dx^{n-1})(1/x)(-1)^{n-1}$. Decompose the product of the fractions into a sum.

9. Pattern Recognition Versus Synchronization: Pattern Recognition

9.1 Introduction

In previous chapters the synchronization between axonal pulses in pulse-coupled neural networks was in the foreground of our study. Pulse synchronization is, indeed, a well-established experimental fact. Occasionally, in Sects. 6.4 and 6.5 we had a look at the capability of such a network to recognize patterns. The network we studied could perform pattern recognition only to some extent, especially it was not able to fully distinguish between patterns. On the other hand, in the past, several computer models of neural networks have been developed aiming at more detailed pattern recognition. The corresponding networks do not use spiking model neurons, but rather concentrate on the concept of attractors. In such a case, the total state of the system at each moment is represented by a state vector in a high-dimensional space that refers to the activities of all neurons. The temporal evolution of the state vector is described by a set of differential equations which describe the time evolution of neuronal activity due to the internal dynamics (which are assumed to be very simple) and their interactions. The dynamics or, in other words, the temporal change of the state vector, can finish in stable fixed points which are a special kind of attractor. If in the state space the state vector comes close to a fixed point, it is attracted into that point, which means that a specific pattern is recognized.

A typical model is that of a spin glass which uses the analogy between a neural net and spin glasses. Such a model has the property of possessing fixed-point attractors. If a pattern to be recognized is similar to the corresponding prototype pattern, the corresponding state vector is close to the fixed point and can be pulled into the attractor. While the whole procedure is quite nice, it suffers from a considerable drawback, namely there are many more attractor states that do not correspond to the really wanted prototype patterns. Thus, sophisticated methods have been developed to bring the system from unwanted fixed points to the really wanted ones. There are other models which avoid this difficulty from the beginning.

Among these attractor networks the synergetic computer is the most prominent one, because it allows a detailed study and, in particular, it avoids all unnecessary unwanted states, called “ghost states.” We will come to this kind of computer as a model of a neural network later in this chapter. The

main task we will undertake in this chapter is to study whether such an *attractor network* can be realized also by a *pulse-coupled network*, bringing such network models much closer to reality. The essential step towards this goal consists in taking the nonlinearity of the saturation of the generation of external pulses into account. We do it in such a way that essential features of saturation are captured and that a minimal nonlinearity turns out to do the job. Basically, we start from a network similar to that in Chap. 8. where, for sake of transparency, we ignore time delays and fluctuations, but take into account a characteristic nonlinearity. Furthermore, we simplify the network architecture. In this chapter, we study the properties of the network as a pattern-recognizing device (or brain model) by showing that the pulse-coupled network can have – in the limit of dense pulses – the properties of an attractor network. We then introduce the concept of quasi-attractors. So far, in attractor models, once the state vector has reached an attractor, the system (the brain) gets stuck there forever. Thus, we have to study a mechanism which drives the system “brain” out of such an attractor, once the recognition task has been performed. The essential mechanism we introduce is that of saturation of attention, which has also some experimental support. In Chap. 10 we study synchronization effects but extend our analysis from synchronization to phase locking. This will allow us to investigate the coexistence, cooperation, or exclusiveness between pattern recognition and synchronization in more detail.

9.2 Basic Equations

We briefly recapitulate the derivation of our fundamental equations which are very similar to those of Sects. 8.2 and 8.3. Our starting point is again the scheme of a neuron as shown in Fig. 9.1.

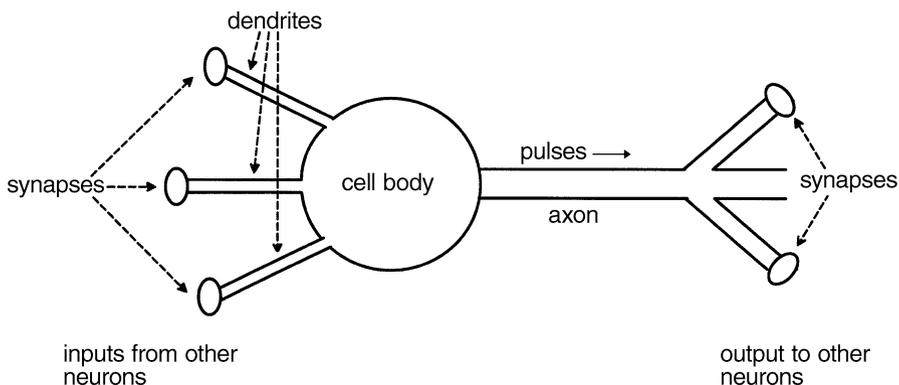


Fig. 9.1. Scheme of a neuron

The neuron receives inputs from other neurons via synapses which cause electric currents in the corresponding dendrites. The dendritic inputs are summed up at the soma (cell body), which then sends out voltage pulses along the axon. The axon splits and makes contact with other neurons again by synapses. We first consider the generation of an electric current ψ_m of the dendrite, labeled by the index m , by means of a pulse P_k stemming from neuron k . Denoting the decay constant of ψ_m by γ and the synaptic strength connecting neuron k with dendrite m by a_{mk} , our basic equation reads [cf. (8.1)]

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma\right)^\alpha \psi_m(t) = \sum_k a_{mk} P_k(t). \quad (9.1)$$

The exponent α may be an integer 1 or 2 or even a fractal in order to agree with experimental results. Again, we choose a specific form of P , namely

$$P(t) = f(\phi(t)) = \dot{\phi} \sum_n \delta(\phi - 2\pi n) \quad (9.2)$$

or, when we introduce time as a basic variable,

$$f(\phi(t)) = \tilde{f}(t) = \sum_n \delta(t - t_n). \quad (9.3)$$

The times t_n are defined by

$$t_n: \quad \phi(t_n) = 2\pi n. \quad (9.4)$$

ϕ can be interpreted as a phase angle. We adopt the equations for the phase angles ϕ_j in the form

$$\dot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma' \phi_j(t) \bmod 2\pi = R_j(\psi_m, p_j), \quad (9.5)$$

which corresponds to (8.6), however with a different right-hand side (r.h.s.). γ' is a damping constant. The prescription $\bmod 2\pi$ means that ϕ is to be reduced by an integer multiple of 2π until ϕ runs in the region between 0 and 2π . Note that $\phi \bmod 2\pi$ can be interpreted as a quantity proportional to the action potential. In the present section we represent R_j as a function of the dendritic currents ψ_m and the external signal p_j acting on neuron j in the form

$$R_j = \sum_m c_{jm} \psi_m + \sum_{ml} d_{jml} \psi_m \psi_l + p_j, \quad (9.6)$$

where, at least in the present frame, c_{jm} and d_{jml} are time-independent constants. We will specify them below in a way in which the second term in (9.6) takes care of saturation. The form of (9.1) allows us to solve it explicitly for the dendritic currents. Writing (9.1) in the form

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma\right)^\alpha \psi(t) = g(t), \quad (9.7)$$

which possesses the Green's function

$$K_\alpha(t - \sigma) = (t - \sigma)^{\alpha-1} e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)}, \tag{9.8}$$

we can write the solution to (9.1) in the general form

$$\psi(t) = \int_0^t K_\alpha(t - \sigma) g(\sigma) d\sigma. \tag{9.9}$$

Using the explicit form of g by means of a comparison between (9.1) and (9.7), we obtain

$$\psi_m = \sum_{j'} a_{mj'} \int_0^t K_\alpha(t - \sigma) P_{j'}(\sigma) d\sigma. \tag{9.10}$$

In the following we drop the index α .

Inserting (9.10) into (9.5) with (9.6) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} R_j &= \sum_m c_{jm} \sum_{j'} a_{mj'} \int_0^t K(t - \sigma) P_{j'}(\sigma) d\sigma \\ &+ \sum_{ml} d_{jml} \sum_{j'} a_{mj'} \int_0^t K(t - \sigma) P_{j'}(\sigma) d\sigma \\ &\times \sum_{j''} a_{lj''} \int_0^t K(t - \sigma) P_{j''}(\sigma) d\sigma + p_j. \end{aligned} \tag{9.11}$$

We rearrange the sums and introduce the following abbreviations:

$$\tilde{\lambda}_{jj'} = \sum_m c_{jm} a_{mj'}, \tag{9.12}$$

$$\tilde{\lambda}_{jj'j''} = \sum_{ml} d_{jml} a_{mj'} a_{lj''}, \tag{9.13}$$

$$X_j(t) = \int_0^t K(t - \sigma) P_j(\sigma) d\sigma. \tag{9.14}$$

This allows us to write our fundamental equations in the form

$$\dot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma' \phi_j(t) \bmod 2\pi = \sum_{j'} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'} X_{j'} + \sum_{j'j''} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'j''} X_{j'} X_{j''} + p_j(t). \tag{9.15}$$

For the purpose of this chapter we assume that the matrix $(\tilde{\lambda}_{jj'})$ can be diagonalized by means of its right-hand and left-hand eigenvectors, \mathbf{v}^k and \mathbf{v}^{k+} , respectively:

$$\tilde{\lambda}_{jj'} = \sum_k \tilde{\lambda}_k v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+}. \tag{9.16}$$

Furthermore we assume a specific form of $\tilde{\lambda}_{jj'j''}$:

$$\tilde{\lambda}_{jj'j''} = \sum_k v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+} \left(-\tilde{B} \sum_{k'} v_{j''}^{k'+} + \tilde{C} v_{j''}^{k+} \right), \tag{9.17}$$

where \tilde{B} and \tilde{C} are constants.

The meaning of this specific form will become clearer below. Before we proceed, we must include a section on pattern recognition.

9.3 A Reminder of Pattern Recognition by the Synergetic Computer and an Alternative Approach

The basic idea of this computer (Haken, 1990) is as follows. In it a number of prototype vectors \mathbf{v}^k belonging to prototypes with labels $k, k = 1, \dots, M$, are stored. Then we devise dynamics in which an incomplete test pattern vector \mathbf{q} is transformed into one of the stored prototype vectors $\mathbf{v}^{k'}$ to which it had been most similar:

$$\mathbf{q} \equiv \mathbf{q}(0) \rightarrow \mathbf{q}(t) \rightarrow \mathbf{v}^{k'}. \tag{9.18}$$

The dynamics are described by equations of the form

$$\dot{q}_j = \sum_k \lambda_{jk} q_k + \sum_{klm} \lambda_{jklm} q_k q_l q_m, \tag{9.19}$$

where $q_j, j = 1, \dots, N$, is a component of the vector \mathbf{q} , and λ_{jk} and λ_{jklm} are constants that are in a more or less intricate way connected with synaptic strengths and can be explicitly constructed from the vectors \mathbf{v}_u . When the vector \mathbf{q} is decomposed into the prototype vectors according to

$$\mathbf{q}(t) = \sum_k \xi_k(t) \mathbf{v}^k, \tag{9.20}$$

the dynamics of q can be transformed into that of the so-called order parameters ξ_k . These equations are of the form

$$\dot{\xi}_k = \xi_k \left(\lambda_k + a \xi_k^2 - b \sum_{k'} \xi_{k'}^2 \right), \quad k = 1, \dots, M. \tag{9.21}$$

Note that a and b are universal constants and λ_k are constants that in a psychological context have been interpreted as attention parameters. The initial values to (9.21) are given by the projection of the adjoint vectors \mathbf{v}_k^+ on $\mathbf{q}(0)$:

$$\xi_k(0) = (\mathbf{v}^{k+} \mathbf{q}(0)). \tag{9.22}$$

Lack of space does not allow us to enter into more detail here (for details see Haken, 1990). It is important to know that (9.21) possesses a set of

well-defined stable fixed points, each one corresponding to one of the stored prototype patterns. In this way a unique and clear-cut recognition of patterns is possible, i.e. by pulling a test pattern vector that lies outside the stable fixed points into a definite one of the attracting fixed points.

The basic equations for pattern recognition by the synergetic computer can be interpreted as follows. The temporal change of neuron j , as given by the left-hand side (l.h.s.) of (9.19) and (9.21), is determined by the following processes. The first sum on the r.h.s. of (9.19) describes the action of another neuron j' on neuron j or of neuron j' on itself, whereas the second term requires the cooperation of *three* neurons to change the state of neuron j . We may ask, however, whether there are simpler network connections where, e.g. the interaction of *two* neurons suffices to change the state of the third neuron, j . In other words, we are looking for a network of the form of (9.30). The answer to this question is actually one of the main objectives of this section. In order to prepare our further steps we therefore study whether pattern recognition by such a simpler scheme is possible. As before we introduce the pattern vector \mathbf{q} by means of its components

$$\mathbf{q} = (q_1, \dots, q_N) \quad (9.23)$$

and the prototype pattern vectors, which may be less numerous than the dimension of the pattern vector, \mathbf{q} ,

$$\mathbf{v}^k = (v_1^k, \dots, v_N^k), \quad k = 1, \dots, L, \quad L \leq N. \quad (9.24)$$

We introduce the adjoint vectors \mathbf{v}^{l+} and require that they are orthonormal to the prototype pattern vectors, i.e.

$$(\mathbf{v}^{l+} \mathbf{v}^k) = \delta_{lk}. \quad (9.25)$$

The basic equations of the pattern vector that we propose read

$$\dot{\mathbf{q}} = \sum_k \mathbf{v}^k (\mathbf{v}^{k+} \mathbf{q}) \left[\lambda_k - B \sum_{k'} (\mathbf{v}^{k'+} \mathbf{q}) + C (\mathbf{v}^{k+} \mathbf{q}) \right], \quad (9.26)$$

where

$$\lambda_k \quad (9.27)$$

are the attention parameters.

When we decompose the pattern vector \mathbf{q} into its components according to (9.23), (9.26) may be cast into the form

$$\dot{q}_j = \sum_k v_j^k \left(\sum_{j'} v_{j'}^{k+} q_{j'} \right) [\dots]_k, \quad (9.28)$$

where

$$[\dots]_k = \lambda_k - B \sum_{k'j''} v_{j''}^{k'+} q_{j''} + C \sum_{j''} v_{j''}^{k+} q_{j''}. \quad (9.29)$$

In order to make contact with later results in this chapter we cast (9.28) with (9.29) into the form

$$\dot{q}_j = \sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'} q_{j'} + \sum_{j'j''} \lambda_{jj'j''} q_{j'} q_{j''}, \quad (9.30)$$

where we use the abbreviations

$$\lambda_{jj'} = \sum_k \lambda_k v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+} \quad (9.31)$$

and

$$\lambda_{jj'j''} = \sum_k v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+} \left(-B \sum_{k'} v_{j''}^{k'+} + C v_{j''}^{k+} \right). \quad (9.32)$$

In order to illuminate the meaning of the individual terms in (9.27) or (9.28) we write (9.28) in a somewhat different way, namely

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{q}_j = & \sum_{j'} q_{j'} \left(\sum_k v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+} \right) \left(\lambda_k - B \sum_{k'j''} v_{j''}^{k'+} q_{j''} \right) \\ & + C \sum_{j'j''} q_{j'} q_{j''} \left(\sum_k v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+} v_{j''}^{k+} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (9.33)$$

If \mathbf{v}^k and \mathbf{v}^{k+} form a complete set, we have

$$\sum_k v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+} = \delta_{jj'}. \quad (9.34)$$

If we require in addition

$$\lambda_k = \lambda, \quad (9.35)$$

we obtain

$$\lambda_{jj'} = \lambda \delta_{jj'}. \quad (9.36)$$

This allows us to cast (9.33) into the form

$$\dot{q}_j = q_j \left(\underbrace{\lambda - B \sum_{k'j''} v_{j''}^{k'+} q_{j''}}_{\text{saturation}} \right) + \underbrace{\sum_{j'j''} q_{j'} q_{j''} \lambda_{jj'j''}^{(1)}}_{\substack{\text{cooperation of 2 neurons} \\ \text{changes activity of third}}}, \quad (9.37)$$

where the first term on the r.h.s. represents a self-enhancement ($\lambda > 0$) of neuron j as well as a *saturation* of the activity of that neuron, however not by its activity alone but also caused by the activity of *all* neurons. The last term is decisive when the system should come to an equilibrium attractor state, i.e. a stable fixed point. It requires the cooperation of two neurons, j' , j'' , to change the activity of the third one, j , on the l.h.s. of (9.37).

The collective properties of the network we just constructed become evident when we introduce the order parameters ξ_k by means of the decomposition of the pattern vector \mathbf{q} into superposition of the individual prototype pattern vectors according to

$$\mathbf{q} = \sum_k \xi_k(t) \mathbf{v}^k. \quad (9.38)$$

If the prototype patterns do not span the whole space, there should be a residual term in (9.38), which, however, in the course of the recognition process vanishes as a simple analysis shows. Because of the property (9.25), the order parameters ξ_k are determined by the pattern vector \mathbf{q} by means of

$$\xi_k = (\mathbf{v}^{k+} \mathbf{q}). \quad (9.39)$$

Inserting (9.38) into (9.26) and projecting both sides on the vectors \mathbf{v}^k , we obtain the basic order parameter equations

$$\dot{\xi}_k = \xi_k \left(\lambda_k - B \sum_{k'} \xi_{k'} + C \xi_k \right). \quad (9.40)$$

9.4 Properties of the Synergetic Computer of Type II

Equations (9.40) are the basic equations for the “synergetic computer of type II” (or brain model). In this section we want to study the essential properties of this type of computer. While in the case of the original synergetic computer the r.h.s. of the corresponding equation could be derived from a potential function, this is no longer the case here. Thus, we must study the properties of these equations in a somewhat different manner.

The behavior of the solutions of the order parameter equations (9.40) can best be interpreted by identifying the order parameters as the coordinates of a particle in N -dimensional space. We therefore adopt a somewhat different notation and study the solutions of the equations

$$\dot{x}_j = x_j(\lambda - D + Cx_j), \quad j = 1, 2, \dots, N, \quad (9.41)$$

where

$$D = \sum_{k=1}^N x_k. \quad (9.42)$$

Without restriction of generality, in (9.40) we have assumed $B = 1$, which can be achieved by a rescaling $\xi_k \rightarrow x_k/B$, $C \rightarrow CB$. In the following we assume that x_j is nonnegative for all j s. We assume $\lambda > 0$. Our main task will be to find the fixed points that are determined by

$$\dot{x}_j^0 = 0. \quad (9.43)$$

Because according to (9.41) the r.h.s. of that equation must vanish, we obtain the solutions

$$x_j^0 = 0 \tag{9.44}$$

or

$$(\lambda - D + Cx_j^0) = 0. \tag{9.45}$$

We consider (9.45) for

$$j = 1, 2, \dots, M, \quad 1 \leq M \leq N, \tag{9.46}$$

where M is still arbitrary within the limits indicated. Equally well, any selection of the indices

$$j_l, \quad l = 1, 2, \dots, M, \quad j_l \neq j_k \text{ for } l \neq k \tag{9.47}$$

can be used instead of the selection (9.46). For our analysis it will be sufficient to treat the explicit example (9.46). If (9.45) applies, we find

$$x_j^0 = \frac{1}{C}(D^0 - \lambda), \tag{9.48}$$

from which we conclude that x_j^0 is independent of j . This is also the case for

$$D^0 = \sum_{k=1}^M x_k^0. \tag{9.49}$$

For

$$j = M + 1, \dots, N \tag{9.50}$$

and

$$M < N \tag{9.51}$$

(9.44) holds. Inserting (9.48) into (9.49) yields

$$D^0 = (M/C)(D^0 - \lambda), \tag{9.52}$$

which can be immediately resolved to give

$$D^0 = \lambda(1 - C/M)^{-1}. \tag{9.53}$$

Because D^0 must not become negative, we have the condition $C < M$ for all M , i.e.

$$C < 1. \tag{9.54}$$

By inserting (9.53) into (9.54), we obtain

$$x_j^0 = \lambda(M - C)^{-1} \equiv g > 0, \tag{9.55}$$

where we introduce the abbreviation denoted by g . In order to study the stability properties of a fixed point we make the usual stability analysis by means of the hypothesis

$$x_j(t) = x_j^0 + \eta_j(t), \quad j = 1, 2, \dots, N. \tag{9.56}$$

Inserting (9.56) into (9.41) yields

$$\dot{\eta}_j = (g + \eta_j) \left(\lambda - D^0 - \sum_{k=1}^N \eta_k + Cx_j^0 + C\eta_j \right), \tag{9.57}$$

because of (9.45) with (9.55), for

$$j = 1, \dots, M. \tag{9.58}$$

The linear terms of (9.57) read

$$\dot{\eta}_j = g \left(- \sum_{k=1}^N \eta_k + C\eta_j \right). \tag{9.59}$$

In the case of

$$j = M + 1, \dots, N \tag{9.60}$$

the linear terms of (9.57) read, because of (9.44),

$$\dot{\eta}_j = \eta_j(\lambda - D^0). \tag{9.61}$$

Because of D^0 (9.53), (9.61) can be cast into the form

$$\dot{\eta}_j = -\eta_j \frac{\lambda C}{M - C}, \tag{9.62}$$

from which it is evident that because of (9.54) its asymptotic solution behaves as

$$\eta_j(t) \rightarrow 0 \text{ for } t \rightarrow \infty. \tag{9.63}$$

Therefore, it will be sufficient to replace the sum in (9.59) according to

$$\sum_{k=1}^N \rightarrow \sum_{k=1}^M. \tag{9.64}$$

To solve (9.59) in the case (9.58) we make the hypothesis

$$\eta_j(t) = \exp(Cgt)\varepsilon_j(t). \tag{9.65}$$

By the transformation (9.65) the last term in (9.59) is eliminated. To solve the remaining equations for ε_j we make the hypothesis

$$\varepsilon_j(t) = \exp(At)\varepsilon_j(0). \tag{9.66}$$

The resulting homogeneous algebraic equations require as a solubility condition that

$$\det = \begin{vmatrix} A + g & g & \dots & g \\ g & A + g & \dots & g \\ \vdots & & & \\ g & g & \dots & A + g \end{vmatrix} \quad (9.67)$$

vanishes. This determinant can be easily evaluated. We add the second till the M th columns to the first column and then subtract the first row from the second row, from the third row, etc. We obtain a determinant whose elements underneath the main diagonal vanish, so the determinant can immediately be evaluated to yield

$$\det = (A + Mg)A^{M-1} = 0. \quad (9.68)$$

The eigenvalues are then determined by

$$A = -Mg \text{ for } M = 1, \text{ or } A = -Mg \text{ and } A = 0, \text{ if } M \geq 2. \quad (9.69)$$

Because of (9.65) the total exponent of $\eta_j(t)$ reads

$$A' = A + Cg, \quad (9.70)$$

which determines the stability behavior. We distinguish

1. $M = 1$, where

$$A' = (C - M)g < 0 \quad (9.71)$$

holds, which indicates that we are dealing with a stable fixed point. The corresponding eigenvector $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_N)$ reads $\mathbf{x} = (0, 0, g, 0, \dots)$, with only one nonvanishing component.

2. $M \geq 2$. In this case we obtain

$$A' = (-M + C)g < 0 \text{ stable direction} \quad (9.72)$$

but at the same time

$$A' = Cg > 0 \text{ unstable direction.} \quad (9.73)$$

This fixed point is a saddle point or in other words an unstable fixed point.

We finally study the stability of the origin

$$x_j^0 = 0 \text{ for } j = 1, \dots, N. \quad (9.74)$$

From (9.57) we obtain

$$\dot{\eta}_j = \eta_j \lambda, \quad (9.75)$$

i.e. the origin is unstable. We consider a pattern as recognized if the system reaches a stable fixed point. Thus, we still have to deal with the question of

how a stable fixed point is reached. To this end we start with an initial state of a pattern vector with components x_j where we assume that all components are nonnegative. From (9.41) we deduce that once x_j is nonnegative, it will remain so forever. This allows us to make contact with the equations of the original synergetic computer by the transformation

$$x_j = \xi_j^2. \quad (9.76)$$

Inserting this hypothesis into (9.41) and assuming $\xi_j \neq 0$, we find

$$\dot{\xi}_j = \frac{1}{2}\xi_j \left(\lambda - \sum_{k=1}^N \xi_k^2 + C\xi_j^2 \right), \quad (9.77)$$

which is the equation of the original synergetic computer. As was shown by detailed analysis of those computer equations, ξ_j remains positive (zero) whenever it is positive (zero) in the beginning. Because of (9.76) this establishes a one-to-one correspondence between ξ and x , i.e.

$$\xi_j \geq 0 \leftrightarrow x_j \geq 0. \quad (9.78)$$

The fixed points remain the same. Our analysis shows that the synergetic computer of type II has the same recognition properties as those of the original synergetic computer. However, as we shall see below, the neural network that realizes this computer is simpler because of its connectivities.

While (9.41), in contrast to (9.77), cannot be derived from a potential function, (9.41) is nevertheless close to such a formalism. Namely (9.41) can be written as

$$\dot{x}_j = x_j(-\partial V/\partial x_j), \quad (9.79)$$

where

$$V = -\lambda \sum_{j=1}^N x_j + \frac{1}{2} \left(\sum_{j=1}^N x_j \right)^2 - \frac{C}{2} \sum_{j=1}^N x_j^2. \quad (9.80)$$

Exercise. Illustrate the functioning of the synergetic computer of type II by means of the following examples:

Example 1: Choose the prototype patterns as

$$v_j^k = \delta_{kj} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } k = j \\ 0 & \text{for } k \neq j \end{cases}.$$

Example 2: While in Example 1 we treated the extreme case of completely localized prototype patterns, we now consider the other extreme case, namely that the patterns are distributed over the whole grid. For simplicity we choose a one-dimensional example. Probably the simplest patterns that spread all over the grid are of the form of sine or cosine functions. Let the grid be of length L and let it be divided into pixels that we enumerate by $k = 0, \dots, L-1$.

In order to facilitate the notation we introduce the wave numbers by means of

$$\hat{k} = 2\pi k/L, \quad k = 0, \dots, L - 1.$$

Since the patterns must have components that are nonnegative, we add to the cosine function unity 1

$$v_j^k = \cos \hat{k}j + 1 \geq 0, \quad k \geq 1 \text{ and choose } v_j^0 = 1.$$

Determine the components of the adjoint vectors v_j^{k+} for $k \geq 1$ and $k = 0$, show that they obey the relations $\sum_{k=0}^{L-1} v_j^k v_j^{k+} = \delta_{jj'} - 1/L \approx \delta_{jj'}$ and $\sum_{k=0}^{L-1} v_j^{k+} = 1/L$, and determine the equations for \dot{q}_j .

9.5 Limit of Dense Pulses

After this interlude on pattern recognition, we return to our main goal, namely to show how the equations of the synergetic computer of type II can be related to (9.15)–(9.17) of a pulse-coupled neural net. To this end we consider the limit of dense pulses and make the following steps. We ignore the damping on the l.h.s. of (9.15). (Actually, below the damping can be incorporated in λ_{jl} !) We average both sides of (9.15), i.e. we form

$$\frac{1}{2T} \int_{t-T}^{t+T} \dots dt.$$

On the l.h.s. of (9.15) this yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2T}(\phi_j(t+T) - \phi_j(t-T)) &= \frac{1}{2T} 2\pi \cdot \text{number of rotations (spikes)} \\ &= \omega_j(t). \end{aligned} \tag{9.81}$$

We then differentiate both sides of (9.15) with respect to time so that the l.h.s. reads

$$\text{l.h.s. (9.15)} = \frac{d\omega_j}{dt}. \tag{9.82}$$

Let us now consider the r.h.s. of (9.15). In the limit of dense pulses (Fig. 9.2) the integral in (9.14) can be split into a product of the number of pulses per unit time, $\omega_j/(2\pi)$, and a constant. For details see the Appendix to this chapter. There we adopt a procedure that is well known from the derivation of the Fokker–Planck equation for a smooth distribution function from the Langevin equation based on a Wiener process. We take the limit of a small enough time interval T , that nevertheless contains a sufficiently large number of pulses.

We then repeat the same steps we performed on the l.h.s., i.e. smoothing and differentiation. Thus we arrive at

$$\text{r.h.s. (9.15)} \equiv \sum_{j'} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'} \dot{X}_{j'} + \sum_{j'j''} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'j''} \left(\dot{X}_{j'} X_{j''} + X_{j'} \dot{X}_{j''} \right) + \Delta p_j, \quad (9.83)$$

up to higher order terms in T .

Δp_j will be evaluated below.

As shown in the Appendix to this chapter, in the dense pulse limit we may put

$$X_j = \tilde{K} \omega_j \equiv \tilde{K} q_j, \quad (9.84)$$

where

$$\tilde{K} = \frac{1}{2\pi\gamma} (1 - e^{-\gamma t}), \quad (9.85)$$

and

$$\dot{X}_j = \bar{K} \omega_j \equiv \bar{K} q_j, \quad (9.86)$$

where

$$\bar{K} = \frac{1}{2\pi} e^{-\gamma t}. \quad (9.87)$$

In (9.84) and (9.86) we replaced the pulse rate ω_j by the variable q_j that we used in the sections on pattern recognition above. Using this notation, the equations corresponding to (9.81) and based on (9.15), (9.84) and (9.86) read

$$\dot{q}_j = \sum_{j'} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'} \bar{K} q_{j'} + \sum_{j'j''} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'j''} 2\bar{K} \tilde{K} q_{j'} q_{j''} + \Delta p_j. \quad (9.88)$$

We may make final contact with our previous equation (9.30)–(9.32) by a suitable identification of constants:

$$\lambda_{jj'} = \bar{K} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'}, \quad (9.89)$$

$$\lambda_{jj'j''} = 2\bar{K} \tilde{K} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'j''}, \quad (9.90)$$

$$\lambda_k = \bar{K} \tilde{\lambda}_k, \quad (9.91)$$

$$B = 2\bar{K} \tilde{K} \tilde{B}, \quad (9.92)$$

$$C = 2\bar{K} \tilde{K} \tilde{C}. \quad (9.93)$$

In order to bring out the time dependence of the coefficients explicitly, we write the resulting equations in the form

$$\dot{q}_j = e^{-\gamma t} \sum_{j'} \hat{\lambda}_{jj'} q_{j'} + e^{-\gamma t} (1 - e^{-\gamma t}) \sum_{j'j''} \hat{\lambda}_{jj'j''} q_{j'} q_{j''} + \Delta p_j. \quad (9.94)$$

In (9.94), time runs from the onset of the signal change, Δp_j , till infinity (or a new signal change).

We still have to consider the last term in (9.88) that stems from the external signals. We assume that the external signals are suddenly switched on, so we introduce the Heaviside function H and write

$$p_j(t) = \bar{p}_j H(t - t_0). \tag{9.95}$$

In the limit of sufficiently small T we may transform the last term in (9.88) into the δ -function by means of

$$\frac{1}{2T} (p_j(t + T) - p_j(t - T)) = \bar{p}_j \delta(t - t_0). \tag{9.96}$$

Let us return to the pattern recognition by the synergetic computers of types I and II. In both cases we had to solve *homogenous* equations under given initial conditions. In the present case, because of (9.95), (9.88) and (9.94) are inhomogeneous. Both approaches are, however, equivalent. For $t \neq t_0$, $\Delta p_j(t)$ vanishes, so the equations are homogeneous in accordance with the equations of the synergetic computer.

Around $t = t_0$, we may integrate both sides of (9.88) to obtain, in the limit $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$,

$$\int_{t_0-\varepsilon}^{t_0+\varepsilon} \dot{q}(\tau) d\tau = 0(\varepsilon) + \int_{t_0-\varepsilon}^{t_0+\varepsilon} \bar{p}_j \delta(t - t_0)(\tau) d\tau, \tag{9.97}$$

where $0(\varepsilon)$ stems from the homogeneous r.h.s. of (9.88) and vanishes for $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$. With the initial condition $q(t_0) = 0$ for $t_0 < 0$ we obtain from (9.96) using the property of the δ -function

$$q(t_0 + \varepsilon) = \bar{p}_j. \tag{9.98}$$

Thus, the inhomogeneity fixes the initial condition.

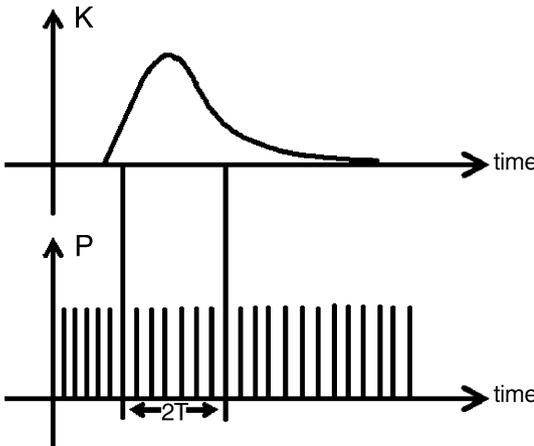


Fig. 9.2. Illustration of dense pulses and the evaluation of the integrals occurring in (9.14), (9.83)

Let us summarize. We have shown that (9.15) with (9.16) and (9.17) may lead to equations for pulse rates, $\omega_j \equiv q_j$, that can perform pattern recognition. This result was obtained in the limit of dense pulses. We may assume, however, that in a real brain, pattern recognition is possible also if the dense pulse limit is not taken. In fact we are always dealing with ensembles of neurons that, in a way, average over pulses. (This is not the case if phase locking occurs, however.) When following up the individual steps of our analysis, leading from (9.15)–(9.17) to the order parameter equations for pattern recognition (9.41) we observe that the nonlinear term containing \tilde{C} is essential for obtaining a stable fixed point. This requires a specific network configuration.

At the end of this section we discuss, whether or in which way the time dependence of the coefficients in (9.94) changes the pattern recognition process compared with the one studied in Sect. 9.4. For this purpose we use a formal trick. We transform time t into a new time t' by means of

$$t' = \frac{1}{\gamma}(1 - e^{-\gamma t}) . \tag{9.99}$$

When t runs from 0 to ∞ , t' runs from 0 to 1. Under this transformation (9.94) acquires the form

$$\frac{dg_j}{dt'} = \sum_{j'} \hat{\lambda}_{jj'} g_{j'} + \gamma t' \sum_{j' j''} \hat{\lambda}_{jj' j''} g_{j'} g_{j''} , \tag{9.100}$$

with $g_j(t') \equiv q_j(t)$. The coefficients $\hat{\lambda}_{jj'}$ and $\hat{\lambda}_{jj' j''}$ are to be identified with the former ones, $\lambda_{jj'}$ and $\lambda_{jj' j''}$, respectively, and are time-independent. While the first term in (9.100) leads to an amplification of the activity of neuron j , the second term causes a saturation. The effect of this term increases in the course of time.

All in all, it can be shown that pattern recognition can be achieved by the cooperation of these two terms, and a nonvanishing fixed point for the pattern to be recognized is reached.

For more details see the exercises, which are strongly recommended to the reader.

Exercise.

1. Verify that (9.99) transforms (9.94) into (9.100).
2. Transform (9.100) to order parameter equations.
3. Solve (9.100) in the case of one order parameter.
4. This exercise serves as the preparation of the next exercise. It shows how in the case of the *synergetic computer of type II* a typical stable fixed point is reached. For this purpose it is sufficient to treat an example of the discrimination between two patterns represented by $x_1(t), x_2(t)$, where $x_1(t) > x_2(t)$ initially. The corresponding model reads according to Sect. 9.4; the basic equations are (see (9.41))

$$\dot{x}_1 = x_1(\lambda - D + Cx_1) \tag{*}$$

and

$$\dot{x}_2 = x_2(\lambda - D + Cx_2), \quad (**)$$

with $D = x_1 + x_2$, $0 < C < 1$.

We assume $x_2 < x_1$, so in the bracket in (**) in D we may neglect x_2 . Show that for large enough t , i.e. $\lambda t \gg 1$, $x_1(t) \rightarrow \lambda/C'$, where $0 < C' = 1 - C < 1$, $x_2(t) \rightarrow x_2(0) e^{\lambda t(1-1/C')} \rightarrow 0$.

Show more precisely that the exact solutions are

$$x_1(t) = e^{\lambda t} \{C'/\lambda(e^{\lambda t} - 1) + 1/x_1(0)\}^{-1}$$

and

$$x_2(t) = x_2(0) e^{\lambda t} (e^{\lambda t} - 1 + a)^{-1/C'} a^{1/C'},$$

where $a = \lambda/(C'x_1(0))$.

Hint: Use the hypothesis

$$x_j(t) = e^{\lambda t} f_j(t), \quad j = 1, 2$$

and solve the resulting differential equations by separation of variables.

5. As a generalization of Exercise 4, treat the equations

$$\dot{x}_1 = x_1(\lambda - tD + tCx_1) \quad (*)$$

and

$$\dot{x}_2 = x_2(\lambda - tD + tCx_2), \quad (**)$$

with $D = x_1 + x_2$, $0 < C < 1$, $0 \leq t \leq 1$, under the assumption $x_2 < x_1$. Show that for $\lambda t \gg 1$ (but $t \leq 1$), $x_1 \approx \frac{\lambda}{C'}$, $C' = 1 - C$ and $x_2 \approx x_2(0) e^{\lambda t - \lambda/(2C')t^2}$, and that the exact solution for x_1 reads

$$x_1(t) = e^{\lambda t} \{C'(-(e^{\lambda t} - 1)/\lambda^2 + t e^{\lambda t}/\lambda) + 1/x_1(0)\}^{-1}.$$

Note that $x_2(t)/x_1(t)$ decreases with increasing t . This effect is particularly pronounced for $\lambda \gg 1$. The fixed point, defined for $t = 1$, lies close to

$$(x_1, x_2) = (\lambda/C', 0)$$

for large enough λ .

Generalize this result to many x_1, x_2, \dots, x_m .

6. The relation between $x_1(t)$ and $x_2(t)$ can also be directly established. To this end, solve the following problem. Start from (*) and (**) from Exercises 4 and 5 in their truncated form for $x_2 \ll x_1$. Put $x_j(t) = e^{\lambda t} f_j(t)$ and derive a differential equation for $\frac{df_2}{df_1}$. What does its solution look like?

Hint: Treat df/dt as $\Delta f/\Delta t$, Δ : finite but small intervals.

9.6 Pulse Rates Are Positive

There are still several points left that partly deal with the physiological aspects as well as with some mathematical issues and which we want to discuss now. The interpretation of the components v_j^k of the prototype pattern vectors as gray values requires that all components v_j^k are nonnegative. Furthermore, because we interpret $q_j \equiv \omega_j$ as pulse rates these quantities must also be positive. Thus, we have to study whether our network conserves the positive values of q_l provided that they were initially positive. To this end we consider

$$\dot{q}_j = q_j \left(\lambda - \sum_{k'j'} v_{j'}^{k'+} q_{j'} \right) + C \sum_k v_j^k \left(\sum_{j'} v_{j'}^{k'+} q_{j'} \right)^2. \tag{9.101}$$

We assume that initially the components q_j of the test pattern vector are small so that we can neglect the quadratic terms on the r.h.s. of the equation. Then only the linear term proportional to $\lambda > 0$ is essential and it guarantees that q_j increases further into the positive domain. In the bracket of the first term there are, however, negative terms that become important when q_j increases. Thus, generally speaking, we have the following scheme

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{q}_j &= q_j \left(\lambda - \sum_{k'} x_{k'} \right) + C \sum_{k'} v_j^{k'} x_{k'}^2, \\ &> 0 > / < 0 > 0, \end{aligned} \tag{9.102}$$

where

$$x_{k'} = \sum_{j'} v_{j'}^{k'+} q_{j'}.$$

Before q_j enters the negative domain, at least for some q_{j_0} ,

$$q_{j_0} = 0 \tag{9.103}$$

must hold. Thus, (9.102) reduces to

$$\dot{q}_{j_0} = C \sum_k v_{j_0}^k x_k^2, \tag{9.104}$$

which tells us

$$\dot{q}_{j_0} > 0 \text{ if } v_{j_0}^k > 0 \text{ for at least one } k \neq 0. \tag{9.105}$$

Note that

$$v_j^k \geq 0 \text{ for all } k, j.$$

Thus, q_j cannot become negative. Altogether we may state that

$$q_j(t) > 0 \text{ if initially } q_j > 0 \tag{9.106}$$

holds. As we have already seen, (9.102) is closely related to gradient dynamics. Thus, finally one of the fixed points is reached. In our above derivation we assumed that v_j^k form a *complete* set. We now want to demonstrate that the conclusion we just have drawn holds also for the case that v_j^k form an incomplete set for $k = 1, \dots, K$ (or for any other combination of k). To make the set complete we complement the original equation

$$\dot{q}_j = \sum_{k=1}^K \sum_{j'} v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+} q_{j'} \left(\lambda - \sum_{k'=1}^K \sum_{j''} v_{j''}^{k'+} q_{j''} \right) + C \sum_{k=1}^K v_j^k \left(\sum_{j'} v_{j'}^{k+} q_{j'} \right)^2 \quad (9.107)$$

in the first part of its r.h.s. by means of new vector components

$$\hat{v}_j^k, \hat{v}_j^{k+}, \quad k = K+1, \dots, N \quad (9.108)$$

so that we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{q}_j = & \left\{ \sum_{j'} \left(\sum_{k=1}^K v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+} + \sum_{k=K+1}^N \hat{v}_j^k \hat{v}_{j'}^{k+} \right) q_{j'} \right\} \\ & \cdot \left(\lambda - \sum_{j''} \left(\sum_{k'=1}^K v_{j''}^{k'+} + \sum_{k'=K+1}^N \hat{v}_{j''}^{k'+} \right) q_{j''} \right) \\ & + C \sum_{k=1}^K v_j^k \left(\sum_{j'} v_{j'}^{k+} q_{j'} \right)^2. \end{aligned} \quad (9.109)$$

In order to compensate for the additional sums over $k, k' = K+1, \dots, N$, we perform a projection on subspace \tilde{q}_j so that at $t = 0$

$$\sum_j \hat{v}_j^{k+} q_j = 0 \quad \text{for } k = K+1, \dots, N, \quad (9.110)$$

or in short

$$\left(\hat{v}^{k+} \underset{\sim}{q} \right) = 0 \quad \text{for } k = K+1, \dots, N. \quad (9.111)$$

On the r.h.s. of (9.109) we formally replace q by $\underset{\sim}{q}$

$$\underset{\sim}{\dot{q}} = \underset{\sim}{q} - \sum_{k=K+1}^N \hat{v}^k \left(\underset{\sim}{\hat{v}^{k+} \underset{\sim}{q}} \right), \quad (9.112)$$

where one easily verifies that

$$\left(\underset{\sim}{\hat{v}^{k+} \underset{\sim}{\dot{q}}} \right) = \left(\underset{\sim}{\hat{v}^{k+} \underset{\sim}{q}} - \left(\underset{\sim}{\hat{v}^{k+} \underset{\sim}{q}} \right) \right) = 0 \quad (9.113)$$

because of

$$\underset{\sim}{\hat{v}}^{k+} \underset{\sim}{\hat{v}}^{k'} = \delta_{kk'} . \tag{9.114}$$

An inspection of (9.107) furthermore reveals that if q_j is initially in the subspace it stays there (if q is in the subspace, because of (9.113) the only terms on the r.h.s. of (9.107) that can cause a temporal change of q_j are those which contain v with $k \leq K$). This allows us to replace q by \tilde{q} everywhere in (9.107). We may now capitalize on the completeness of the vectors $\underset{\sim}{v}^k$ and $\underset{\sim}{\hat{v}}^k$, i.e.

$$\sum_{k=1}^K v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+} + \sum_{k=K+1}^N \underset{\sim}{\hat{v}}_j^k \underset{\sim}{\hat{v}}_{j'}^{k+} = \delta_{jj'} \tag{9.115}$$

as well as on

$$\sum_{k=K+1}^N \underset{\sim}{\hat{v}}_j^k \underset{\sim}{\hat{v}}_{j'}^{k+} \tilde{q}_{j'} = 0 \tag{9.116}$$

and

$$\sum_{k=K+1}^N \underset{\sim}{\hat{v}}_j^{k+} \tilde{q}_j = 0 . \tag{9.117}$$

Thus, eventually we may cast (9.109) into the form

$$\dot{\tilde{q}}_j = \sum_{j'} \delta_{jj'} \tilde{q}_{j'} \left(\lambda - \sum_{j''} \sum_{k'=1}^K v_{j''}^{k'+} \tilde{q}_{j''} \right) + C \sum_{k=1}^K v_{j'}^k \left(\sum_{j'} v_{j'}^{k+} \tilde{q}_{j'} \right)^2 ,$$

which is equivalent to our previous equation (9.99) because of the properties of the Kronecker delta $\delta_{jj'}$. Our consideration has a remarkable consequence. It shows that the original nonlocal interaction described by the first term proportional to λ on the r.h.s. of (9.107) acts as if the interaction is local provided the time development of q occurs in the specific subspace \tilde{q} . Of course, there are still nonlocal terms in the second part of the bracket under the first sum over j' and in the last term in (9.115).

Exercise. Verify (9.113).

9.7 Chopped Signals. Quasi-Attractors

Starting from a rather realistic pulse-coupled network, in the foregoing sections we derived equations for pulse rates in the high-density limit. The resulting equations form the basis for the synergetic computer of type II

which can be implemented on ordinary serial computers or implemented by special kinds of networks, which we will discuss later. In this approach pattern recognition is formalized as an initial-value problem where the corresponding solutions of the differential equations finish at specific fixed-point attractors that correspond to the stored (or learned) prototype patterns. While this approach is quite feasible with respect to computers, as a brain model it is rather unrealistic for at least two important reasons. First of all, as humans we glance more or less continuously at a given pattern. Thus, even if the pattern is static, our visual system must update it again and again to discover changes or otherwise its constancy. Furthermore we have to deal with chopped signals, e.g. caused by saccadic eye movements. It is known that when we are looking at a face our eyes scan it in a more or less random fashion whereby we are concentrating on areas rich in information such as eyes, mouth and nose. Moreover we want to recognize movements. Also, patterns we are presented with in too short a time to be perceived consciously may nevertheless be perceived subconsciously. An extreme case of rapidly changing patterns is provided to us in the cinema. Internally, signals may be chopped by the saturation of sensory cells or organs or, to mention a theoretical possibility, by transmission bottlenecks. In the following we want to extend our previous equations to take into account these effects.

The second drawback of our previous model refers to the concept of attractors. This would mean that the system “brain” stays in such a state forever, which is surely quite unrealistic. For this reason quite a while ago we introduced the concept of quasi-attractors. These are attractors that vanish after the recognition task or other tasks have been fulfilled. In other words, we have to introduce a mechanism that closes the formerly present attractor. One means to achieve this is the saturation of attention. Such a saturation of attention is encountered in the perception of ambiguous figures. In this case the saturation of attention occurs at a rather slow rate of several seconds as is known from experimental observations. On the other hand, we must also take into account fast saturation effects or a fast closing of attractors in the case of time-varying patterns.

Let us now try to take these effects into account in a mathematical fashion. To this end let us first recall how we took into account the onset of a signal. Quite generally speaking, in this case there was a jump at time t_0 of the components q_j . In principle whenever there is an abrupt change of signals we may observe a similar jump that increases q_j when the signal is increased or that decreases q_j when the signal is decreased or vanishes altogether. Thus, when such changes happen at times t_s we introduce the jump condition

$$\begin{aligned} q_j(t_s + 0) &= q_j(t_s - 0) + \Delta p_j(t_s) \quad \text{if } q_j(t_s - 0) + \Delta p_s(t_s) > 0 \\ &= 0 \quad \text{if } q_j(t_s - 0) + \Delta p_s(t_s) \leq 0 . \end{aligned} \quad (9.118)$$

As we have seen, the variables q_j represent pulse rates that are intrinsically positive. Thus, when the change of q_j is too strongly negative we must avoid this case and require the second line of (9.118). In order to cast the procedure

in a mathematically coherent form we introduce the jump condition (9.118) by means of sums over δ -functions taken at times $t = t_s$, where t_s is the time of pronounced signal change. Thus, we amplify our previous equations (9.26) by a corresponding term so that we find

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{q}_j &= \sum_{k,j'} v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+} q_{j'} \left(\lambda_k(t) - B \sum_{k'j''} v_{j''}^{k'+} q_{j''} \right) \\ &+ C \sum_{kj'j''} v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+} v_{j''}^{k+} q_{j'} q_{j''} \\ &+ \sum_s \Delta p_j(t_s) J(\Delta p_j(t_s) + q_j(t_s - 0)) \delta(t - t_s) . \end{aligned} \tag{9.119}$$

The coefficients of the δ -functions are introduced for the following reason: Δp_j is the size of the signal jump, whereas J is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} J(x) &= 1 \text{ for } x > 0 \\ &= 0 \text{ for } x \leq 0 , \end{aligned} \tag{9.120}$$

so the conditions occurring in (9.118) are observed. (Actually, J is practically identical with the Heaviside function except for the corresponding values at $x = 0$.) The conditions (9.118) as well as their formal implementation in (9.119) are a direct consequence of the dense pulse limit and are not artificially introduced. An important step consists in the introduction of the order parameters by means of

$$x_k = \sum_j v_j^{k+} q_j . \tag{9.121}$$

This allows us to cast the (9.119) into the form

$$\dot{x}_k = x_k \left(\lambda_k - B \sum_{k'} x_{k'} \right) + C x_k^2 + P_k(\mathbf{x}, t) \sum_s \delta(t - t_s) . \tag{9.122}$$

The factor P_k in front of the last sum in (9.122) represents the size of the jumps of the order parameters, where for practical purposes it will be sufficient to use the second line of

$$\begin{aligned} P_k &= \sum_j v_j^{k+} J(\Delta p_j(t) + q_j(t - 0)) \Delta p_j(t_s) \\ &\approx \sum_j v_j^{k+} \Delta p_j(t_s) \end{aligned} \tag{9.123}$$

and to put x_k equal to zero at t_s if $P_k + x_k(t_s - 0) \leq 0$. We now have to consider the time dependence of the attention parameters λ_k .

Let us turn to the mechanism of a quasi-attractor (in the present context). We require that λ_k has the following properties:

1. On a long time scale of seconds the properties of λ_k jointly with (9.119) shall make it possible to model the experimentally found switching of perception of ambiguous figures.
2. When the signal stops, λ_k quickly decays for all k . If a signal persists, λ_k drops to zero once the attractor (quasi-attractor) is reached. After some time interval, the attention λ_k is restored.
3. λ_k must be positive or zero. It can be nonvanishing *only* for those terms in (9.119) that contain *stored* prototype patterns.

To simultaneously fulfill conditions 1 and 2 we write λ_k as a product of a long-time function $\bar{\lambda}_k(t)$ and a short-time function $Z(t)$,

$$\lambda_k(t) = \bar{\lambda}_k(t)Z(t) . \quad (9.124)$$

We require that $\bar{\lambda}_k$ obeys a time-evolution equation that, jointly with the order parameter equations, describes the oscillatory perception of ambiguous figures:

$$\dot{\bar{\lambda}}_k = a - b\bar{\lambda}_k - c \sum_j v_j^{k+} q_j , \quad (9.125)$$

where a , b and c are constants.

Equation (9.125) can be easily transformed into an equation that explicitly depends on order parameters, namely

$$\dot{\bar{\lambda}}_k = a - b\bar{\lambda}_k - cx_k . \quad (9.126)$$

Coupled equations analogous to (9.119) and (9.126) were solved in the case of ambiguous patterns. Their solutions show the experimentally observed oscillations.

We adopt $Z(t)$ in the form

$$Z(t) = \sum_s (-1)^s J(t - t'_s) , \quad (9.127)$$

where we envisage a situation in which λ_k is switched on at times t'_s where s is even and is switched off at times t'_s where s is odd.

9.8 Appendix to Sect. 9.5

We consider the individual terms of $X_j(t)$ that are composed of

$$\int_0^t K(t - \tau) \sum_n \delta(\tau - t_n) d\tau . \quad (9.128)$$

Making use of the properties of the δ -functions transforms (9.128) into

$$\sum_n K(t - t_n) \text{ for } 0 \leq t_n \leq t . \quad (9.129)$$

Our basic approach can be illustrated by means of equidistant times t_n . Introducing the distance D between subsequent times t_n , we write (9.129) in the form

$$\sum_n K(t - nD) \text{ for } 0 \leq nD \leq t. \quad (9.130)$$

Anticipating that for dense pulses n can be treated as a continuous variable, we introduce the new variable σ by means of

$$\sigma = nD; \quad d\sigma = dnD. \quad (9.131)$$

We write (9.130) in the form

$$\sum_n K(t - nD)dn, \quad dn = 1, \text{ for } 0 \leq nD \leq t \quad (9.132)$$

and convert it by means of (9.131) into an integral

$$\int_0^t K(t - \sigma)d\sigma/D. \quad (9.133)$$

By means of the number N of pulses in the interval $2T$ we obtain

$$ND = 2T, \quad 1/D = \frac{N}{2T} = \omega/(2\pi), \quad (9.134)$$

where $\omega/(2\pi)$ is the pulse rate. A slight generalization of our argument shows that we may assume ω as a slowly varying function of time, so eventually we write instead of (9.133)

$$\int_0^t K(t - \sigma)\omega(\sigma)dr = \omega(\bar{t}) \int_0^t K(t - \sigma)d\sigma, \quad (9.135)$$

where on the r.h.s. we made use of the mean value theorem of integral calculus. Provided that ω is a slowly varying function of time t we may assume

$$\bar{t} \approx t. \quad (9.136)$$

We now deal with the r.h.s of (9.83) and introduce the operation Δ by means of

$$\Delta f(t) = \frac{1}{2T}(f(t+T) - f(t-T)). \quad (9.137)$$

According to differential calculus we use the formula

$$\Delta(X_k X_l X_n) = \Delta X_k \cdot X_l X_n + X_k \Delta X_l \cdot X_n + X_k X_l \Delta X_n + h.o. \quad (9.138)$$

where *h.o.* refers to higher order terms in T . Using the explicit form of X_j and (9.135), we find

$$\Delta X_j = \frac{1}{2T} \int_{t-T}^{t+T} K(t-\sigma) d\sigma \cdot \omega_l(\bar{t}) / (2\pi) . \quad (9.139)$$

We introduce the abbreviations

$$\frac{1}{4T\pi} \int_{t-T}^{t+T} K(t-\sigma) d\sigma = \bar{K} , \quad (9.140)$$

and

$$\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^t K(t-\sigma) d\sigma = \hat{K} . \quad (9.141)$$

Using the results (9.138)–(9.141), we obtain our expression for the r.h.s. of the resulting equation that corresponds to (9.83), so in total (9.88) results.

In conclusion we evaluate the integrals occurring in (9.135) and (9.140) explicitly, which depends on the explicit form of the Green's function K .

In the case

$$K = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < \tau \\ e^{-y(t-\tau)} & \text{for } t \geq \tau \end{cases}$$

we obtain

$$\tilde{K} = \frac{1}{2\pi\gamma} (1 - e^{-\gamma t}) \text{ for } \frac{dw}{dt} \ll \gamma w ,$$

and thus

$$\tilde{K} \approx \frac{1}{2\pi\gamma} \text{ for } t \underset{\sim}{\gtrsim} \gamma .$$

Furthermore we obtain

$$\bar{K} = \frac{1}{2\pi} e^{-\gamma t} .$$

10. Pattern Recognition Versus Synchronization: Synchronization and Phase Locking

10.1 The Synchronized State

In this chapter we continue the treatment of our model of Sect. 9.2 where we now study various aspects of synchronization. Our starting point is the set of equations (9.15), which we repeat.

$$\dot{\phi}_j(t) + \gamma' \phi_j(t) \bmod 2\pi = \sum_{j'} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'} X_{j'} + \sum_{j'j''} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'j''} X_{j'} X_{j''} + p_j. \quad (10.1)$$

For convenience we briefly recapitulate the meaning of the individual parts. ϕ_j is the phase of the axonal pulse of neuron j . γ' is a damping constant. Modulo 2π means that ϕ_j must be reduced by integer multiples of 2π until it runs in-between 0 and 2π . The $\tilde{\lambda}$ s on the right-hand side (r.h.s.) are coupling coefficients, whereas X_j is defined by

$$X_j(t) = \int_0^t K(t - \sigma) f(\phi_j(\sigma - \tau)) d\sigma. \quad (10.2)$$

p_j represents the external signals that in the following will be assumed to be independent of j (if not otherwise stated). In (10.2), the dendritic response K is defined by

$$K(t - \sigma) = e^{-\gamma(t - \sigma)} \quad (10.3)$$

for positive $(t - \sigma)$ and is vanishing for negative $(t - \sigma)$. The function f is defined by means of

$$f(\phi(t)) = \sum_n \delta(t - t_n), \quad (10.4)$$

where t_n are the arrival times of pulses. We now specialize (10.1) to the case of phase locking. In this case we assume that the phase angles ϕ_j are independent of j :

$$\phi_j = \phi. \quad (10.5)$$

The times t_n in (10.4) are defined by means of

$$\phi(t_n) = 2\pi n, \quad (10.6)$$

and choosing an appropriate zero of time, we may put

$$t_n = n\Delta, \quad (10.7)$$

where n is an integer. Clearly we also have

$$t_{n+1} - t_n = \Delta. \quad (10.8)$$

In the following we will allow for a small time delay τ ,

$$\tau > 0, \quad (10.9)$$

which will help us to make occasionally the evaluation of integrals over δ -functions unique. In the first step of our analysis we evaluate (10.2) assuming that X is independent of j . Using (10.4) and the properties of the δ -functions, we obtain

$$X(t) = \int_0^t e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} \sum_n \delta(\sigma - \tau - t_n) d\sigma = \sum_{n=0}^N e^{-\gamma(t-n\Delta-\tau)}, \quad (10.10)$$

where for time t , N is fixed by the equation

$$t = N\Delta + d, \text{ where } 0 \leq d < \Delta. \quad (10.11)$$

The evaluation of the geometric series in (10.10) is straightforward and yields

$$(10.10) = e^{-\gamma(t-\tau)} \frac{e^{\gamma\Delta(N+1)} - 1}{e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1}, \quad \tau \rightarrow 0. \quad (10.12)$$

We write (10.12) in the form (with $\tau \rightarrow 0$)

$$X(t) = e^{-\gamma(t \bmod \Delta)} W - \frac{e^{-\gamma t}}{e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1}, \quad W = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-\gamma\Delta}}, \quad (10.13)$$

which allows us to single out the steady state, which is defined by dropping the term, which decays exponentially. In the following we thus will use the expression

$$X(t) = e^{-\gamma(t \bmod \Delta)} \frac{1}{1 - e^{-\gamma\Delta}}. \quad (10.14)$$

Because in the following some of the formulas will become rather involved, occasionally we will treat special cases, e.g.

$$\gamma\Delta \gg 1; \quad X(t) = e^{-\gamma(t \bmod \Delta)}, \quad (10.15)$$

which means that the pulse intervals are rather large. But we will also consider the opposite case in which the pulse intervals are small. After these preliminary steps we may return to the solution of (10.1). In the special case (10.5) and under the assumption that all signals p_j are the same, (10.1) reduces to

$$\dot{\phi}(t) + \gamma' \phi(t) \bmod 2\pi = AX + BX^2 + p, \quad (10.16)$$

where we use the abbreviations

$$\sum_{j'} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'} = A \quad (10.17)$$

and

$$\sum_{j'j''} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'j''} = B. \quad (10.18)$$

Note that implicitly in (10.17) and (10.18) an important assumption enters, namely that the corresponding sums in (10.17) and (10.18) are independent of the index j , which is a requirement for the network connectivities. We shall not dwell on the consequence of this requirement here.

For later purposes we evaluate $\dot{\phi}(t_0)$. Using the result (10.14), we readily find

$$\dot{\phi}(t_0) = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-\gamma\Delta}} A + B \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-\gamma\Delta})^2} + p, \quad t_0 = 0. \quad (10.19)$$

The only free parameter that occurs in (10.13)–(10.15) that still must be determined is the pulse-interval Δ . In order to fix it we choose a time interval

$$t_n \leq t \leq t_{n+1} \quad (10.20)$$

and put

$$\phi(t) = \phi(t_n) + x(t), \quad (10.21)$$

with

$$x(t_n) = 0, \quad \dot{x} \geq 0. \quad (10.22)$$

Having an eye on (10.21), we assume that $x(t)$ obeys an equation of the form

$$\dot{x}(t) + \gamma' x(t) = G(t). \quad (10.23)$$

Its solution can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) \equiv \phi(t) - \phi(t_n) &= \int_{t_n}^t e^{-\gamma'(t-\sigma')} (AX(\sigma') + BX(\sigma')^2) d\sigma' \\ &\quad + \int_{t_n}^t e^{-\gamma'(t-\sigma')} p d\sigma'. \end{aligned} \quad (10.24)$$

Putting the upper time equal to t_{n+1} and using the explicit form of X (10.14), we cast (10.24) into

$$\begin{aligned} 2\pi &= \phi(t_{n+1}) - \phi(t_n) \\ &= \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} e^{-\gamma'(t_{n+1}-\sigma')} \left(Ae^{-\gamma(\sigma'-t_n)} W + Be^{-2\gamma(\sigma'-t_n)} W^2 \right) d\sigma' \\ &\quad + \frac{p}{\gamma'} (1 - e^{-\gamma'\Delta}). \end{aligned} \quad (10.25)$$

The integrals can be easily evaluated.

Thus, we can cast (10.25) using the requirement (10.6) into the form

$$2\pi = A \frac{1}{\gamma - \gamma'} \left(e^{-\gamma'\Delta} - e^{-\gamma\Delta} \right) W + B \frac{1}{2\gamma - \gamma'} \left(e^{-\gamma'\Delta} - e^{-2\gamma\Delta} \right) W^2 + \frac{p}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \right). \quad (10.26)$$

This is an implicit equation for Δ . In order to discuss it we consider two limiting cases, namely:

1. That the pulse interval is small so that

$$\Delta\gamma \ll 1, \quad \Delta\gamma' \ll 1, \text{ (which implies } p \text{ large enough).} \quad (10.27)$$

In this case (10.26) reduces to

$$2\pi = A \frac{1}{\gamma} + B \frac{1}{\gamma^2 \Delta} + p\Delta. \quad (10.28)$$

This is a quadratic equation for Δ . Choosing the positive root and assuming $2\pi\gamma - A$ big enough, we obtain

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{p} (2\pi - A/\gamma) - B/\gamma \cdot \frac{1}{2\pi\gamma - A}. \quad (10.29)$$

Let us discuss the individual terms on the r.h.s. of (10.29). $\frac{2\pi}{p}$ just means that the pulse interval is inversely proportional to the size of the incoming signal, or in other words, that the pulse rate is proportional to the signal size. If there is a positive feedback A , the pulse interval is shortened, otherwise it is lengthened. Furthermore, if there is a nonlinear saturation effect, i.e. $B < 0$, the pulse interval is enlarged by this feedback.

2. Let us now consider the other case, i.e. large pulse intervals so that

$$\gamma\Delta \gg 1, \quad \gamma > \gamma' \quad (10.30)$$

holds. In this case (10.26) is reduced to

$$2\pi = \frac{1}{\gamma} e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \left(A + \frac{B}{2} \right) + \frac{p}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \right) \quad (10.31)$$

or after resolving (10.31) for $e^{-\gamma'\Delta}$, we obtain

$$e^{-\gamma'\Delta} = \left(\frac{A}{\gamma} + \frac{B}{2\gamma} - \frac{p}{\gamma'} \right) \left(2\pi - \frac{p}{\gamma'} \right)^{-1}. \quad (10.32)$$

This limiting case refers to small signals p .

Because of the exponential function, the r.h.s. must be positive. This requires small enough signals, i.e. in particular

$$p < 2\pi \cdot \gamma'. \quad (10.32 \text{ a})$$

In conclusion of this section we want to show how our results can be generalized if not only linear and quadratic terms in X in (10.16) are taken into account but also terms up to arbitrary order. In other words, the first two terms on the r.h.s. of (10.16) are replaced by

$$\sum_{m=1}^{\infty} A_m X^m, \quad (10.33)$$

or using the steady-state value of $X(t)$ (10.14)

$$\sum_{m=1}^{\infty} A_m e^{-m\gamma(t \bmod \Delta)} W^m. \quad (10.34)$$

The integrals corresponding to (10.25) can easily be evaluated so that our final result reads

$$2\pi = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} A_m \frac{1}{m\gamma - \gamma'} \left(e^{-\gamma'\Delta} - e^{-\gamma m\Delta} \right) W^m + \frac{p}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \right). \quad (10.35)$$

The evaluation of this implicit equation for Δ depends especially on the explicit form of the coefficients A_m . A particularly simple case is obtained if

$$\gamma \gg \gamma', \quad \gamma\Delta \gg 1 \quad (10.36)$$

holds so that (10.35) reduces to

$$2\pi = \left(\sum_{m=1}^{\infty} A_m \frac{1}{m\gamma} \right) e^{-\gamma'\Delta} + \frac{p}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \right). \quad (10.37)$$

This equation has the same structure as our former equation (10.31), where

$$A_{tot} \equiv \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} A_m \frac{1}{m} \text{ replaces } A + \frac{B}{2}. \quad (10.38)$$

In order to continue the evaluation of (10.37) or (10.31) we assume

$$\gamma'\Delta \ll 1, \quad (10.39)$$

which in lowest order allows us to cast (10.31) into the form

$$2\pi = \frac{1}{\gamma} A_{tot} + p\Delta, \quad (10.40)$$

or more explicitly we obtain for the pulse interval

$$\Delta = \frac{1}{p} \left(2\pi - \frac{1}{\gamma} A_{tot} \right), \quad (10.41)$$

which decreases for $A_{tot} > 0$ or increases for $A_{tot} < 0$.

Let us finally study in how far we can generalize the limiting case (10.27), but $\gamma \gg \gamma'$, to an appropriate evaluation of (10.35). This becomes possible if

the series (10.33) converges rapidly enough. In this case (10.35) simplifies to

$$2\pi = \frac{1}{\gamma} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} A_m \frac{1}{(\gamma\Delta)^{m-1}} + p\Delta. \quad (10.42)$$

In a number of cases of practical interest, the sum over m can be performed explicitly (see the following exercise).

Exercise. Use $A_m = (-1)^{m+1} a^m$ and show that

$$\sum_{m=1}^{\infty} A_m \frac{1}{(\gamma\Delta)^{m-1}} = \frac{a\gamma\Delta}{\gamma\Delta + a}. \quad (*)$$

Hint: Use

$$\sum_{h=0}^{\infty} x^h = \frac{1}{1-x} \text{ for } |x| < 1.$$

10.2 Stability of the Synchronized State

In the preceding section we saw that it is rather simple to obtain the synchronized state and to determine the pulse intervals. There remains, however, a basic question, namely, Is the mathematically constructed state realizable?, i.e. in particular, Is it stable? Therefore in this section we have to study the stability, which we will do by linear stability analysis. Though the idea is basically simple, the individual steps are slightly complicated, so we proceed in several steps, where we want to take care of the interests of the speedy reader. Thus, we first present the basic stability analysis equations, discuss their solutions and only subsequently we will derive them in detail in the exercises. Linear stability analysis means that we start from the ideal solution $\phi(t)$ and superpose on it small deviations that we call ξ_j . These deviations are of course time-dependent. If they decay in the course of time, the system is stable, otherwise it is unstable. According to these remarks we introduce the decomposition

$$\phi_j(t) = \phi(t) + \xi_j(t), \quad (10.43)$$

which we insert in (10.1), from which we subtract (10.16). In order to write down the r.h.s., Z , of the resulting equation

$$\dot{\xi}_j(t) + \gamma'(\phi(t) + \xi_j(t)) \bmod 2\pi - \phi(t) \bmod 2\pi = Z \quad (10.44)$$

we introduce

$$\hat{X}_k(t) = \int_0^t K(t, \sigma) f(\phi(\sigma') + \xi_k(\sigma')) d\sigma' \quad (10.45)$$

with the variable

$$\sigma' = \sigma - \tau, \quad (10.46)$$

where τ is an infinitesimally small quantity. We further introduce

$$\hat{X}_k(t) - X_k(t) = \int_0^t K(t, \sigma) \{f(\phi(\sigma') + \xi_k(\sigma')) - f(\phi(\sigma'))\} d\sigma. \quad (10.47)$$

With these abbreviations we may write Z in the form

$$Z = \sum_k \tilde{\lambda}_{jk} (\hat{X}_k - X_k) + \sum_{kl} \tilde{\lambda}_{jkl} (\hat{X}_k \hat{X}_l - X_k X_l). \quad (10.48)$$

For further evaluation we put

$$\hat{X}_k = X_k + \varepsilon_k, \quad (10.49)$$

where we assume that ε_k is a small quantity. This allows us to transform (10.48) into

$$Z = \sum_k \tilde{\lambda}_{jk} \varepsilon_k + \sum_{kl} \tilde{\lambda}_{jkl} (X_k \varepsilon_l + X_l \varepsilon_k). \quad (10.50)$$

The next steps should consist in the evaluation of

$$\varepsilon_k(t) = \hat{X}_k - X_k \quad (10.51)$$

and

$$y = (\phi(t) + \xi_j(t)) \bmod 2\pi - \phi(t) \bmod 2\pi, \quad (10.52)$$

both of which occur in (10.44) with (10.50). We postpone this explicit evaluation to the exercises and immediately proceed to the basic equations for ξ_j . It turns out that the differential equations (10.44) can be converted into algebraic equations for ξ_j taken at discrete times t_n which correspond to the spiking times in accordance with the previous section. The algebraic equations are given by

$$\xi_j(t) = I + II + III, \quad t = t_N, \quad (10.53)$$

where the quantities I , II and III are defined as follows. I stems from the damping terms containing γ' and reads

$$I = \hat{\gamma} e^{-\gamma' t} \sum_{n \geq 1}^{N-1} e^{\gamma' t_n} \xi_j(t_n), \quad (10.54)$$

where we use the abbreviation

$$\hat{\gamma} = \gamma' 2\pi \dot{\phi}(t_0)^{-1}. \quad (10.55)$$

Note that $\dot{\phi}$ was calculated in the previous section (see (10.19)). We further introduce the abbreviations

$$\hat{\lambda}_{jk} = \dot{\phi}(t_0)^{-1} \tilde{\lambda}_{jk}; \quad \hat{\lambda}_{jkl} = \dot{\phi}(t_0)^{-1} \tilde{\lambda}_{jkl}, \quad (10.56)$$

which allows us to write II in the form

$$II = \sum_k \hat{\lambda}_{jk} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \xi_k(t_n) \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(\gamma' e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n)} - \gamma e^{-\gamma(t_N - t_n)} \right). \quad (10.57)$$

Furthermore III is given by

$$III = 2 \sum_{kl} \hat{\lambda}_{jkl} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \left\{ e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n)} \left(1 + \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - 2\gamma} \frac{e^{(\gamma' - 2\gamma)\Delta} - 1}{e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta} - 1} \right) - e^{-\gamma(t_N - t_n)} \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - 2\gamma} \frac{e^{(\gamma' - 2\gamma)\Delta} - 1}{e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta} - 1} \right\} W \xi_k(t_n). \quad (10.58)$$

Quite clearly (10.57) stems from terms of (10.1) that are linear in X , whereas (10.58) stems from terms that are bilinear in X . The relation (10.58) refers to the general case where γ , γ' and Δ are still arbitrary. In order to find formulas that are more useful we consider special cases, namely

$$\gamma' \Delta \ll 1, \quad \gamma \Delta \ll 1, \quad (10.59)$$

which corresponds to short spike intervals. In this case III reduces to

$$III = 2 \sum_{kl} \hat{\lambda}_{jkl} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n)} \gamma' - e^{-\gamma(t_N - t_n)} \gamma \right) W \xi_k(t_n). \quad (10.60)$$

The other limiting case of comparatively large spike intervals characterized by

$$\gamma \Delta \gg 1, \quad \gamma > \gamma' \quad (10.61)$$

allows us to reduce (10.58) to the form

$$III = 2 \sum_{kl} \hat{\lambda}_{jkl} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \frac{1}{\gamma' - 2\gamma} \left((\gamma' - \gamma) e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n)} - \gamma e^{-\gamma(t_N - t_n)} \right) \xi_k(t_n) W. \quad (10.62)$$

Equations (10.53) with (10.57) and (10.58) or (10.60) and (10.62) are linear equations in the unknown variables ξ_j taken at discrete times t_n . Leaving aside some more technical questions we may rather simply solve these equations, which we will do in the next section.

Exercise

1. Evaluate $(\phi + \xi) \bmod 2\pi - \phi \bmod 2\pi$ for small ξ .

Hint: Use the relation

$$\phi \bmod 2\pi = \phi - 2\pi \sum_{n \geq 1} H(\phi - 2\pi n),$$

where H is the Heaviside function.

2. Show how

$$\varepsilon_k(t) = \int_0^t K(t, \sigma) \{f(\phi(\sigma')) + \xi_k(\sigma') - f(\phi(\sigma'))\} d\sigma,$$

with

$$\sigma' = \sigma - \tau,$$

can be transformed into

$$\varepsilon_k = \int_0^t K(t, \varsigma) \sum_n \frac{d}{d\varsigma} \delta(\varsigma - t_n - \tau) d\varsigma \xi_k(t_n) \dot{\phi}(t_n)^{-1}.$$

3. Evaluate ε_k of Exercise 2 further and derive stability equations.

Hint: The intermediate result is

$$\varepsilon_k = \sum_n \left(\delta(t - t_n - \tau) - \gamma K(t, t_n + \tau) \xi_k(t_n) \dot{\phi}(t_n)^{-1} \right),$$

where τ is small.

10.3 Stability Analysis Continued: Solution of the Stability Equations

In order to solve the stability equations we make the hypothesis

$$\xi_j(t_n) = \beta^n \xi_j(t_0) \tag{10.63}$$

with a still unknown constant β . Inserting (10.63) into I (10.54), we obtain

$$I = \hat{\gamma} e^{-\gamma' t_N} \sum_{n \geq 1}^{N-1} e^{\gamma' n \Delta} \beta^n \xi_j(t_0), \tag{10.64}$$

which can immediately be evaluated to yield

$$I = \hat{\gamma} \xi_j(t_0) \frac{\beta^N}{e^{\gamma' \Delta} \beta - 1}. \tag{10.65}$$

An additive term has been neglected as will be done similarly in the following formulas. (For a detailed justification, see Sect. 8.6.) Expressions *II* and *III* can be evaluated similarly. We obtain for *II*

$$II = \beta^N \left(\frac{\gamma'}{\gamma' - \gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} - \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma \Delta} - 1} \right) \sum_k \hat{\lambda}_{jk} \xi_k(t_0). \quad (10.66)$$

For the evaluation of *III* it is advisable to distinguish between the limiting cases of short and long pulse intervals. In the case

$$\gamma' \Delta \ll 1, \quad \gamma \Delta \ll 1 \quad (10.67)$$

we obtain

$$III = \beta^N \left(\frac{\gamma'}{\gamma' - \gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} - \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma \Delta} - 1} \right) \frac{2}{\gamma \Delta} \sum_{kl} \hat{\lambda}_{jkl} \xi_k(t_0), \quad (10.68)$$

whereas in the case

$$\gamma \Delta \gg 1, \quad \gamma > \gamma' \quad (10.69)$$

we obtain

$$III = \beta^N \left(\frac{\gamma' - \gamma}{\gamma' - 2\gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} - \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - 2\gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma \Delta} - 1} \right) 2 \sum_{kl} \hat{\lambda}_{jkl} \xi_k(t_0) W. \quad (10.70)$$

In order to illustrate our further procedure we consider the case (10.69). It is convenient to treat the variables ξ_j as components of a vector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$. Inserting (10.64), (10.66) and (10.70) into (10.53) and dividing both sides by β^N , we obtain the following vector equation:

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}(t_0) = \left\{ \hat{\gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} + \left(\frac{\gamma'}{\gamma' - \gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} - \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma \Delta} - 1} \right) \Lambda^{(1)} + \left(\frac{\gamma' - \gamma}{\gamma' - 2\gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} - \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - 2\gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma \Delta} - 1} \right) \Lambda^{(2)} W \right\} \boldsymbol{\xi}(t_0) \quad (10.71)$$

where $\Lambda^{(1)}$ and $\Lambda^{(2)}$ are matrices corresponding to their components $\hat{\lambda}_{jk}$ and $2 \sum_l \hat{\lambda}_{jkl}$, respectively. In order to facilitate our analysis we assume that the matrices $\Lambda^{(1)}$ and $\Lambda^{(2)}$ commute

$$\left[\Lambda^{(1)}, \Lambda^{(2)} \right] = 0 \quad (10.72)$$

so that they can be simultaneously diagonalized. We assume that the eigenvalues are given by

$$\lambda_\mu^{(1)} \text{ and } \lambda_\mu^{(2)}, \quad (10.73)$$

respectively. Choosing the eigenvectors ξ_{\sim} correspondingly, we can reduce (10.71) to

$$1 = \frac{a}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} + \frac{b}{\beta e^{\gamma \Delta} - 1}, \quad (10.74)$$

where we use the abbreviations

$$a = \hat{\gamma} + \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma' - \gamma} \lambda_{\mu}^{(1)} + \frac{\gamma' - \gamma}{\gamma' - 2\gamma} \lambda_{\mu}^{(2)} W, \quad W = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-\gamma \Delta}} \quad (10.75)$$

and

$$b = -\frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma} \lambda_{\mu}^{(1)} - \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - 2\gamma} \lambda_{\mu}^{(2)} W. \quad (10.76)$$

Equation (10.74) can be considered as an eigenvalue equation for β , which is of second order and can rather easily be solved. To get insight into the structure of the eigenvalues we capitalize on the specific form of (10.74), which means that there are specific singularities when one of the numerators vanishes. Note that the following approach works provided the roots $\beta = \beta_1$ and $\beta = \beta_2$ are sufficiently separated. Thus, in lowest order we may put

$$1 = \frac{a}{\beta_1 e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1}, \quad (10.77)$$

with the solution

$$\beta_1 = e^{-\gamma' \Delta} (1 + a). \quad (10.78)$$

Similarly we may put

$$1 = \frac{b}{\beta_2 e^{\gamma \Delta} - 1}, \quad (10.79)$$

with the solution

$$\beta_2 = e^{-\gamma \Delta} (1 + b). \quad (10.80)$$

Making the further assumption

$$\gamma \gg \gamma', \quad (10.81)$$

we can further reduce the expressions for the eigenvalues by means of

$$a = \hat{\gamma} - \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma} \lambda_{\mu}^{(1)} + \frac{1}{2} \lambda_{\mu}^{(2)} \quad (10.82)$$

and

$$b = \lambda_{\mu}^{(1)} + \frac{1}{2} \lambda_{\mu}^{(2)}. \quad (10.83)$$

In order to obtain stability the absolute values of the eigenvalues β_1 and β_2 must be smaller than unity. This is secured if a and b are smaller than 0. The case (10.82) is rather simple, when we focus our attention on the conventional procedure in pattern recognition. In this case the eigenvalues $\lambda^{(1)}$ must

be positive (for pattern amplification), whereas the eigenvalues $\lambda^{(2)}$ must be negative for pattern saturation. If the corresponding eigenvalues $\lambda_\mu^{(1,2)}$ have sufficiently large absolute values, a is surely negative. The case (10.83) is somewhat more intricate because the eigenvalue $\lambda^{(1)}$ is positive. In this case the eigenvalue $\lambda^{(2)}$, which corresponds to the nonlinear term, must be sufficiently negative. The situation is somewhat facilitated, however, by the prefactor $e^{-\gamma\Delta}$ because we are operating under the assumption that $\gamma\Delta \gg 1$, so $\beta_2 < 1$ even if $b > 0$.

In conclusion of this section we consider the case $\gamma\Delta \ll 1$, $\gamma'\Delta \ll 1$, where we may proceed in close analogy to the previous case. We obtain the vector equation

$$\xi(t_0) = \left(\hat{\gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1} + \left(\frac{\gamma'}{\gamma' - \gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1} - \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1} \right) \cdot \left(\Lambda^{(1)} + \frac{1}{\gamma\Delta} \Lambda^{(2)} \right) \right) \xi(t_0). \tag{10.84}$$

Under the assumptions (10.72) and (10.73) we then find

$$1 = \frac{a'}{\beta e^{\gamma'\Delta} - 1} + \frac{b'}{\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1}. \tag{10.85}$$

The parameters a' and b' are given by

$$a' = \hat{\gamma} + \frac{\gamma'}{\gamma' - \gamma} \lambda_\mu \tag{10.86}$$

and

$$b' = \frac{\gamma}{\gamma - \gamma'} \lambda_\mu, \tag{10.87}$$

where

$$\lambda_\mu = \left(\lambda_\mu^{(1)} + \frac{1}{\gamma\Delta} \lambda_\mu^{(2)} \right). \tag{10.88}$$

Again under the assumption that the eigenvalues are sufficiently separated from each other, in lowest approximation the eigenvalues read

$$\beta'_1 = e^{-\gamma'\Delta} (1 + a') \tag{10.89}$$

and

$$\beta'_2 = e^{-\gamma\Delta} (1 + b'). \tag{10.90}$$

For further discussion, we first consider the case $\gamma' > \gamma$.

Then the condition $a' < 0$ requires $\lambda_\mu < 0$, from which follows $b' > 0$, i.e. instability (provided we ignore the exponential factor in (10.89) and (10.90) that is close to unity). In the case $\gamma' = \gamma$ we start from (10.85). There is only one root, namely

$$\beta = e^{-\gamma\Delta} (1 + a' + b') = \hat{\gamma} + \lambda_\mu. \tag{10.91}$$

Provided λ_μ is sufficiently negative, the pulse sequence is stable. Since in pattern recognition $\lambda_\mu^{(2)}$ is negative and $\gamma\Delta \ll 1$ (in the present case), $\lambda_\mu < 0$ can surely be fulfilled. Clearly, from here we may extrapolate that for $\gamma' \approx \gamma$ stability is still possible.

So far, it appears as if the process of pattern recognition is compatible with the formation of pulse trains. There are, however, still the conditions (10.17) and (10.18) to be fulfilled for pulse synchronization. In Sect. 10.6 we study what happens when (10.17) and (10.18) are violated.

10.4 Generalization to More Complicated Dendritic Responses*

The approach to synchronization that we have learned about in the preceding sections has the advantage that it can be generalized to more realistic input functions from the dendrites to the soma. As the reader may remember, we were able to eliminate the dendritic currents so as to obtain equations for the axonic pulses alone. In this elimination process Green's functions of various forms entered depending on the parameter α . As is known from experiments α is a fractal or is a number close to 2. In this latter case one speaks of Rall's α -function (please note that Rall's α corresponds to γ in our case). In the foregoing section we used a specific simple form of K (see (10.3)). In this section we want to show how our previous results can be rather easily extended to a general K by a simple procedure. This is based on the fact that the general Green's function K can be obtained by means of a derivative according to

$$K_{\alpha,\gamma}(t-\sigma) \equiv (t-\sigma)^\alpha e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} = \frac{d^\alpha}{d(-\gamma)^\alpha} K_\gamma(t-\sigma), \quad (10.92)$$

where

$$K_\gamma \equiv K = e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)}. \quad (10.93)$$

In order to bring out the essentials, in the present context it will be sufficient to take α as an integer number. We are first concerned with the determination of the steady synchronized state. In order to prepare our analysis we must generalize a number of the formulas in Sects. 10.1–10.3 to the present case. We start with a generalization of (10.2):

$$\begin{aligned} X_{\alpha,\gamma}(t) &= \int_0^t K_{\alpha,\gamma}(t-\sigma) f(\phi(\sigma-\tau)) d\sigma \\ &= \frac{d^\alpha}{d(-\gamma)^\alpha} \int_0^t K_\gamma(t-\sigma) f(\phi(\sigma-\tau)) d\sigma, \end{aligned} \quad (10.94)$$

where we have gone from the first row to the second row by means of the definition (10.92) and by exchanging the differentiation with the integration because these processes refer to different variables. In short we may write

$$X_{\alpha,\gamma} = \frac{d^\alpha}{d(-\gamma)^\alpha} X_\gamma, \tag{10.95}$$

where

$$X_\gamma \equiv X. \tag{10.96}$$

To illustrate the application of (10.95) we consider a special case, namely $\gamma\Delta \gg 1$, where (cf. (10.15))

$$X_{\alpha,\gamma}(t) = (t \bmod \Delta)^\alpha e^{-\gamma(t \bmod \Delta)}. \tag{10.97}$$

For what follows till (10.108) we treat the general case, however. In our former equation (10.1) we will make the substitution

$$X_j \rightarrow X_{j;\alpha,\gamma}, \tag{10.98}$$

whereas our former equation (10.16) will be replaced by

$$\dot{\phi}(t) + \gamma' \phi(t) \bmod 2\pi = AX_{\alpha,\gamma} + BX_{\alpha,\gamma_1} X_{\alpha,\gamma_2} + p, \tag{10.99}$$

whose r.h.s. can be cast into the form

$$A \frac{d^\alpha}{d(-\gamma_1)^\alpha} X_{\gamma_1} + B \frac{d^{2\alpha}}{d(-\gamma_1)^\alpha d(-\gamma_2)^\alpha} X_{\gamma_1} X_{\gamma_2} + p \tag{10.100}$$

by making use of (10.95). Our former equation (10.25) is now replaced by

$$2\pi = \phi(t_{n+1}) - \phi(t_n) = I + II + III, \tag{10.101}$$

with

$$I = A \frac{d^\alpha}{d(-\gamma_1)^\alpha} \left(\int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} e^{-\gamma'(t_{n+1}-\sigma')} e^{-\gamma_1(\sigma'-t_n)} d\sigma' W_{\gamma_1} \right), \tag{10.102}$$

where $W_\gamma = \frac{1}{1-e^{-\gamma\Delta}}$,

$$II = B \frac{d^{2\alpha}}{d(-\gamma_1)^\alpha d(-\gamma_2)^\alpha} \cdot \left(\int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} e^{-\gamma'(t_{n+1}-\sigma')} e^{-(\gamma_1+\gamma_2)(\sigma'-t_n)} d\sigma' W_{\gamma_1} W_{\gamma_2} \right), \tag{10.103}$$

and

$$III = \frac{p}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \right). \tag{10.104}$$

While *III* remains unchanged, *I* becomes

$$I = A \frac{d^\alpha}{d(-\gamma_1)^\alpha} \left(\frac{1}{\gamma_1 - \gamma'} \left(e^{-\gamma'\Delta} - e^{-\gamma_1\Delta} \right) W_{\gamma_1} \right), \quad \gamma_1 = \gamma. \quad (10.105)$$

To obtain *II* we have to replace

$$\gamma_1 \rightarrow \gamma_1 + \gamma_2 \quad (10.106)$$

in (10.102) so that our result reads

$$II = B \frac{d^{2\alpha}}{d(-\gamma_1)^\alpha d(-\gamma_2)^\alpha} \cdot \left(\frac{1}{\gamma_1 + \gamma_2 - \gamma'} \left(e^{-\gamma'\Delta} - e^{-(\gamma_1 + \gamma_2)\Delta} \right) W_{\gamma_1} W_{\gamma_2} \right), \quad (10.107)$$

where eventually we have to put

$$\gamma_1 = \gamma_2 = \gamma. \quad (10.108)$$

Equation (10.101) with (10.104), (10.105) and (10.107) with (10.108) represents our main intermediate result.

In order to demonstrate how the further evaluation of (10.105) and (10.107) can be done, till the end of this section we consider the special case

$$\gamma\Delta \gg 1, \quad \gamma \gg \gamma'. \quad (10.109)$$

We can write (10.107) in the form

$$II = B \frac{d^{2\alpha}}{d(-\Gamma)^{2\alpha}} \frac{1}{\Gamma} \left(e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \right), \quad \Gamma = 2\gamma. \quad (10.110)$$

In this case (10.101) reads

$$2\pi = A \frac{d^\alpha}{d(-\gamma)^\alpha} \frac{1}{\gamma} e^{-\gamma'\Delta} + B \frac{d^{2\alpha}}{d\Gamma^{2\alpha}} \frac{1}{\Gamma} e^{-\gamma'\Delta} + \frac{p}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \right). \quad (10.111)$$

According to calculus

$$\frac{d^\alpha}{d(-\gamma)^\alpha} \frac{1}{\gamma} = \frac{\alpha!}{\gamma^{\alpha+1}} \text{ if } \alpha \text{ is an integer, otherwise } = \frac{\Gamma(\alpha)}{\gamma^{\alpha+1}}, \quad (10.112)$$

where $\Gamma(\alpha)$ is the Γ -function. Thus, (10.111) can be cast into the form

$$2\pi - \frac{p}{\gamma'} = e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \left(\tilde{A} + \tilde{B} - \frac{p}{\gamma'} \right), \quad (10.113)$$

where we use the abbreviations

$$\tilde{A} = A \frac{\Gamma(\alpha)}{\gamma^{\alpha+1}} \quad (10.114)$$

and

$$\tilde{B} = B \frac{\Gamma(2\alpha)}{(2\gamma)^{2\alpha+1}}. \tag{10.115}$$

The unknown pulse interval Δ is then determined by the equation

$$e^{\gamma'\Delta} = \left(\tilde{A} + \tilde{B} - \frac{p}{\gamma'} \right) \left(2\pi - \frac{p}{\gamma'} \right)^{-1}. \tag{10.116}$$

Note that the parameters in (10.116) must be such that a positive pulse interval Δ occurs.

Finally we want to show how even higher order terms on the r.h.s. of (10.1) can be generalized to the present case, so we consider (cf. (10.33))

$$\sum_{m=1}^{\infty} A_m X_{\alpha, \gamma_1} X_{\alpha, \gamma_2} \dots X_{\alpha, \gamma_m}, \tag{10.117}$$

which in the by now well-known fashion can be also written as

$$(10.117) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} A_m \frac{d^{m\alpha}}{d(-\gamma_1)^\alpha d(-\gamma_2)^\alpha \dots d(-\gamma_m)^\alpha} X_{\gamma_1} X_{\gamma_2} \dots X_{\gamma_m}. \tag{10.118}$$

Proceeding in analogy to our former steps, we may generalize (10.111) to

$$2\pi = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} A_m \frac{d^{m\alpha}}{d(-\gamma_1)^\alpha d(-\gamma_2)^\alpha \dots d(-\gamma_m)^\alpha} \left(\frac{1}{\Gamma_m - \gamma'} \left(e^{-\gamma'\Delta} - e^{-\Gamma_m \Delta} \right) \cdot W_{\gamma_1} \dots W_{\gamma_m} \right) + \frac{p}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \right), \tag{10.119}$$

where

$$\Gamma = \gamma_1 + \gamma_2 + \dots + \gamma_m$$

and we must put $\gamma_1 = \gamma_2 = \dots = \gamma$ after the execution of the differentiation.

The general evaluation of the derivatives in (10.119) may become rather tedious when higher-order terms must be taken into account. The whole approach can be simplified, however, under the assumption

$$\gamma \gg \gamma', \tag{10.120}$$

in which case (10.119) reduces to

$$2\pi = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} A_m \frac{(m\alpha)!}{(m\gamma)^{m\alpha+1}} e^{-\gamma'\Delta} + \frac{p}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \right). \tag{10.121}$$

As a detailed analysis reveals the convergence of the series over m is enhanced by increasing α , otherwise the equation determining Δ has the same form as (10.116), with $\tilde{A} + \tilde{B}$ being replaced by $\sum_m \dots$ in (10.121). We now have to translate the stability analysis that we performed in Sects. 10.2 and 10.3 to the more general case defined by (10.92).

Exercise. Evaluate (10.105) and (10.107) for $\gamma\Delta \ll 1$, $\gamma'\Delta \ll 1$.

10.5 Stability Analysis for the General Case of Dendritic Responses*

Using the same trick as in the foregoing sections, we can easily perform the stability analysis of the general case. To this end in our former equation (10.44) with (10.50) we make the replacement

$$\varepsilon_k \rightarrow \varepsilon_{k,\alpha,\gamma} = \frac{d^2}{d(-\gamma)^\alpha} \varepsilon_{k,\gamma}, \tag{10.122}$$

where we put

$$\varepsilon_{k,\gamma} \equiv \varepsilon_k. \tag{10.123}$$

Obviously, we also have to make the replacement

$$X_k \varepsilon_l \rightarrow X_{k,\alpha,\gamma_1} \varepsilon_{l,\alpha,\gamma_2} \tag{10.124}$$

in our previous formulas. The resulting equation for ξ_j can be easily solved in complete analogy to our previous procedure so that we obtain

$$\xi_j(t_N) = I + II + III. \tag{10.125}$$

In it the contribution I remains unchanged and reads (cf. (10.54))

$$I = \hat{\gamma} e^{-\gamma' t} \sum_{n \geq 1} e^{\gamma' t_n} \xi_j(t_n). \tag{10.126}$$

In the following we use the abbreviation (10.56), i.e. $\hat{\lambda}_{jk} = \dot{\phi}(t_0)^{-1} \tilde{\lambda}_{jk}$, etc.

The expression II is given by

$$II = \sum_k \hat{\lambda}_{jk} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \xi_k(t_n) \frac{d^\alpha}{d(-\gamma)^\alpha} \cdot \left(\frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(\gamma' e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n)} - \gamma e^{-\gamma(t_N - t_n)} \right) \right), \tag{10.127}$$

whereas III is given by

$$III = \sum_{L=2}^{\infty} L \sum_k \sum_{k_1 k_2 \dots k_L} \hat{\lambda}_{jk_1 \dots k_L} \delta_{k_2, k} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \xi_k(t_n) \{ \dots \}. \tag{10.128}$$

Here we treat the general case that the r.h.s. of (10.1) contains nonlinear terms in X up to infinite order. The curly bracket is given by

$$\{ \dots \} = \frac{d^{L\alpha}}{d(-\gamma_0)^\alpha d(-\gamma_1)^\alpha \dots d(-\gamma_{L-1})^\alpha} [\dots]. \tag{10.129}$$

As will be shown in the exercises, the square bracket is given by

$$\left[\left(e^{-\gamma'(t_N-t_n)} - \gamma_0 \frac{e^{-\gamma'(t_N-t_n)} - e^{-\gamma_0(t_N-t_n)}}{1 - e^{(\gamma'-\gamma_0)\Delta}} \right) \cdot \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma_0 - \Gamma_{L-1}} \left(e^{(\gamma' - \Gamma_{L-1} - \gamma_0)\Delta} - 1 \right) \right] W_{\gamma_1} \dots W_{\gamma_{L-1}}, \quad (10.130)$$

where we are using the abbreviation

$$\Gamma_{L-1} = \gamma_1 + \gamma_2 + \dots + \gamma_{L-1}. \quad (10.131)$$

Note that the identifications

$$\gamma_j = \gamma, \quad j = 0, \dots, L-1 \quad (10.132)$$

may be made only after the performance of the differentiations indicated in (10.129). The resulting expressions are, of course, rather complicated, so it is advisable to treat special cases for illustration:

1. The special case

$$\boxed{\alpha = 1, \quad \gamma \gg \gamma', \quad \gamma \Delta \gg 1.} \quad (10.133)$$

In this case *II* reduces to

$$II = \sum_k \hat{\lambda}_{jk} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \xi_k(t_n) \frac{-\gamma'}{(\gamma' - \gamma)^2} e^{-\gamma'(t_N-t_n)}, \quad (10.134)$$

whereas we obtain for *III* the same expression (10.128), but with the curly bracket given by

$$\{\} = (L-1)! \frac{-\gamma'}{(L\gamma - \gamma')^{L+1}} e^{-\gamma'(t_N-t_n)}, \text{ where } 0! = 1. \quad (10.135)$$

As it turns out, *II* and *III* can be covered by the same formula, so eventually our result reads

$$II + III = \sum_k \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \xi_k(t_n) e^{-\gamma'(t_N-t_n)} A_{jk}, \quad (10.136)$$

where we have used the abbreviation

$$A_{jk} = -\gamma' \sum_{L=1}^{\infty} L \sum_{k_1, \dots, k_L} \hat{\lambda}_{jk_1, \dots, k_L} \frac{(L-1)!}{(L\gamma - \gamma')^{L+1}} \delta_{k_L, k}. \quad (10.137)$$

A_{jk} can be conceived as an element of the matrix

$$A = (A_{jk}). \quad (10.138)$$

After all these steps we are able to solve the stability equations by the usual hypothesis

$$\xi(t_n) = \beta^n \xi(0), \quad (10.139)$$

which in the by now well-known fashion leads us to

$$\xi(0) = \left(\hat{\gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} - \gamma' \Lambda \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} \right) \xi(0). \quad (10.140)$$

We assume that the matrix Λ can be diagonalized with eigenvalues λ_μ . This allows us to transform (10.140) into the eigenvalue equation

$$1 = (\hat{\gamma} - \gamma' \lambda_\mu) \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1}, \quad (10.141)$$

which can be solved for the eigenvalue β to yield

$$\beta = e^{-\gamma' \Delta} (1 + \hat{\gamma} - \gamma' \lambda_\mu). \quad (10.142)$$

This is quite an important result. It tells us the following: since

$$\hat{\gamma} \approx \gamma' \Delta, \quad (10.143)$$

the phase-locked state is only stable if $\lambda_\mu > 0$. Furthermore stability requires $\gamma' \neq 0$. This latter result is in accordance with previous numerical simulations of a simplified model in which a global coupling between neurons with the same strength had been assumed.

2. The special case

$$\boxed{\alpha = 1, \quad \gamma \Delta \ll 1, \quad \gamma' \gg \gamma.} \quad (10.144)$$

Provided that $\xi_k(t_n)$ goes rapidly enough to zero with increasing t_n we may make the following simplifications in (10.130)

$$e^{-\gamma_0(t_N - t_0)} \rightarrow 1, \quad (10.145)$$

$$e^{(\gamma' - \gamma_0)\Delta} \rightarrow e^{\gamma' \Delta}, \quad (10.146)$$

$$e^{(\gamma' - \Gamma_{L-1} - \gamma_0)\Delta} \rightarrow e^{\gamma' \Delta} \quad (10.147)$$

and

$$W_{\gamma_j} \rightarrow \frac{1}{\gamma_j \Delta}. \quad (10.148)$$

This allows us to approximate the square bracket in (10.129) and (10.130)

$$[\dots] = \left(e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n)} + \frac{\gamma_0}{\gamma'} \left(e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n)} - 1 \right) \right) \frac{1}{\gamma_1 \gamma_2 \dots \gamma_{L-1}} \frac{1}{\Delta^{L-1}}. \quad (10.149)$$

We perform the differentiation for the case $\alpha = 1$ so that we obtain

$$\frac{d}{d(-\gamma_0)} \frac{\gamma_0}{\gamma'} = -\frac{1}{\gamma'}, \quad \gamma_0 = \gamma, \tag{10.150}$$

and

$$\frac{d}{d(-\gamma_j)} \frac{1}{\gamma_j} = \frac{1}{\gamma_j^2}. \tag{10.151}$$

Again making use of (10.144) and (10.132), we obtain

$$\frac{d^L}{d(-\gamma_0)d(-\gamma_1)\dots d(-\gamma_{L-1})} [\dots] = -\frac{1}{\gamma'} \frac{e^{-\gamma'(t_N-t_n)} - 1}{\gamma^{2(L-1)}} \frac{1}{\Delta^{L-1}} \tag{10.152}$$

so that our final result reads

$$II + III = \sum_k \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \xi_k(t_n) \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'(t_N-t_n)}\right) A'_{jk}, \tag{10.153}$$

with the abbreviation

$$A'_{jk} = \sum_{L=1}^{\infty} L \sum_{k_1, \dots, k_L} \hat{\lambda}_{jk_1, \dots, k_L} \delta_{k_L k} \frac{1}{\gamma'} \cdot \frac{1}{\gamma^{2(L-1)}} \cdot \frac{1}{\Delta^{L-1}}. \tag{10.154}$$

It is now a simple matter to evaluate the r.h.s. of (10.153) by making the hypothesis (10.139). This leads us to the final eigenvalue equation

$$\xi(0) = \left(\hat{\gamma} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} + \left(\frac{1}{\beta - 1} - \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma' \Delta} - 1} \right) A' \right) \xi(0). \tag{10.155}$$

To discuss it further, we assume that the matrix A' can be diagonalized with eigenvalues λ'_μ .

After some elementary steps, the eigenvalue equation can be cast into a form (using $e^{-\gamma' \Delta}(1 + \hat{\gamma}) = 1$) $\beta^2 - \beta(2 + \tilde{\lambda}) + 1 = 0$, $\tilde{\lambda}_\mu = \lambda'_\mu(1 - e^{-\gamma' \Delta})$, which possesses the roots

$$\beta = 1 + \frac{\tilde{\lambda}_\mu}{2} \pm \sqrt{\tilde{\lambda}_\mu + \tilde{\lambda}_\mu^2/4}, \tag{10.156}$$

which show that for $\tilde{\lambda}_\mu \geq 0$ the synchronized state is unstable, whereas for $\tilde{\lambda}_\mu < 0$, at least within a certain range, it is stable.

Readers who are interested in the details of the derivation of *II* and *III* are referred to the exercises.

Exercise. Evaluate the r.h.s. of

$$\int_0^{t_N} e^{-\gamma'(t_N-s)} ds X_{\alpha, \gamma_1}(s) \dots X_{\alpha, \gamma_2}(s) X_{\alpha, \gamma_L}(s)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \cdot \int_0^s K_{\alpha, \gamma}(s - \sigma) \frac{d}{d\sigma} \delta(\sigma - t_n - \tau') d\sigma \\
 &= \frac{d^{\alpha(L+1)}}{d(-\gamma_1)^\alpha \dots d(-\gamma_L)^\alpha d(-\gamma_0)^\alpha} \\
 & \quad \left(\int_0^{t_N} e^{-\gamma'(t_N - s)} ds e^{-(\gamma_1 + \gamma_2 + \dots + \gamma_L)(s \bmod \Delta)} \right. \\
 & \quad \left. (\delta(s - t_n - \tau) - \int_0^s \gamma_0 e^{-\gamma_0(s - \sigma)} \delta(\sigma - t_n - \tau) d\sigma) W_{\gamma_1} \dots W_{\gamma_L} \right), \\
 & \gamma_0 = \gamma.
 \end{aligned}$$

10.6 From Synchronization to Phase Locking

In the Sects. 10.1–10.5 we dealt with synchronization, in which case the phases ϕ_j of the neurons with indices (j) are given by $\phi_j = \phi$. This solution has become possible under the assumption that all external signals are equal and that the coupling coefficients λ obey specific conditions (cf. (10.161), (10.163)). In this section we want to extend our former results to the case in which these conditions are violated, at least to some degree. We will still be concerned with the case in which the frequencies of all axonal pulses are the same (“frequency locking”) but in which phase shifts according to

$$\phi_j(t) = \phi + \delta\phi_j \quad (10.157)$$

or, equivalently,

$$t_{j,n} = t_n + \tau_j \quad (10.158)$$

occur. Our starting point is the equations

$$\dot{\phi}_j + \gamma' \phi_j \bmod 2\pi = \sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'} X_{j'} + \sum_{j'j''} \lambda_{jj'j''} X_{j'} X_{j''} + p_j \equiv R(t), \quad (10.159)$$

where we make the decompositions

$$\lambda_{jj'} = \lambda_{jj'}^0 + \kappa_{jj'} \quad (10.160)$$

with the constraints

$$\sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'}^0 = \lambda^0 \quad (10.161)$$

and

$$\lambda_{jj'j''} = \lambda_{jj'j''}^0 + \kappa_{jj'j''} \quad (10.162)$$

with the constraints

$$\sum_{j'j''} \lambda_{jj'j''}^0 = \lambda_2^0. \tag{10.163}$$

The constraints (10.161) and (10.163) are the ones we had to introduce previously in order to achieve synchronization. We further will use the decomposition

$$p_j = p + \pi_j. \tag{10.164}$$

In the following we will assume that the quantities κ and π are small so that we will be able to use perturbation theory. X_j is given by

$$X_j(t) = \int_0^t K(t, \sigma) \sum_n \delta(\sigma - t_{j,n}) d\sigma \tag{10.165}$$

or because of (10.158) by

$$X_j(t) = \int_0^t K(t, \sigma) \sum_n \delta(\sigma - t_n - \tau_j) d\sigma. \tag{10.166}$$

In complete analogy to our previous procedure in Sect. 10.1 we integrate (10.159) from one pulse to the next and use the usual Green's function formalism. Thus, we obtain

$$\phi_j(t_{j,n+1}) - \phi_j(t_{j,n}) = \int_{t_{j,n}}^{t_{j,n+1}} e^{-\gamma'(t_{j,n+1}-\sigma)} R(\sigma) d\sigma. \tag{10.167}$$

The substitution

$$\sigma \rightarrow \sigma + \tau_j \tag{10.168}$$

transforms (10.167) into

$$\phi_j(t_{j,n+1}) - \phi_j(t_{j,n}) = \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} e^{-\gamma'(t_{n+1}-\sigma)} R(\sigma + \tau_j) d\sigma. \tag{10.169}$$

To proceed further we compare (10.166) with our former expression (10.10). This allows us to write (10.166) as

$$X_j(t) = e^{-\gamma((t-\tau_j) \bmod \Delta)} W \tag{10.170}$$

or equally well

$$X_j(t) = X(t - \tau_j), \tag{10.171}$$

i.e. the index j appears only via τ_j . Because of the modulo function in (10.170) we may use

$$X(t - \tau_j) = X(t + t_n - \tau_j), \tag{10.172}$$

where

$$t_n = n\Delta. \quad (10.173)$$

We further recall that the phase difference between two pulses is just 2π . Using these intermediate steps as well as the explicit form of R , we can transform (10.167) into

$$2\pi = \int_{t_n}^{t_{n+1}} e^{-\gamma'(t_{n+1}-\sigma)} \left\{ \sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'} X(\sigma + \tau_j - \tau_{j'}) + \sum_{j'j''} \lambda_{jj'j''} X(\sigma + \tau_j - \tau_{j'}) X(\sigma + \tau_j - \tau_{j''}) + p_j(\sigma + \tau_j) \right\} d\sigma. \quad (10.174)$$

Finally we introduce the transformation

$$\sigma \rightarrow \sigma + t_n, \quad (10.175)$$

which allows us to cast (10.174) into

$$2\pi = \int_0^{\Delta} e^{-\gamma'(\Delta-\sigma)} \left\{ \sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'} X(\sigma + \tau_j - \tau_{j'}) + \sum_{j'j''} \lambda_{jj'j''} X(\sigma + \tau_j - \tau_{j'}) X(\sigma + \tau_j - \tau_{j''}) + p_j(\sigma + t_n + \tau_j) \right\} d\sigma. \quad (10.176)$$

Already at this moment we can observe that (10.176) are invariant against the simultaneous replacement of τ_j by $\tau_j + \tau$ provided p_j is time-independent, which we will assume from now on. In order to treat (10.176) further, we use the abbreviations

$$\int_0^{\Delta} e^{-\gamma'(\Delta-\sigma)} X(\sigma + \tau_j - \tau_{j'}) d\sigma = G^{(1)}(\Delta, \tau_j - \tau_{j'}), \quad (10.177)$$

$$\int_0^{\Delta} e^{-\gamma(\Delta-\sigma)} X(\sigma + \tau_j - \tau_{j'}) X(\sigma + \tau_j - \tau_{j''}) d\sigma = G^{(2)}(\Delta, \tau_j - \tau_{j'}, \tau_j - \tau_{j''}) \quad (10.178)$$

and

$$\int_0^{\Delta} e^{-\gamma'(\Delta-\sigma)} p_j(\sigma + t_n + \tau_j) d\sigma = P_j(\Delta, t_n + \tau_j). \quad (10.179)$$

Thus, (10.174) eventually acquires the form

$$2\pi = \sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'} G^{(1)}(\Delta, \tau_j - \tau_{j'}) + \sum_{j'j''} \lambda_{jj'j''} G^{(2)}(\Delta, \tau_j - \tau_{j'}, \tau_j - \tau_{j''}) + P_j(\Delta, t_n + \tau_j). \quad (10.180)$$

In order to make contact with our previous results in which the strict synchronization conditions were fulfilled, we introduce the decompositions

$$G^{(1)}(\Delta, \tau_j - \tau_{j'}) = G^{(1)}(\Delta_0, 0) + h_{jj'} \equiv G_0^{(1)} + h_{jj'}, \quad (10.181)$$

$$G^{(2)}(\Delta, \tau_j - \tau_{j'}, \tau_j - \tau_{j''}) = G^{(2)}(\Delta_0, 0) + h_{jj'j''} \equiv G_0^{(2)} + h_{jj'j''} \quad (10.182)$$

and

$$P_j(\Delta, t_n + \tau_j) = p \frac{1}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma' \Delta_0}\right) + \pi_j(\Delta_0, \Delta') \quad (10.183)$$

as well as

$$\Delta = \Delta_0 + \Delta'. \quad (10.184)$$

We assume that in accordance with the results of Sect. 10.1 the equations

$$2\pi = \sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'}^0 G^{(1)}(\Delta_0, 0) + \sum_{j'j''} \lambda_{jj'j''}^0 G^{(2)}(\Delta_0, 0, 0) + p \frac{1}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma' \Delta_0}\right) \quad (10.185)$$

are fulfilled, where Δ_0 plays the same role as Δ in Sect. 10.1. So far our equations are exact. From now on we assume that the quantities h and Δ' are small, but we make no assumptions for $\kappa_{jj'}$ (10.160), (10.162). Inserting (10.181)–(10.183) into (10.180), we arrive at

$$2\pi = \sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'} \left(G_0^{(1)} + h_{jj'}\right) + \sum_{j'j''} \lambda_{jj'j''} \left(G_0^{(2)} + h_{jj'j''}\right) + p \frac{1}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma' \Delta_0}\right) + \pi_j(\Delta_0, \Delta'). \quad (10.186)$$

From this equation we subtract (10.185) and obtain

$$0 = \sum_{j'} \left(\lambda_{jj'} - \lambda_{jj'}^0\right) G_0^{(1)} + \sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'} h_{jj'} \sum_{j'j''} \left(\lambda_{jj'j''} - \lambda_{jj'j''}^0\right) G_0^{(2)} + \sum_{j'j''} \lambda_{jj'j''} h_{jj'j''} \pi_j(\Delta_0, \Delta'). \quad (10.187)$$

In order to make the smallness assumptions explicit, we put

$$h_{jj'} = a(\tau_j - \tau_{j'}) + b\Delta', \quad (10.188)$$

where a and b are constants, and a corresponding relation for $h_{jj'j''}$.

Since we assume that $\pi_j(\Delta_0, \Delta)$ is a small quantity, we may put

$$\pi_j(\Delta_0, \Delta) \approx \pi_j(\Delta_0, 0). \quad (10.189)$$

From what follows it is not difficult to convince ourselves that it is sufficient to treat the first, second and fifth sums of (10.187) only, because the third and fourth sums play a similar role. Thus, to make our treatment as concise as possible, we keep only the first, second and fifth sums of (10.187). We cast the resulting equation into the form

$$\sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'} h_{jj'} = f_j, \quad (10.190)$$

where (according to (10.160))

$$f_j = -G_0^{(1)} \sum_{j'} \kappa_{jj'} - \pi_j(\Delta_0, 0). \quad (10.191)$$

In (10.190) the quantities $\lambda_{jj'}$ and f_j are fixed, whereas the unknown τ_j and Δ' are contained in $h_{jj'}$. Inserting (10.188) in (10.190), we arrive at

$$a \sum_{jj'} \lambda_{jj'} (\tau_j - \tau_{j'}) + b \Delta' \sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'} = f_j \quad (10.192)$$

for the unknown τ_j and Δ' .

Putting the components τ_j together to a vector $\tilde{\tau}$, we find

$$L \tilde{\tau} = \tilde{F}, \quad (10.193)$$

where

$$L = (L_{jj'}) = -a \lambda_{jj'} + a \delta_{jj'} \sum_{j''} \lambda_{jj''} \quad (10.194)$$

and

$$\mathbf{F} = (F_j) = \left(f_j - b \Delta' \sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'} \right). \quad (10.195)$$

We are now able to make contact with well-known rules from linear algebra and introduce the eigenvalue equations

$$L \mathbf{V}^k = \Lambda_k \mathbf{V}^k. \quad (10.196)$$

One can readily identify the null vector \mathbf{V}^0 which has the components

$$V_j^0 = \text{const.} \quad (10.197)$$

and possesses a vanishing eigenvalue

$$\Lambda_0 = 0. \quad (10.198)$$

Again using linear algebra, we can write the solution to (10.193) in the form

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = M\mathbf{F} + \alpha\boldsymbol{\tau}^0 \quad (10.199)$$

where M is the Green's function and α is an arbitrary constant. The solvability of (10.193) requires that \mathbf{F} is orthogonal on the adjoint null vector \mathbf{V}^{0+} , i.e.

$$(\mathbf{V}^{0+} \mathbf{F}) = 0. \quad (10.200)$$

We remember that the adjoint null vector has to obey the equations

$$(\mathbf{V}^{0+} \mathbf{V}^0) = 0 \quad (10.201)$$

and

$$(\mathbf{V}^{0+} \mathbf{V}^k) = 0, \quad k \neq 0. \quad (10.202)$$

If L is self-adjoint, i.e.

$$L_{jj'} = L_{j'j}, \quad (10.203)$$

the adjoint null vector is given by

$$\mathbf{V}^{0+} = \mathbf{V}^0. \quad (10.204)$$

In a realistic neural net, the condition (10.203) can hardly be expected to be fulfilled. Nevertheless, such a network may be useful as a toy model.

Inserting (10.195) into (10.200) yields

$$\sum_j V_j^{0+} \left(f_j - b\Delta' \sum_{j'} \lambda_{jj'} \right) = 0, \quad (10.205)$$

which allows us to calculate Δ' explicitly:

$$\Delta' = \left(\sum_j V_j^{0+} f_j \right) \left(b \sum_{jj'} V_j^{0+} \lambda_{jj'} \right)^{-1}. \quad (10.206)$$

In the case of a self-adjoint matrix L , (10.206) acquires the simple form

$$\Delta' = \left(\sum_j f_j \right) \left(b \sum_{jj'} \lambda_{jj'} \right)^{-1}. \quad (10.207)$$

The result can be interpreted as follows. When there are unequal signals, i.e. $\pi_j \neq 0$ and/or the conditions (10.161) or (10.163) are violated, the oscillation frequency of the phase-locked state is changed.

Using the well-known explicit form of the Green's function, we obtain

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \sum_{k \neq 0} \mathbf{V}^k \circ \mathbf{V}^{k+} \Lambda_k^{-1} \mathbf{F} + \alpha \mathbf{V}^0, \quad (10.208)$$

where \circ denotes the direct product.

For discussion it is useful to write (10.208) in components of the vectors $\boldsymbol{\tau}$, \mathbf{V}^k , \mathbf{V}^{k+} and \mathbf{F} :

$$\tau_j = \sum_{k \neq 0} V_j^k \left(\sum_{j'} V_{j'}^k F_{j'} \right) A_k^{-1} + \alpha V_j^0. \quad (10.209)$$

We may now interpret this result as follows. τ_j represents a *time* lag of the phase ϕ_j of the axonal pulse of neuron j which is connected with a *phase* lag $\delta \phi_j$ (cf. (10.157), (10.158)).

In the last term of (10.208) and (10.209) the constant α can be chosen arbitrarily, which is a consequence of the time translation invariance of (10.176).

How is this phase lag pattern generated? Originally, it stems from another pattern vector, namely \mathbf{F} . Its components read (cf. (10.191), (10.195))

$$F_j = -G_0^{(1)} \sum_{j'} \kappa_{jj'} - \pi_j(\Delta_0, 0) - b\lambda^0 \Delta'. \quad (10.210)$$

A key to the interpretation of F_j is provided by the second term on the r.h.s. of (10.210),

$$\pi_j(\Delta_0, 0). \quad (10.211)$$

These quantities stem from the *nonuniformity* of the external signal p_j (cf. (10.164)). Thus, basically π_j carries the information of the external signal (up to a uniform background, p). The last term in (10.210) “renormalizes” this uniform background.

The first term in (10.210) stems from the difference between the matrices

$$\lambda_{jj'} \equiv \sum_k v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+}$$

and

$$\lambda_{jj''}^0 \equiv \sum_k v_j^{ok} v_{j''}^{ok+}. \quad (10.212)$$

Whereas $\lambda_{jj'}$ contains the “real” prototype patterns, $\lambda_{jj'}^0$ refers to fictitious pattern vectors so that constraints (10.161) and (10.163) are fulfilled. Since

$$G_0^{(1)} \sum_j \kappa_{jj'} \quad (10.213)$$

is independent of the external signal, it just represents a constant background, which is unessential for the pattern recognition process.

So we may state that (10.208) or, equivalently (10.209), transforms the original information-carrying signal π_j into the phase shift pattern $\delta \phi_j$. Corresponding to τ_j this transformation is achieved by first projecting \mathbf{F} on a specific pattern vector \mathbf{V}^k , then propagating this result by means of the

“propagator” A_k and then using the result as amplitude for the prototype pattern \mathbf{V}^k , which becomes manifest as phase lags. Clearly in this way (10.208) and (10.209) act as a pattern filter that incidentally transforms frequency shifts ($\pi_j!$) into phase shifts ($\sim \tau_j$).

All in all we may state that we discovered a new pattern recognition mechanism based on *phase shifts*.

As a detailed study of (10.180) reveals, their solution becomes impossible if the π_j become too large such that frequency locking breaks down (even if we go beyond the small-signal approximation).

10.7 Conclusion to Chaps. 9 and 10: Two Pathways to Pattern Recognition

The results of Chaps. 9 and 10 allow us to draw important conclusions on the interplay between phase locking, synchronization and pattern recognition, which is a hot topic in neuroscience.

First, let us recapitulate the individual steps. Our starting point was the following model, which, we believe, captures essential traits of a real neural network. We consider a network of pulse-coupled neurons in which the cooperation of two neurons may change the axonal firing rate of a third neuron. The activity of any neuron is limited by saturation, which, by contrast to traditional models, does depend on the status of all neurons (connected to the neuron under consideration) rather than on the individual neuron. The dense pulse limit allowed us to show that the network acts as an attractor network. An individual fixed point is characterized by a specific set of neurons each with a specific firing rate, which altogether represent a firing pattern corresponding to a *recognized* pattern. These attractor states (“fixed point”) are abandoned (“quasi-attractors”) because of saturation of attention, which is taken care of by the fading away of attention parameters.

In Chap. 10 we treated the very same network model but under the assumption that the external signals impinging on the neurons are nearly the same. If they are exactly the same and some additional conditions on the stored prototype patterns are fulfilled, synchronization between the pulse trains of the individual neurons may occur. For certain parameter ranges the synchronized state is stable. If the external signals differ from each other, at least within a certain range, besides the same frequency, specific patterns of phase shifts may occur. Each phase shift pattern corresponds to an external signal pattern. If the external signals impinging on the individual neurons differ too much from each other, this whole mechanism of frequency locking and phase lags breaks down and is replaced by firing patterns corresponding to quasi-attractors.

Taking all these results together, the following “grand picture” evolves. There seem to be two different pattern recognition mechanisms in the brain:

one for the recognition of similarity (by synchronization) of otherwise different patterns and their pattern structure (pulse lags) and identification of observed patterns with prototype patterns. The question whether both mechanisms can occur simultaneously or are switched on and off by attention parameter dynamics must be left open for the time being.

The synchronization effect is well documented experimentally (see Sect. 3.4) and need not to be discussed here any further.

11. Phase Locking via Sinusoidal Couplings

This chapter deals with biological systems composed of elements whose states can be described by phase variables. It will be assumed that the coupling between the elements is determined by sine-functions of their relative phases. As examples of such systems, we treat two neurons (Sect. 11.1), chains of neurons in the lamprey (Sect. 11.2), correlated movements between index fingers (Sect. 11.3) as a paradigm of limb coordination, and, more generally, quadruped motion (Sect. 11.4). In Sect. 11.5 we return to the neuronal level dealing with neuronal groups. As we will see, all these cases share a common mathematical ground.

11.1 Coupling Between Two Neurons

As we outlined in Chap. 2, many types of neurons generate an ongoing spike train, or a sequence of spike bursts in response to a constant stimulus. In Chap. 5, we studied the interaction between two such neurons, whereby each neuron was modelled as a phase oscillator. The formulation for the interaction between the two neurons took into account the actual spike trains as well as the dynamics of the dendritic currents. There is a still simpler approach to the treatment of the coupling between neurons that are again described by phase oscillators, but where the coupling is a smooth periodic function of the phase differences between the two neurons. The modelling of coupled nonlinear oscillators by means of phase oscillators with sinusoidal phase-coupling has a long history. It appeared in radio engineering, later in laser physics and was applied to chemical waves by Kuramoto and to the modelling of neurons by Cohen and others. As has been shown in the literature, such a coupling can be quite a good approximation for neuronal interaction under specific circumstances. Here we will consider such a phase-coupling model at two levels, namely at a level that refers to spiking neurons, and at a level where we are dealing with spike *rates*. These latter equations are special cases of the spike averaged equations we derived in Sect. 8.13. Let us elucidate the corresponding formalism that applies to both cases in more detail. The phases of the phase oscillators obey the equations

$$\frac{d\phi_j}{dt} = \omega_j, \quad j = 1, 2, \quad (11.1)$$

where ω_j is the rotation speed of the phase. The coupling between the two oscillators is taken care of by coupling functions W that depend on the phase difference. Thus (11.1) has to be replaced by

$$\frac{d\phi_1}{dt} = \omega_1 + W_1(\phi_2 - \phi_1) \quad (11.2)$$

and

$$\frac{d\phi_2}{dt} = \omega_2 + W_2(\phi_1 - \phi_2). \quad (11.3)$$

Since the processes under consideration are periodic in their phases, we assume

$$W_j(\phi + 2\pi) = W_j(\phi). \quad (11.4)$$

We introduce the phase difference

$$\phi = \phi_2 - \phi_1 \quad (11.5)$$

and subtract (11.2) from (11.3),

$$\frac{d\phi}{dt} = \omega_2 - \omega_1 + W_2(\phi) - W_1(-\phi). \quad (11.6)$$

Any periodic function can be represented as a Fourier series and in the present context it has turned out that it is sufficient to use the first term only. Thus we approximate W by means of

$$W_j = a_j \sin(\phi + \sigma_j). \quad (11.7)$$

Using (11.7), the last two terms of (11.6) can be written as

$$a_2 \sin(\phi + \sigma_2) - a_1 \sin(-\phi + \sigma_1). \quad (11.8)$$

By means of the mathematical identity

$$\sin(\alpha + \beta) = \sin \alpha \cos \beta + \cos \alpha \sin \beta, \quad (11.9)$$

and a rearrangement of terms, this expression can be cast into the form

$$(11.8) = (a_2 \cos \sigma_2 + a_1 \cos \sigma_1) \sin \phi + (a_2 \sin \sigma_2 - a_1 \sin \sigma_1) \cos \phi. \quad (11.10)$$

Now we wish to make use of (11.9) in the reverse direction, namely we wish to write

$$(11.10) = A \cos \phi + B \sin \phi \stackrel{!}{=} \alpha \sin(\phi + \delta), \quad (11.11)$$

whereby the coefficients A and B can be immediately found by comparing the prefactors of $\sin \phi$ and $\cos \phi$. In order to apply (11.9), we put

$$A = \alpha \sin \delta, \quad B = \alpha \cos \delta, \quad (11.12)$$

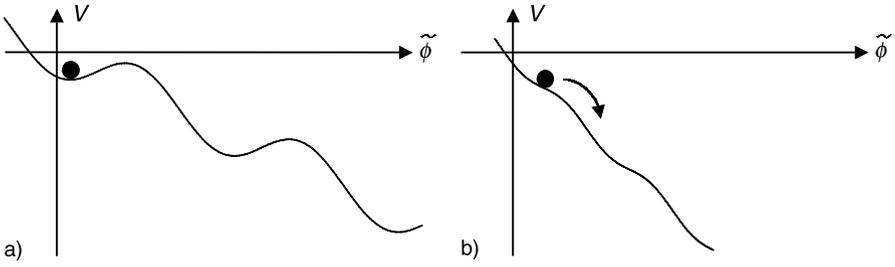


Fig. 11.1. The potential function $V(\tilde{\phi}) = -\Delta\tilde{\phi} - \alpha \cos \tilde{\phi}$: **a)** for $|\alpha| > \Delta$, example $\Delta, \alpha > 0$; **b)** for $|\alpha| < \Delta$, example $\Delta, \alpha > 0$

from which we deduce

$$\alpha^2 = A^2 + B^2, \quad \text{or} \quad \alpha = \sqrt{A^2 + B^2}, \quad (11.13)$$

as well as

$$A/B = \text{tg } \delta, \quad \text{or} \quad \delta = \arctan(A/B). \quad (11.14)$$

Making use of (11.9), (11.12), as well as of (11.11), we can cast (11.6) with (11.7) into the final form

$$\frac{d\phi}{dt} = \Delta + \alpha \sin(\phi + \delta), \quad (11.15)$$

where

$$\Delta = \omega_2 - \omega_1. \quad (11.16)$$

Our final step consists of introducing a new variable according to

$$\tilde{\phi} = \phi + \delta. \quad (11.17)$$

In this way, we cast (11.15) into the final form

$$\frac{d\tilde{\phi}}{dt} = \Delta - \alpha \sin \tilde{\phi} = -\frac{\partial V}{\partial \tilde{\phi}}. \quad (11.18)$$

In the last equality, we have introduced a potential function V that allows us to discuss the behavior of the phase angle $\tilde{\phi}$ in a simple manner (see Fig. 11.1). There are two ranges of behavior of $\tilde{\phi}$.

If

$$|\alpha| > \Delta: \quad \text{phase locking} \quad (11.19)$$

holds, we find a time-independent solution to (11.18), because the term Δ can be compensated by the last term $\alpha \sin \tilde{\phi}$. If, however,

$$|\alpha| < \Delta: \quad \text{free running} \quad (11.20)$$

holds, we find a free-running solution in which the phase difference increases over the course of time (cf. Fig. 11.1b). In the first case we immediately find

$$\tilde{\phi} = \arcsin \frac{\Delta}{\alpha}. \quad (11.21)$$

As is evident from Fig. 11.1a, the phase-locking solution is stable.

11.2 A Chain of Coupled-Phase Oscillators

In this section, we present an example that refers to the spike rate level and deals with the swimming motion of a lamprey, an eel-like vertebrate. This problem has been examined by several authors (see references) and we follow the nice presentation by Wilson (1999). The lamprey swims by generating travelling waves of neural activity that pass down its spinal cord. The modelling rests on the concept of what is called “a central pattern generator”. It is defined as a neural network that produces stereotypical limit cycle oscillations in response to a constant spike rate input. The latter is also called “the command signal”. The signal triggers the oscillations and determines their frequency. Its experimental counterpart can be found in the work of Shik et al. They showed that decerebrate cats could walk or trot when their spinal cord was excited by a constant electric input signal. Experimentally in the case of the lamprey, it has been shown that an intact spinal cord isolated from the rest of the body will generate rhythmic bursts of neural activity appropriate for swimming in response to constant stimulation.

Further experiments have shown that even small sections of the spinal cord are capable of generating rhythmic bursts of spikes in which activity on one side alternates with that on the other. Such oscillatory networks in the spinal segments cause alternate contraction and relaxation of the body muscles on opposite sides of the body during swimming. Here we will not go into the details of the local neural network, rather we wish to model the occurrence of travelling waves by means of coupled-phase oscillators. We consider only nearest-neighbor couplings. We then define a travelling wave as a phase-locked solution of these equations with a constant phase difference between the adjacent segments. Using a synaptic delay σ and denoting the phases by Θ , the basic equations are given by

$$\frac{d\Theta_1}{dt} = \omega_1 + a_a \sin(\Theta_2 - \Theta_1 + \sigma), \quad (11.22)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\Theta_i}{dt} = \omega_i + a_a \sin(\Theta_{i+1} - \Theta_i + \sigma) \\ + a_d \sin(\Theta_{i-1} - \Theta_i + \sigma), \quad i = 2, \dots, N-1, \end{aligned} \quad (11.23)$$

$$\frac{d\Theta_N}{dt} = \omega_N + a_d \sin(\Theta_{N-1} - \Theta_N + \sigma), \quad (11.24)$$

where a_a represents the strength of the coupling in an ascending sequence of neurons (tail \rightarrow head), whereas a_d represents the corresponding couplings for the descending sequence. A pairwise subtraction of these equations and using

$$\phi_i = \Theta_{i+1} - \Theta_i \quad (11.25)$$

leads to the equations

$$\frac{d\phi_1}{dt} = \Delta\omega_1 + a_a[\sin(\phi_2 + \sigma) - \sin(\phi_1 + \sigma)] + a_d \sin(-\phi_1 + \sigma), \quad (11.26)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\phi_i}{dt} = \Delta\omega_i + a_a[\sin(\phi_{i+1} + \sigma) - \sin(\phi_i + \sigma)] \\ + a_d[\sin(-\phi_i + \sigma) - \sin(-\phi_{i-1} + \sigma)], \end{aligned} \quad (11.27)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\phi_{N-1}}{dt} = \Delta\omega_{N-1} - a_a \sin(\phi_{N-1} + \sigma) \\ - a_d[\sin(-\phi_{N-1} + \sigma) - \sin(-\phi_{N-2} + \sigma)] \end{aligned} \quad (11.28)$$

with the abbreviation

$$\Delta\omega_i = \omega_{i+1} - \omega_i. \quad (11.29)$$

It is assumed that $\Delta\omega_i$ is determined by command signals coming from the brain. In principle, many different states are possible, but here we are interested in the travelling wave solution that is defined by

$$\frac{d\phi_i}{dt} = 0, \quad \phi_i = \phi \quad \text{for all } i. \quad (11.30)$$

By this assumption, the equations (11.26)–(11.29) are converted into

$$\Delta\omega_1 + a_d \sin(-\phi + \sigma) = 0, \quad (11.31)$$

$$\Delta\omega_i = 0, \quad i = 2, \dots, N-2, \quad (11.32)$$

$$\Delta\omega_{N-1} - a_a \sin(\phi + \sigma) = 0. \quad (11.33)$$

We note that $\Delta\omega_1$ and $\Delta\omega_{N-1}$ cannot both be zero unless $\sigma = 0$ or π . Therefore, as an example, we choose

$$\Delta\omega_{N-1} = 0 \quad (11.34)$$

and are then left with

$$\Delta\omega_1 = -a_d \sin(-\phi + \sigma) \quad (11.35)$$

as well as

$$\phi = -\sigma. \quad (11.36)$$

From (11.35) we conclude

$$\Delta\omega_1 = \omega_2 - \omega_1 = -a_d \sin \sigma, \quad (11.37)$$

i.e. ω_1 must be slightly larger than all other ω_i . In this way, we obtain forward swimming. Backward swimming can be achieved using $\omega_1 = 0$. One may show that stability is secured if

$$a_a > 0, \quad a_d > 0, \quad 0 < \pi/4 \quad (11.38)$$

holds. Thus a constant command signal to all except the first or last segment generates a travelling wave, and by sending a slightly larger signal to the first or last the direction of swimming can be determined.

In this analysis we have been interested in deriving travelling waves. There is yet an additional requirement, namely that the travelling wave of neural activity in the spinal cord has a wavelength equal to the body length of the animal. This can be achieved by choosing $\Delta\omega_1$ and $\Delta\omega_{N-1}$ not equal to zero. Using the fact that the number of segment equations N is equal to the number of segments, $N = 100$, the phase lag between segments must be $\phi = \pi/50$, which yields, using (11.31) and (11.33), the relations

$$\Delta\omega_1 = -a_d \sin(-\pi/50 + \sigma) \quad (11.39)$$

and

$$\Delta\omega_{N-1} = +a_a \sin(\pi/50 + \sigma). \quad (11.40)$$

Since the coupling strength a_a and the phase shift σ are given, the frequencies can now be determined.

11.3 Coupled Finger Movements

When humans walk or run, or horses walk, trot or gallop, these movements are characterized by well coordinated movements of the individual limbs so that we may speak of movement *patterns*. In one way or another, these patterns reflect activity patterns of corresponding neurons in the brain, in particular the cerebellum, and in the spinal cord. A particularly fascinating aspect is the abrupt change between gaits. Haken (1983) suggested at an early stage that these changes closely resemble phase transitions of synergetic systems. In the study of such phase transitions, experiments by Kelso et al. on changes in coordinated finger movements have played a pivotal role. In the following we present the corresponding Haken–Kelso–Bunz model. In his experiments, Kelso asked a subject to move his (or her) index fingers in parallel at a comparatively slow speed (frequency). When the prescribed frequency was increased more and more, suddenly and involuntarily, the subject switched to a symmetric movement (Fig. 11.2).

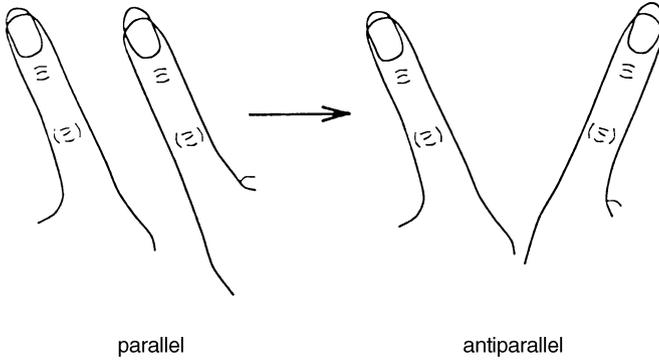


Fig. 11.2. Transition from parallel to symmetric index finger movement

We describe the displacement x_j of index finger $j, j = 1, 2$, (Fig. 11.3) by means of a phase variable ϕ_j

$$x_j = r_j \sin \phi_j, \quad j = 1, 2. \tag{11.41}$$

The model, in its most simple form, assumes that the relative phase

$$\phi = \phi_2 - \phi_1 \tag{11.42}$$

obeys the following equation

$$\dot{\phi} = -a \sin \phi - b \sin 2\phi. \tag{11.43}$$

By analogy with the mechanical example of Sect. 5.3, ((5.24) and (5.25)), we identify ϕ with the coordinate of a particle that is subjected to a force represented by the r.h.s. of (11.43). Introducing the potential function

$$V(\phi) = -a \cos \phi - \frac{1}{2}b \cos 2\phi, \tag{11.44}$$

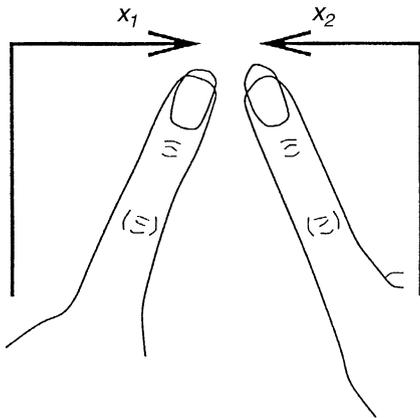


Fig. 11.3. Definition of displacements x_j

we cast (11.43) into the form

$$\dot{\phi} = -\partial V/\partial\phi. \quad (11.45)$$

To fully exploit the analogy between the “movement” of ϕ and that of a particle, we treat the case of overdamped motion. Here we may neglect the term $m\ddot{x}$ in (5.24), so that (5.24) with (5.25) coincides with (11.45), where, of course, $x \leftrightarrow \phi$. Thus, the movement of ϕ corresponds to that of a ball (or particle) in a hilly landscape described by $V(\phi)$. A further crucial idea is now lent from synergetics. It is assumed that the prescribed finger movement frequency ω acts as a *control parameter*. When such a parameter is changed, the corresponding potential “landscape” is deformed. In the present case it is assumed that the ratio b/a in (11.44) depends on ω in such a way that the sequence of landscapes of Fig. 11.4 results. This model can represent (or “explain”) or has even predicted a number of experimental findings:

(1) *Hysteresis*. When at low ω the fingers are moved in parallel, the ball is located in the upper minimum (“valley”). With increasing ω , this minimum becomes flatter and flatter and, eventually, disappears. Then the ball rolls down to the deeper valley corresponding to symmetric finger movement. On the other hand, when starting at high ω from this position and ω is lowered, the ball will never “jump up” to its previous higher valley. This means for subjects: To move their fingers in the symmetric mode. Summarizing we may

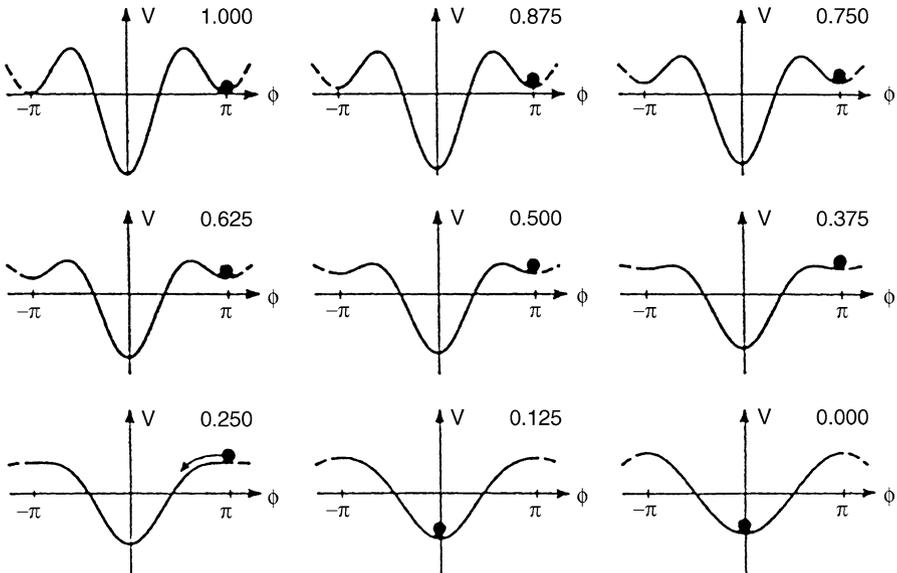


Fig. 11.4. Change of potential landscape (11.44) when b/a decreases

say: For the same frequency ω the finger movement coordination is quite different depending on the *history*.

(2) *Critical slowing down*. Let the prescribed ω be close to its *critical value*, ω_c , where the transition between one kind of movement to the other occurs. When the movement is disturbed, e.g. by small kicks, it takes a comparatively long time until the original, coordinated movement is restored.

(3) *Critical fluctuations*. According to synergetics, close to the critical control parameter values, in the present case ω_c , the variables of a system may undergo pronounced fluctuations. In the present context, such fluctuations of ϕ have been studied by Schöner, Haken and Kelso starting from a Langevin-type equation by including a fluctuating force $F(t)$ in (11.43) (see also Chap. 4). The corresponding experiments by Kelso et al. fully demonstrate the existence of critical fluctuations.

The experimental results (2) and (3) have a fundamental significance for our understanding of the functioning of neural nets. The finger movement is, after all, a manifestation of neural activity. On the other hand, the phenomena (2) and (3) are clear manifestations of self-organization. In other words, we are led to the conclusion that movement coordination is brought about by self-organization and *not* by a motor program in whose frame (2) and (3) would be absent. This point of view is the basis of my book “Principles of Brain Functioning”.

11.4 Quadruped Motion

The motion of quadrupeds, such as horses, camels, and so on, has also been modelled by means of phase oscillators, which are assumed to be located in the spinal cord. A remarkable feature of quadruped gaits is that there is quite a variety of them, where walking, trotting and galloping are just a few examples. Furthermore, spontaneous transitions between such gaits may occur.

In the following we wish to write down the basic equations and quote some of the more interesting results. We will assume that all frequencies ω are equal and put

$$\Theta(t) = \omega t + \phi. \quad (11.46)$$

Furthermore we will introduce indices according to the scheme

$$\text{right(r), left(l), front(f), hind(h) limbs,} \quad (11.47)$$

and denote the individual phases correspondingly

$$\phi_{rf}, \phi_{lf}, \phi_{rh}, \phi_{lh}. \quad (11.48)$$

Thus, for instance, ϕ_{rf} is the phase of the right front limb. For later purposes, we will introduce the abbreviation

$$\phi_{ij}, \quad i = r, l; \quad j = f, h, \quad (11.49)$$

where the first index refers to right or left and the second to front or hind. By analogy with what we have seen before in modelling lamprey motion, it suggests itself to introduce the following phase-coupling equations

$$\dot{\phi}_{rf} = a \sin(\phi_{rh} - \phi_{rf}) + b \sin(\phi_{lf} - \phi_{rf}) + c \sin(\phi_{lh} - \phi_{rf}), \quad (11.50)$$

where we have written down just one equation for the right front limb as an example. Clearly, three other equations of the same type have to be added so that one should deal with equations that contain 12 coefficients. As was shown by Schoener et al., because of symmetry considerations, the number of coefficients can be reduced quite appreciably. In order to write down the resulting equations in a concise way, we introduce a ‘‘hat notation’’ by means of

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{i} : & \quad \text{if } \begin{cases} i = r, \\ i = l, \end{cases} \text{ then } \begin{cases} \hat{i} = l \\ \hat{i} = r \end{cases} \\ \hat{j} : & \quad \text{if } \begin{cases} j = f, \\ j = h, \end{cases} \text{ then } \begin{cases} \hat{j} = h \\ \hat{j} = f. \end{cases} \end{aligned} \quad (11.51)$$

When diagonal couplings between the limbs are neglected, because of symmetry only two coefficients are needed and the equations for the four limbs can be written in the very concise form

$$\dot{\phi}_{ij} = A_1 \sin [\phi_{ij} - \phi_{i\hat{j}}] + C_1 \sin [\phi_{ij} - \phi_{i\hat{j}}]. \quad (11.52)$$

Here it is assumed that the symmetry holds with respect to planes through the body of the animal in longitudinal and transverse directions. In order to take care of transitions between gaits in an appropriate fashion, the formulation (11.52) is not sufficient, however, but must be supplemented with the succeeding harmonic terms on the r.h.s. of (11.52) by analogy with procedures introduced by Haken, Kelso and Bunz (see Sect. 11.3) to model changes in finger movement patterns. The resulting equations then acquire the form

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\phi}_{ij} = & A_1 \sin [\phi_{ij} - \phi_{i\hat{j}}] + A_2 \sin [2(\phi_{ij} - \phi_{i\hat{j}})] \\ & + C_1 \sin [\phi_{ij} - \phi_{i\hat{j}}] + C_2 \sin [2(\phi_{ij} - \phi_{i\hat{j}})]. \end{aligned} \quad (11.53)$$

Many gaits, i.e. movement patterns, have been studied by Schoener et al., where depending on the numerical values of the coefficients the stability regions could be identified. Since the whole procedure has been described in my book ‘‘Principles of Brain Functioning’’, I will not dwell here longer on this problem.

11.5 Populations of Neural Phase Oscillators

The interactions between sets of neural phase oscillators have been studied by numerous authors, who treated various aspects. My following outline is based on a recent book by Tass (see references), who had medical applications, in particular for therapy for Parkinson’s disease, in mind. The effect of phase couplings on phase oscillators had been extensively treated by Kuramoto, mainly in the context of chemical waves, but also in the context of neural populations.

11.5.1 Synchronization Patterns

We denote the time-dependent phase of neuron j with eigenfrequency ω_j by ψ_j . The equations are assumed to be in the form

$$\dot{\psi}_j = \omega_j + \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N M(\psi_j - \psi_k), \quad j = 1, \dots, N. \quad (11.54)$$

In this approach the function M that provides the coupling between the phases ψ_k and ψ_j does not depend on the indices j and k explicitly. This means that the coupling between different neurons is assumed all the same, an approach called “mean field approximation”. M is a 2π -periodic function, and is approximated by the first four Fourier coefficients

$$M(\psi) = - \sum_{m=1}^4 (K_m \sin(m\psi) + C_m \cos(m\psi)), \quad (11.55)$$

where the use of the sin and cos functions is equivalent to taking into account a phase shift δ that may depend on the index m . An interesting result is the fact that, depending on the values of the parameters ω_j , and K and C , frequency locking between the oscillators becomes possible, i.e. where all oscillators run at the same synchronization frequency

$$\dot{\psi}_j = \Omega^* \quad \text{synchronization frequency}, \quad (11.56)$$

but may possess constant phase differences. In this way, one cluster of neurons may become phase-locked, but Tass as well as others studied also the occurrence of up to four clusters and also clustering in the presence of noise.

11.5.2 Pulse Stimulation

Once the possible clusters have been determined, it becomes possible to study the impact of pulsatile stimulation on noisy cluster states. In the context of phase resetting in biology, pulses can – but need not – be short compared to

the period of an oscillation. In the work of Tass, the stimulus is described in the form

$$S(\psi) = \sum_{m=1}^4 I_m \cos(m\psi + \gamma_m). \quad (11.57)$$

After some time with no stimulus, where the clusters have been formed, the stimulus (11.57) is administered and we study how different types of stimuli act on different types of cluster states. This may, in particular, lead to stimulation-induced desynchronization and spontaneous resynchronization.

More recently, Tass studied the effect of two subsequent stimulations that seem to be more promising for medical applications, e.g. for a treatment of Parkinson's disease.

11.5.3 Periodic Stimulation

The action of a periodic stimulus on a nonlinear oscillator has been studied in many fields of science, and particularly mathematics, under the title "Forced Nonlinear Oscillators". An interesting new feature is the fact that the oscillations can become phase-locked to the phase of the stimulus even if both frequencies are equal or nearly equal, but also if they are in ratio, such as 1:2, or more generally $N:M$, where N and M are integers. Thus, for instance, when the stimulation runs at a frequency $N\Omega$, the resulting oscillation of the system occurs at a frequency $M\Omega$ and the corresponding phases are locked. The periodic stimulation may serve different purposes, for instance to annihilate rhythmic synchronized activity, or to modify ongoing rhythms using a change of frequency, or by reshaping synchronization patterns. In this way, these mathematical studies are of interest to the therapy of Parkinsonian resting tremor.

12. Pulse-Averaged Equations

12.1 Survey

In Sect. 8.13 I have shown how by suitable averages over the equations of a pulse-coupled neural network, equations for the pulse rates and dendritic currents can be obtained (see (8.139) and (8.140)). Equations of a similar type have been derived by Nunez, though along different lines, and we will discuss them below. By the elimination of the axonal pulse rates, we may derive equations for the dendritic currents alone. Since dendritic currents lie at the basis of the formation of electric and magnetic fields of the brain, such equations are of particular interest. We will discuss these and related equations later in this chapter. Here we wish to begin with a comparatively simple case, which has a long history and at the same time reveals highly interesting features of such networks. In the present case, we use equations in which the dendritic currents have been eliminated from (8.139) and (8.140). We then essentially obtain equations that were derived by Wilson and Cowan who called them cortical dynamics equations. Wilson and Cowan established their equations directly, i.e. without an averaging procedure as outlined in Sect. 8.13. They consider two types of neurons, namely

(a) excitatory neurons, whose axonal pulse rate is denoted by E . These are usually pyramidal cells that provide cortical output, and

(b) inhibitory interneurons with axonal pulse rates I . These neurons have usually axons that remain within a given cortical area. Among these neurons, usually all interconnections occur, i.e. $E \rightarrow E, E \rightarrow I, I \rightarrow E, I \rightarrow I$. Consistent with anatomy, the recurrent excitations remain relatively localized, whereas inhibitory interactions extend over a broader range (for more recent approaches see the references). In order to make contact with our previous notation in Chap. 8, we note that the pulse rate ω is now interpreted either as E or I

$$\omega \begin{cases} \nearrow E \\ \searrow I \end{cases}. \quad (12.1)$$

Furthermore, we interpret the discrete index j as the position of the corresponding neuron

$$j \rightarrow \mathbf{x}. \quad (12.2)$$

In the following we will ignore time delays.

12.2 The Wilson–Cowan Equations

Denoting the relaxation time of the axonal pulse rates by τ , and using suitably scaled saturation functions S , the Wilson–Cowan equations can be written in the form

$$\tau \frac{dE(\mathbf{x})}{dt} + E(\mathbf{x}) = S_E \left(\sum_{\mathbf{y}} w_{EE}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) E(\mathbf{y}) - \sum_{\mathbf{y}} w_{IE}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) I(\mathbf{y}) + P(\mathbf{x}) \right) \quad (12.3)$$

and

$$\tau \frac{dI(\mathbf{x})}{dt} + I(\mathbf{x}) = S_I \left(\sum_{\mathbf{y}} w_{EI}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) E(\mathbf{y}) - \sum_{\mathbf{y}} w_{II}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) I(\mathbf{y}) + Q(\mathbf{x}) \right). \quad (12.4)$$

P and Q are external inputs. These authors use the Naka–Rushton function (see Sect. 2.5) in the form

$$S(X) = \begin{cases} \frac{rX^N}{\theta^{N+X^N}} & \text{for } X \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } X < 0 \end{cases} \quad (12.5)$$

for the spike rate and make the specific choices

$$N = 2, \quad M = 100 \quad (12.6)$$

so that

$$S(X) = \frac{100X^2}{\theta^2 + X^2}, \quad (12.7)$$

where θ is chosen differently for excitatory and inhibitory neurons, as is indicated by the corresponding indices of S in (12.3) and (12.4). The coupling between the neurons is assumed to be instantaneous, but depends on the distance between the neurons so that we write

$$w_{ij}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = w_{ij}(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) = b_{ij} \exp(-|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}| / \sigma_{ij}). \quad (12.8)$$

Since the parameters b and σ are not very accessible experimentally, the choice of reasonable values of parameters rests on some requirements, namely:

- 1) The resting state $E = 0, I = 0$ will be asymptotically stable in the absence of external inputs P, Q . Because of the form of S , this condition is automatically fulfilled, because the linearization of equations (12.3) and (12.4) yields

$$dE/dt = -\frac{1}{\tau}E, \quad dI/dt = -\frac{1}{\tau}I. \quad (12.9)$$

- 2) The spread of the recurrent inhibition will be larger than that of the recurrent excitation; this is fulfilled by the choice

$$\sigma_{EI} = \sigma_{IE} > \sigma_{EE} \quad (12.10)$$

in (12.8).

- 3) If no external stimulation is present, no spatially uniform steady state will be possible except the resting state. This sets specific limits on the relations $b_{ij} \cdot \sigma_{ij}$.

Before we proceed to discuss some solutions to the (12.3) and (12.4), we illuminate the properties of the sigmoid function S , which will lead us to some surprises about the properties of the equations of the type of (12.3) and (12.4).

12.3 A Simple Example

Let us consider only one type of neuron E and assume that E is constant in space. Thus we are treating (12.3) with $I = 0$. By a suitable scaling of E, P and time t (see Exercise 1), this equation can be cast into the form

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = -\gamma E + \frac{(E + P)^2}{1 + (E + P)^2} \equiv -\gamma E + S(E). \quad (12.11)$$

In the steady state, we have

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = 0. \quad (12.12)$$

We first consider no external input, i.e. $P = 0$. Equation (12.11) then acquires the form

$$\gamma E_0 (1 + E_0^2) - E_0^2 = 0, \quad (12.13)$$

which, quite evidently, has as one solution

$$E_0 = 0. \quad (12.14)$$

The remaining equation

$$E_0^2 - E_0/\gamma + 1 = 0 \quad (12.15)$$

possesses two roots

$$E_0 = \frac{1}{2\gamma} \pm \sqrt{1/(2\gamma)^2 - 1}. \quad (12.16)$$

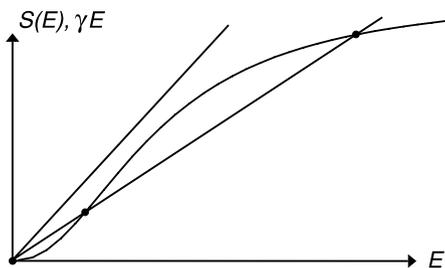


Fig. 12.1. The plot of $S(E)$ (12.11) and γE versus E allows us to determine the zeros of (12.11) for various parameter values

We then readily observe:

- (a) no real root for $1/(2\gamma) < 1$ (large damping);
- (b) one double root for $1/(2\gamma) = 1$;
- (c) two real roots for $1/(2\gamma) > 1$ (small damping). (12.17)

Since case (b) is contained in (c) as a special case, we focus our attention on case (c). In this case, we may approximate (12.16) using

$$E_0 \approx \frac{1}{2\gamma}(1 \pm (1 - 2\gamma^2)) = \begin{cases} \nearrow 1/\gamma - \gamma \approx 1/\gamma \\ \searrow \gamma. \end{cases} \tag{12.18}$$

These results are illustrated by Fig. 12.1.

An important question is whether the states (12.14) and (12.18) are stable. To check the stability, we write (12.11) in the form

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = -\gamma E + S(E) \equiv f(E), \tag{12.19}$$

where for steady states

$$f(E_0) = 0. \tag{12.20}$$

Putting

$$E = E_0 + \epsilon, \tag{12.21}$$

and using (12.20), we transform (12.19) into

$$\frac{d\epsilon}{dt} = f(E) - f(E_0) \approx \alpha\epsilon, \tag{12.22}$$

where the last term is a good approximation provided f is evaluated for values of E close to one of the steady states. The function $f(E)$ is plotted against E in Fig. 12.2. This figure allows us immediately to derive the stability properties of the individual states as discussed in the figure. The stability of $E_0 = 0$ is no surprise. However, surprisingly enough, there exists also a stable state for $E_0 \neq 0$ even in the absence of any external input. In order to avoid such states, inhibitory neurons are needed. We note already here that highly

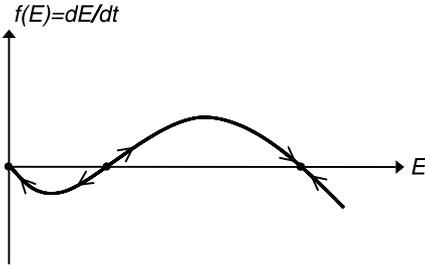


Fig. 12.2. The plot of $f(E) = dE/dt$ allows us to determine the stability of the fixed points. For $f(E) < 0$, the variable E tends to smaller values, and for $f(E) > 0$, E tends to larger values as indicated by the arrows. If the arrows aim towards a fixed point, it is stable; unstable otherwise

excited networks can be used as models for epileptic seizures as well as for visual hallucinations which we will discuss below.

Let us now turn to the case with non-vanishing external signal, $P \neq 0$. We introduce a new variable E' by means of

$$E + P = E' \tag{12.23}$$

and consider the steady state. The values of the steady-state solutions can again be determined by graphical representations (cf. Figs. 12.3 and 12.4). Here we wish to present an analytic approach. By means of (12.23), the original (12.11) with (12.12) is transformed into

$$\gamma(E' - P)(1 + E'^2) - E'^2 = 0. \tag{12.24}$$

Figure 12.3 suggests that for small enough P one solution, if any, of (12.24) will be a small quantity so that we retain only powers up to second order in E' . Equation (12.24) can then be transformed into

$$E'^2 - \frac{\gamma}{1 + \gamma P} E' + \frac{P\gamma}{1 + \gamma P} = \gamma, \tag{12.25}$$

which possesses the roots

$$E' = \frac{\gamma}{2(1 + \gamma P)} \left(1 \pm \sqrt{1 - \frac{4P(1 + \gamma P)}{\gamma}} \right). \tag{12.26}$$

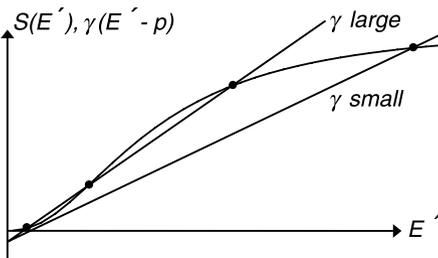


Fig. 12.3. Same as Fig. 12.1, but for $S(E')$ and $\gamma(E' - P)$. Note the possibility of three intersections

We discuss two special cases:

$$(1) \quad \gamma \text{ small and/or } P \text{ large.} \tag{12.27}$$

In this case, no real root exists, at least none that is small in accordance with Fig. 12.3.

Let us consider

$$(2) \quad \gamma \text{ large } (P \text{ small or moderate}). \tag{12.28}$$

In this case, (12.26) can be approximated by

$$E' \approx \begin{cases} \nearrow (\gamma - P(1 + \gamma P)) / (1 + \gamma P) \\ \searrow P, \end{cases} \tag{12.29}$$

where only the lower root is of interest to us, because it agrees with our original assumption that E' is small.

Let us now consider the upper cross-section in Fig. 12.3. In this case, we are in a region called “saturation”. In our analytical approach we assume

$$E' \gg 1 \tag{12.30}$$

and in order to use small quantities, we introduce the inverse of E' via

$$\frac{1}{E'} = \epsilon \ll 1 \tag{12.31}$$

as a new variable. Equation (12.24) can be transformed into

$$\gamma - \gamma\epsilon P + \gamma\epsilon^2 - \gamma\epsilon^3 P - \epsilon = 0, \tag{12.32}$$

and ignoring the cubic term of ϵ into

$$\epsilon^2 - \epsilon(1 + \gamma P) / \gamma + 1 = 0, \tag{12.33}$$

which possesses the roots

$$\epsilon = \frac{1}{2\gamma}(1 + \gamma P) \left(1 \pm \sqrt{1 - \frac{(2\gamma)^2}{(1 + \gamma P)^2}} \right). \tag{12.34}$$

Again we distinguish between γ large and γ small. In the first case, we obtain

$$\gamma \rightarrow \infty, \gamma P \text{ finite } \sqrt{} \rightarrow i, \tag{12.35}$$

i.e. no real root exists, at least none that is consistent with (12.30) or (12.31). If, however, γ is small, we obtain approximately

$$\epsilon = \begin{cases} \nearrow (1 + \gamma P) / \gamma - \gamma / (1 + \gamma P)^2 \\ \searrow \gamma / (1 + \gamma P). \end{cases} \tag{12.36}$$

Keeping the leading terms and using (12.31), we finally obtain

$$E' = \frac{1}{\epsilon} \approx \begin{cases} \gamma / (1 + \gamma P) \\ (1 + \gamma P) / \gamma. \end{cases} \tag{12.37}$$

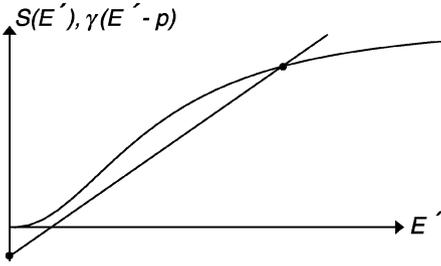


Fig. 12.4. Same as Fig. 12.2, case of saturation

The first root is in contradiction with our assumption (12.30) so that the useful root for us is the second in (12.37). Because of (12.23), we finally obtain

$$E \approx \frac{1}{\gamma}. \quad (12.38)$$

In leading order, E is thus independent of the external signal P . This is typical for *saturation effects* (see Fig. 12.4)

Let us summarize the salient results of this section. The steady states E_0 depend decisively on the size of the damping constant γ (in reduced units). Even in the absence of an external signal, a stable highly excited state may exist. In between the two stable states, there is an unstable steady state that was not shown here. It persists also for non-vanishing external inputs P .

Let us now return to some typical solutions of the Wilson–Cowan equations.

Exercise (Rescaling of (12.3)). The original equation reads

$$\tau \frac{dE}{dt} = -E + \frac{rE^2}{\Theta^2 + E^2}. \quad (*)$$

We introduce

$$E = \tilde{E}\Theta,$$

which casts (*) into

$$\tau\Theta \frac{d\tilde{E}}{dt} = -\Theta\tilde{E} + \frac{r\tilde{E}^2}{1 + \tilde{E}^2}.$$

Division by r leads to

$$\frac{\tau\Theta}{r} \frac{d\tilde{E}}{dt} = -\frac{\Theta}{r}\tilde{E} + \frac{\tilde{E}^2}{1 + \tilde{E}^2},$$

which can be cast into the form (12.11) by the choices

$$\frac{r}{\tau\Theta}t = \tilde{t}, \quad \frac{\Theta}{r} = \gamma.$$

12.4 Cortical Dynamics Described by Wilson–Cowan Equations

Here we wish to consider the following behavior as an example. We assume that a spatially uniform steady state has been produced by constant input values P, Q . In order to study the stability of this steady state, we linearize the corresponding equations around that state. In this specific example, Wilson and Cowan obtained the following equations for the deviations $E'(x, t), I'(x, t)$ from the steady states

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dE'}{dt} = -E' + \frac{1}{4} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-|x - x'|) E' dx' \\ - \frac{1}{4} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-|x - x'|/8) I' dx', \end{aligned} \quad (12.39)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dI'}{dt} = -I' + \frac{1}{8} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-|x - x'|) E' dx' \\ - \frac{2}{3} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-|x - x'|/3) I' dx', \end{aligned} \quad (12.40)$$

where specific numerical values of the constants have been chosen. The authors study specific kinds of spatial dependence, i.e. they put

$$E'(x, t) = E'(t) \cos(kx), \quad I'(x, t) = I'(t) \cos(kx). \quad (12.41)$$

The integrals which occur in (12.39) and (12.40) can be easily evaluated and yield

$$\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \exp(-|x - x'|/\sigma) \cos(kx') dx' = \frac{2\sigma \cos kx}{1 + (\sigma k)^2}. \quad (12.42)$$

In this way, (12.39) and (12.40) are transformed into equations for the time-dependent amplitudes E', I'

$$\frac{dE'}{dt} = -E' + \frac{2E'}{1 + (4k)^2} - \frac{4I'}{1 + (8k)^2}, \quad (12.43)$$

$$\frac{dI'}{dt} = -I' + \frac{2E'}{1 + (8k)^2} - \frac{4I'}{1 + (3k)^2}. \quad (12.44)$$

These two linear equations can be solved using the hypothesis

$$E'(t) = E'_0 e^{\lambda t}, \quad I'(t) = I'_0 e^{\lambda t}, \quad (12.45)$$

which leads to the eigenvalue equations

$$\lambda E' = c_1 E' - c_2 I' \quad (12.46)$$

and

$$\lambda I' = c_3 E' - c_4 I', \quad (12.47)$$

where the coefficients are given by

$$c_1 = -1 + \frac{2}{1 + (4k)^2}, \quad c_2 = \frac{4}{1 + (8k)^2}, \quad (12.48)$$

and

$$c_3 = \frac{2}{1 + (8k)^2}, \quad c_4 = 1 + \frac{4}{1 + (3k)^2}. \quad (12.49)$$

As usual, the eigenvalues λ are determined by

$$\begin{vmatrix} c_1 - \lambda - c_2 & \\ c_2 & -c_4 - \lambda \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (12.50)$$

Quite evidently, λ becomes a function of k , i.e. of the spatial variation (12.41)

$$\lambda = \lambda(k). \quad (12.51)$$

Two limiting cases can be readily obtained, namely

$$k = 0, \quad \lambda = -1, -3 \quad (12.52)$$

and

$$k \rightarrow \infty, \quad \lambda = -1, -1, \quad (12.53)$$

i.e. the steady states are stable. However, in the range $0.085 < k < 0.22$ one value of λ becomes positive, indicating an instability. The authors establish a relationship between this result and the human visual system that is most sensitive to intermediate spatial frequencies. In the numerical experiment, the authors chose a constant spatial input and determined the corresponding spatially uniform resting state that is, of course, non-vanishing now. Then they applied short pulses with a spatial distribution proportional to $\cos(kx)$ that were added to P . For small k , the perturbations had no effect and the system decayed to the uniform equilibrium state and the same was true for large k . For some intermediate values of k , however, even the tiny perturbations led the system to explode into a spatially inhomogeneous state that was asymptotically stable. A typical example of this numerical experiment is shown in Fig. 12.5 from Wilson. An interesting feature of this experiment was that the perturbation giving rise to the spatially structured state had been gone long before the instability erupted. It is this spatially structured instability that gives rise to what is termed a “short-term memory”. These authors as well as others find several kinds of behavior that quite often depend critically on parameter values and the initial preparations. Here we quote the following results:

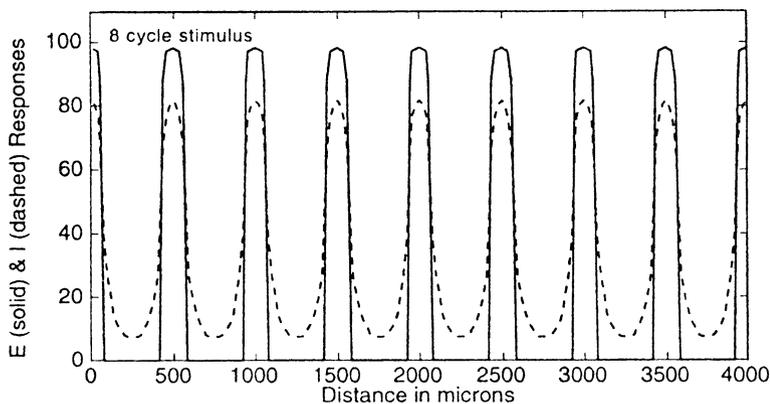


Fig. 12.5. Spatially inhomogeneous steady state triggered by a brief stimulus $0.01 \cos(16\pi x)$ (after Wilson, 1999)

1. “Active transient mode”. A brief spatial stimulus to a restricted area of the network gives rise to a delayed, but very large, amplification of the network response. This effect is explained by the authors as follows: A local recurrent excitation in the network causes excitatory activity to flare up, but this in turn triggers a delayed inhibitory pulse that subsequently extinguishes the network activity.
2. “Spatially localized oscillatory activity”. This activity is produced by a spatial stimulus of some small width. Each peak of this oscillation corresponds to a burst of action potentials. More complex oscillations can be produced by stimuli of greater width.
3. “Travelling waves in response to brief local stimulation”. In this case the same parameters as in the oscillatory mode (2) are used, but with a strongly reduced inhibition in effectiveness by providing a constant inhibitory input to the I cells. Here a pair of travelling waves is generated that are running apart in response to a brief stimulus to the center of the network. These waves originate because the reduced inhibitory activity is not sufficient to counteract the activity generated by recurrent activation. These travelling waves are followed by a refractory area, where the inhibition has built up. Because of this trailing refractory zone, two waves that meet will annihilate one another. The authors argue that travelling waves such as these may occur in epileptic seizures.

12.5 Visual Hallucinations

Though in this book I carefully avoid telling stories, I cannot help starting this section with the following reminiscence of mine. During the 1970s and 1980s I organized a series of meetings on synergetics that brought together scientists from quite different disciplines. The neuromathematician Jack Cowan

attended such a meeting, where he heard of the spontaneous stripe formation in fluids under specific non-equilibrium conditions. This triggered in him an ingenious idea. He remembered that there is a special mapping from the retina to the visual cortex that can be described by a logarithmic map. Such a map transforms several stripes depending on their direction into concentric circles, radial spokes, or spirals. In fact, a variety of drugs can induce hallucinations involving such patterns that are quite stereotypical and to which also checkerboard hallucinations can be added. Thus, according to Ermentraut and Cowan (1979), when a brain is strongly excited, or, in other words, destabilized, neural activity can develop into roughly parallel stripes. Because of the mapping, the subject will perceive them as concentric circles, radial spokes, or spirals. These authors could show that such stripes can be generated by two-dimensional Wilson–Cowan equations by analogy with the patterns we have got to know above in one dimension. Again by analogy with fluid dynamics, where also square patterns are observed, the Wilson–Cowan network can produce such brain activity patterns.

More recent contributions to such patterns of hallucinations have been made in the theoretical work of Tass. Ermentraut provides a detailed summary of the theoretical work on this fascinating phenomenon.

12.6 Jirsa–Haken–Nunez Equations

These equations belong to the class of phase-averaged equations, but in contrast to the Wilson–Cowan equations they take into account the dynamics of axons as well as of dendrites. While Jirsa and Haken interpret the dendritic activity as done throughout my book, Nunez interprets the corresponding quantities as synaptic activities. Since the dendrites carry charges and currents, they are responsible for the generation of the electric and magnetic fields in the brain. Therefore, it is desirable to derive explicit equations for the dynamics of the dendritic currents. The equations derived by Jirsa and Haken on the one hand and Nunez on the other are quite similar, but differ somewhat in the nonlinearities. In the following we will present the Jirsa and Haken version. In the following we will assume that excitatory neurons have only excitatory synapses and inhibitory neurons only inhibitory synapses. Furthermore, we assume that in ensembles of neurons the conversion of axonal pulses into dendritic currents at the synapses is linear, whereas the conversion of dendritic currents into axonal pulses at the somas is sigmoidal, i.e. nonlinear. The spatial distribution range of the dendrites and intracortical fibres is assumed to be very short, only the cortical connections may cause a significant delay via propagation. It is assumed that this delay can be described by means of a constant propagation velocity and the distance. Finally, the external input is modelled so that afferent fibers make synaptic connections. We will distinguish between excitatory and inhibitory dendritic currents ψ using the indices e and i , respectively, and between the pulse

rates of excitatory and inhibitory neurons using E and I , respectively. The connection between the axonal pulse rates and the dendritic currents can then be written in the form

$$\psi_e(x, t) = a_e \int_{\Gamma} f_e(x, x') E(x', t - |x - x'| / v_e) dx' \tag{12.54}$$

and

$$\psi_i(x, t) = a_i I(x, t), \tag{12.55}$$

where a_e, a_i are the corresponding synaptic strengths and f_e is a function that decays with distance

$$f_e(x, x') = \frac{1}{2\sigma} \exp(-|x - x'| / \sigma). \tag{12.56}$$

v_e is the propagation velocity in the axon of the excitatory neurons. These equations are understood as referring to ensembles of neurons. The integration is extended over the area Γ of the neural sheet that in our model we assume is one-dimensional. The conversion of dendritic currents into axonal pulse rates is described by the equations

$$E(x, t) = S_e [\psi_e(x, t) - \psi_i(x, t) + p_e(x, t)] \tag{12.57}$$

and

$$I(x, t) = S_i [\psi_e(x, t) - \psi_i(x, t) + p_i(x, t)], \tag{12.58}$$

where S_e, S_i are the corresponding sigmoidal functions. Because of the linear relationships (12.54) and (12.55), it is a simple matter to eliminate either ψ or E, I .

(1) Elimination of the dendritic currents.

When we insert the expressions (12.54) and (12.55) into the r.h.s. of (12.57) and (12.58), we readily obtain

$$E(x, t) = S_e \left[a_e \int_{\Gamma} f_e(x, x') E(x', t - |x - x'| / v_e) dx' - a_i I(x, t) + p_e(x, t) \right] \tag{12.59}$$

and

$$I(x, t) = S_i \left[a_e \int_{\Gamma} f_e(x, x') E(x', t - |x - x'| / v_e) dx' - a_i I(x, t) + p_i(x, t) \right]. \tag{12.60}$$

These are essentially the Wilson–Cowan equations in their general form, where delays are taken into account, but where now, in our case, the axonal decay time is assumed to be very short.

(2) Elimination of the axonal pulse rates.

In this case, we just have to insert the relations (12.57) and (12.58) into the r.h.s. of (12.54) and (12.55). This yields

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_e(x, t) = a_e \int_{\Gamma} f_e(x, x') S_e & \left[\psi_e(x', t - |x - x'| / v_e) \right. \\ & - \psi_i(x', t - |x - x'| / v_e) \\ & \left. + p_e(x', t - |x - x'| / v_e) \right] dx' \end{aligned} \tag{12.61}$$

and

$$\psi_i(x, t) = a_i S_i [(\psi_e(x, t) - \psi_i(x, t) + p_i(x, t))]. \tag{12.62}$$

Taking into account that the r.h.s. of (12.62) can be well approximated by a linear function, i.e. $S_i(X) \approx \alpha_i X$, we readily obtain

$$\psi_i(x, t) \approx \frac{a_i \alpha_i}{1 + a_i \alpha_i} (\psi_e(x, t) + p_i(x, t)). \tag{12.63}$$

Inserting (12.63) into (12.61), we obtain an equation for the dynamics of the excitatory synaptic activity

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_e(x, t) = a_e \int_{\Gamma} f(x, x') S_e & \left[a \psi_e(x', t - |x - x'| / v_e) \right. \\ & \left. + p(x', t - |x - x'| / v_e) \right] dx', \end{aligned} \tag{12.64}$$

where

$$a = 1 - \frac{a_i \alpha_i}{1 + a_i \alpha_i}, \tag{12.65}$$

and

$$p(x, t) = p_e(x, t) - \frac{a_i \alpha_i}{1 + a_i \alpha_i} p_i(x, t). \tag{12.66}$$

Since the unknown function ψ_e occurs on the r.h.s. of (12.64) under an integral, we have to deal with an integral equation, which is usually a rather complicated task. However, it is possible to convert this equation into a differential equation. To this end, we convert the integral over the spatial coordinates in (12.64) into an equation over both spatial coordinates and time by means of the δ -function

$$\delta(t - t' - |x - x'| / v_e). \tag{12.67}$$

This allows us to express the r.h.s. of (12.64) by means of a Green's function in the form

$$\psi_e(x, t) = \int_{\Gamma} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} G(x - x', t - t') \rho(x', t') dx' dt', \quad (12.68)$$

where the Green's function is given by

$$\bar{G}(x - x', t - t') = \delta(t - t' - |x - x'|/v_e) \frac{1}{2\sigma} e^{-|x - x'|/\sigma}. \quad (12.69)$$

We used the abbreviation

$$\rho(x, t) = S_e [a\psi_e(x, t) + p(x, t)]. \quad (12.70)$$

To proceed further, we introduce the Fourier transforms

$$\psi_e(x, t) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} e^{ikx - i\omega t} \tilde{\psi}_e(k, \omega) dk d\omega, \quad (12.71)$$

$$\rho(x, t) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} e^{ikx - i\omega t} \tilde{\rho}(k, \omega) dk d\omega \quad (12.72)$$

and

$$G(\xi, \tau) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} e^{ik\xi - i\omega\tau} \tilde{G}(k, \omega) dk d\omega \quad (12.73)$$

with the abbreviation

$$\xi = x - x', \quad \tau = t - t'. \quad (12.74)$$

It is well known from the theory of Fourier transforms that a convolution of the form (12.68) transforms into a simple product of the Fourier transforms $\tilde{\psi}_e, \tilde{\rho}, \tilde{G}$,

$$\tilde{\psi}_e(k, \omega) = \tilde{G}(k, \omega) \tilde{\rho}(k, \omega), \quad (12.75)$$

where

$$\tilde{G}(k, \omega) = \frac{\omega_0^2 - i\omega_0\omega}{v_e^2 k^2 - (\omega_0 - i\omega)^2} \quad (12.76)$$

with the abbreviation

$$\omega_0 = \frac{v_e}{\sigma_e}. \quad (12.77)$$

We multiply both sides of (12.75) by the denominator of (12.76). Now again from the theory of Fourier transformation (see also Exercise 1), multiplication of the Fourier transform of a time-dependent function by $i\omega$ corresponds to a time differentiation, whereas multiplication of the Fourier transform of a space-dependent function by k^2 corresponds to the negative second derivative. Thus, when taking the reverse transformation of (12.75) from k, ω space into x, t space, we arrive at the equation

$$\ddot{\psi}_e + (\omega_0^2 - v_e^2 \Delta) \psi_e + 2\omega_0 \dot{\psi}_e = \left(\omega_0^2 + \omega_0 \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \right) \rho(x, t). \quad (12.78)$$

This is a typical wave equation, which depends on a source term $\rho(x, t)$. The difficulty in solving (12.78) arises from the fact that ρ depends on the unknown variable ψ_e in a nonlinear fashion. Thus, in order to solve (12.78), one has to resort to numerical integration. In order to obtain a first insight into the solutions of (12.78), some approximations are required that we will discuss in the next section, where contact with experimental results will be made.

Exercise 1. Show that multiplication of the Fourier transform of a time-dependent function by $i\omega$ corresponds to a time differentiation. Multiplication of the Fourier transform of a space-dependent function by k^2 corresponds to the negative second spatial derivative.

Hint: Use the explicit form of the Fourier transform.

12.7 An Application to Movement Control

In this section, I wish to show how the field (or wave) equation (12.78) of the preceding section can be used to bridge the gap between processes at the neuronal level and macroscopic phenomena that are observed at the behavioral level and at the level of MEG (magnetoencephalogram) recordings. This and related phenomena have been described in extenso in my book “Principles of Brain Functioning” as well as in Kelso’s book “Dynamic Patterns”.

12.7.1 The Kelso Experiment

Kelso et al. exposed a subject to an acoustic signal that was composed of equidistant beeps. The subject had to push a button in between each beep, i.e. in a syncopating manner. The stimulus frequency, i.e. the inverse of the time interval between the beeps, was set to 1 Hz at the beginning and was increased by 0.25 Hz after 10 stimulus repetitions up to 2.25 Hz. Around the frequency of 1.75 Hz, the subject spontaneously and involuntarily switched to a synchronized motion. This switch is termed the “nonequilibrium phase transition”. During this experiment, the magnetic field was measured over the left parieto temporal cortex, namely covering the motor and auditory areas.

Detailed analysis conducted by Fuchs et al. revealed that in the pretransition region the registered brain signals oscillate mainly with the stimulus frequency. The stimulus and the motion response frequencies are locked. Then, at the phase transition point, a switch in behavior occurs. The brain signals now oscillate with twice the stimulus frequency in the post-transition region. Applying a Fourier transformation to the signals and looking at the components of the same frequency as the stimulus, one observes that the phase difference between the stimulus signal and the time series is stable in the pretransition region, but undergoes an abrupt change of π at the transition point and remains stable again in the post-transition region. Near the transition point, typical features of non-equilibrium phase transitions like critical slowing down and critical fluctuations (see Sect. 11.3) are observed in both the behavioral data and the brain signals. In the present context we will not be concerned with these phenomena, however. In order to analyze the spatiotemporal patterns before and after the transition, a basic idea of synergetics was invoked, namely that close to transition points the dynamics even of a complex system is governed by a few dynamic variables, the so-called order parameters. Indeed, a detailed analysis performed by Jirsa et al. showed that the spatiotemporal patterns are dominated by two basic spatial patterns $v_0(\mathbf{x})$ and $v_1(\mathbf{x})$ so that the field pattern over the measured SQUID area can be written in the form

$$q(\mathbf{x}, t) = \xi_0(t)v_0(\mathbf{x}) + \xi_1(t)v_1(\mathbf{x}) + \text{add. terms}, \tag{12.79}$$

where the additional terms contain so-called enslaved modes and represent comparatively small corrections to the first two terms on the r.h.s. of (12.79). The decomposition (12.79) is based on an improvement of the Karhunen–Loève expansion (principal component analysis, singular value decomposition). The observed dynamics of the order parameters ξ_0, ξ_1 and especially its behavior at the transition point was modelled using dynamic equations by Jirsa et al.

$$\underbrace{\ddot{\xi}_0}_{(1)} + \underbrace{\omega_0^2 \xi_0}_{(2)} + \underbrace{\gamma_0 \dot{\xi}_0}_{(3)} + b_0 \underbrace{\xi_0^2}_{(4)} \dot{\xi}_0 + c_0 \underbrace{\xi_1^2}_{(4a)} \dot{\xi}_0 + \epsilon_0 \underbrace{\sin(2\Omega t)}_{(5)} \xi_0 + \delta_0 \underbrace{\sin(\Omega t)}_{(6)} \xi_1^2 + \underbrace{d_0}_{(8)} \dot{\xi}_1 = 0. \tag{12.80}$$

The equations were formulated in an entirely symmetric fashion so that the equation for ξ_1 can be obtained from (12.80) by exchanging the indices 0 and 1 everywhere

$$\text{exchange indices } 0 \leftrightarrow 1. \tag{12.81}$$

The effect of the acoustic signal at frequency Ω enters (12.80) and (12.81) in the form of the terms

$$\sin(2\Omega t)\xi_j, \quad \sin(\Omega t)\xi_j^2. \tag{12.82}$$

In other words, we are dealing here with a nonlinear parameteric oscillator. For practical purposes, it can be shown that two of the coefficients may be assumed to be vanishing

$$d_0 = \delta_1 = 0. \quad (12.83)$$

The obvious question is whether we can recover the equations (12.80)–(12.81) starting from the field equation (12.78). To this end, we proceed in two steps, namely we first study the sensory-motor feedback loop and then study the field equation and its relations to (12.80) and (12.81).

12.7.2 The Sensory-Motor Feedback Loop

We study how the field equations have to be formulated to take the present experiment into account. To this end, we have to specify the external stimuli that enter the field equation. We describe the acoustic stimulus by

$$p_a(x, t) = \beta_a(x) \sin(\Omega t). \quad (12.84)$$

The neural sheet generates a motor signal for the index finger that we write in the form

$$\psi_m(t) = \int \beta_m(x) \psi_e(x, t) dx. \quad (12.85)$$

This motor signal is now conceived as a driving force of the finger causing its displacement $z(t)$. Modelling the finger movement as a harmonic oscillator and assuming the driving force is sinusoidal, we obtain

$$z(t) = \text{const} \cdot \psi_m(t). \quad (12.86)$$

(In an improved version, we might use a Van der Pol oscillator model.) The displacement is signaled through afferent fibers to the neural sheet so that it receives an input in the form

$$p_{sm}(x, t) = \beta_{sm}(x) s_{sm}(t). \quad (12.87)$$

The signal s is proportional to the finger displacement z , but with a delay t_f that we will neglect, however. Taking care of the proportionality between s and z by means of β_{sm} , we may assume

$$s_{sm}(t) = z(t - t_f). \quad (12.88)$$

Putting the feedback loop together, we obtain from (12.87), (12.88), (12.86) a relation of the form

$$p_{sm}(x, t) = d(x) \psi_m(t). \quad (12.89)$$

Note that ψ_m is determined by ψ_e . The factor d is a function of x . Its explicit form is of no relevance here.

12.7.3 The Field Equation and Projection onto Modes

We may now insert the expressions for $p_{\text{ext.}}$ with (12.84) and (12.89) into the field equation (12.78). To proceed further, we make two approximations, namely we assume that ψ_m (12.85) is a small quantity so that it is sufficient to retain only the linear term on the r.h.s. of the field equation (12.78). Furthermore, we assume that the acoustic signal is comparatively fast so that

$$\omega_0^2 \psi_m \ll \omega_0 \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \psi_m \tag{12.90}$$

holds. In this way, the field equation can be cast into the form

$$\begin{aligned} \ddot{\psi}_e + (\omega_0^2 - v_e^2 \Delta) \psi_e + 2\omega_0 \dot{\psi}_e \\ = \left(\omega_0^2 + \omega_0 \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \right) S_e [\alpha \psi_e(x, t) + p_a(x, t)] + \tilde{d}(x) \dot{\psi}_m(t). \end{aligned} \tag{12.91}$$

The function $\tilde{d}(x)$ is proportional to $d(x)$ in (12.89). To proceed further, we approximate the threshold function by means of

$$S_e(X) = \alpha X - \frac{4}{3} \alpha^3 X^3. \tag{12.92}$$

It is now a simple though slightly tedious matter to write down the field equation explicitly, and I leave it as an exercise to the reader to determine the coefficients explicitly

$$\begin{aligned} \underbrace{\ddot{\psi}_e}_{(1)} + \left(\underbrace{\Omega_0^2}_{(2)} - \underbrace{v_e^2}_{(2)} \Delta \right) \psi_e + \underbrace{\gamma \dot{\psi}_e}_{(3)} + A \underbrace{\psi_e^3}_{(3a)} + B \underbrace{\psi_e^2}_{(4)} \dot{\psi}_e + \underbrace{K_1}_{(5)} + \underbrace{K_2}_{(6)} \\ + \underbrace{K_3}_{(7)} + \gamma_1 \underbrace{(x)}_{(8)} \dot{\psi}_m = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{12.93}$$

Some of the linear terms in S_e have the same form as terms that are already present on the l.h.s. of (12.91) so that we may take care of them just by new constants, for instance using the replacement

$$\omega_0 \rightarrow \Omega_0, \dots \tag{12.94}$$

The terms (5), (6) and (7) represent the effect of the acoustic driving signal on the field ψ_e and are specific linear combinations of the following terms:

$$(5) \quad K_1: \quad \sin(2\Omega t) \psi_e, \quad \cos(2\Omega t) \dot{\psi}_e, \quad \cos(2\Omega t) \psi_e; \tag{12.95}$$

$$(6) \quad K_2: \quad \cos(\Omega t) \psi_e^2, \quad \sin(\Omega t) \psi_e \dot{\psi}_e, \quad \sin(\Omega t) \psi_e^2; \tag{12.96}$$

$$(7) \quad K_3: \quad \cos(\Omega t), \quad \sin(\Omega t), \quad \cos(3\Omega t), \quad \sin(3\Omega t). \tag{12.97}$$

In order to compare the field equations (12.93) with the phenomenological equations for the order parameters, we have to make the hypothesis

$$\psi_e(x, t) = \xi_0(t)v_0(\mathbf{x}) + \xi_1(t)v_1(\mathbf{x}). \quad (12.98)$$

Since the corresponding expressions become rather lengthy, we will discuss the further procedure in words. The terms (1), (2) and (3) in (12.80) and (12.81) on the one hand, and in (12.93) on the other, are in a one-to-one correspondence. The role of the term (3a) in (12.93) can best be understood by the decomposition

$$A\psi_e^3 = A\psi_e^2 \cdot \psi_e \leftrightarrow \Omega\psi_e, \quad (12.99)$$

which means that the frequency Ω has become amplitude dependent. As it turns out numerically, this effect is negligible. A little analysis reveals that there is a one-to-one correspondence between the terms (4).

Let us now discuss the further terms (5), (6) and (7). K_1 is parametric excitation at twice the stimulus frequency and corresponding terms can be found in (12.80) and (12.81). K_2 represents a second-order term in ψ_e multiplied by the periodic stimulus. Also this contribution has its correspondence in (12.80) and (12.81). The term K_3 (12.97) is, however, totally absent in the phenomenological model and would lead to a result that is in disagreement with the experimental fact, namely such a term would prohibit the phase transition. The reason is that (12.97) fixes an *absolute* phase and not a *relative* phase between ψ_e and the stimulus. Thus we must conclude that in the neural sheet, because of the inhomogeneous distribution of $\beta(x)$ in (12.84) and (12.85), the corresponding terms cancel when the decomposition (12.98) is used. This can be substantiated by a detailed evaluation of the integrals that occur when (12.93) is projected onto the modes occurring in (12.98). The term (8) in (12.93) finds its correspondence in the terms (3) and (8) of (12.80) and (12.81).

12.7.4 Some Conclusions

A number of lessons can be learned from our approach above. First of all, it shows that basically the field equations can be invoked to model the experiment at the neuronal level. Furthermore, as is known from the detailed study of the phenomenological equations (12.80) and (12.81), the observed phenomena can be reproduced only in specific parameter ranges of the coefficients in these equations. On the other hand, these parameters appear in a disguised form in (12.93), where they stem from the microscopic approach at the neuronal level. In this way in further work microscopic and macroscopic quantities can be connected. Finally, the experiment shows that interesting mechanisms that are not yet fully understood exist to suppress terms like (12.97), mechanisms that probably are connected with the spatial organization. Surely here further work will be needed.

13. The Single Neuron

13.1 Hodgkin–Huxley Equations

In our book, the study of neural nets composed of many neurons is in the foreground of our interest. To this end, we had to make a number of simplifying assumptions on the behavior of individual neurons. In this chapter we want to get acquainted with more precise models of individual neurons, whereby we will focus our attention on the generation of axonal pulses. This will also allow us to judge the approximations we had to make in our network analysis. The fundamental equations describing the generation of action potentials and their spiking property had been established by Hodgkin and Huxley as early as 1952. In Sect. 13.1 we will discuss these equations and some simplifying approaches to them. In order to elucidate the origin of the spiking behavior of the solutions, we will discuss the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations in Sect. 13.2 and then return in Sect. 13.3 to the Hodgkin–Huxley equations and especially to generalizations of them. The axon membrane is a lipid bilayer that may be considered as a thin insulating sheet that can store electric charges like a conventional capacitor. According to electrostatics, the capacitance C , the voltage V across the membrane and the charge on it are related by

$$CV = Q. \quad (13.1)$$

When currents flow between the two sides of the capacitor, as happens in the axon membrane through ion channels, the voltage V changes in the course of time, where the negative time derivative of Q is just the electric current across the membrane

$$C \frac{dV}{dt} = -I. \quad (13.2)$$

The current I is composed of current distributions due to different ions Na, K, due to leakage, and due to an input current I_{input}

$$I = I_{\text{Na}} + I_{\text{K}} + I_{\text{leak}} + I_{\text{input}}. \quad (13.3)$$

The size of the currents is determined by Ohm's law

$$I = g(V - E), \quad (13.4)$$

where g is the electric conductance and E the equilibrium potential of the ion. E is determined by the Nernst equation that can be derived from thermodynamics

$$E = \frac{RT}{zF} \ln(C_{out}/C_{in}) . \quad (13.5)$$

The quantities in (13.5) have the following meaning: C_{out}/C_{in} concentrations of ions outside/inside the cell; R , thermodynamic gas constant; F , Faraday constant; T , absolute temperature; at 20^0 C, $RT/F = 25$ mV; z , valency of an ion.

As a result of their experiments, Hodgkin and Huxley concluded that the conductances are not constant but depend on the membrane potential V and furthermore that they are dynamic quantities that are determined by differential equations of first order. All in all, the Hodgkin–Huxley equations comprise four highly nonlinear differential equations each of first order.

More explicitly, the Hodgkin–Huxley equations are as follows.

The first one corresponds directly to (13.3), where the meaning of the individual terms of (13.6) follows from a comparison between (13.3) and (13.6) term by term.

$$C \frac{dV}{dt} = -g_{Na} m^3 h (V - E_{Na}) - g_K n^4 (V - E_K) - g_{leak} (V - E_{leak}) + I_{input} . \quad (13.6)$$

In (13.6), E_{Na} , E_K , and E_{leak} are the equilibrium potentials (cf. (13.4), (13.5)). The following equations determine the time dependences of m , h , and n :

m : rate of Na conductance channel activation.

$$\frac{dm}{dt} = \frac{1}{\tau_m(V)} (-m + M(V)) . \quad (13.7)$$

h : rate of Na channel inactivation.

$$\frac{dh}{dt} = \frac{1}{\tau_h(V)} (-h + H(V)) . \quad (13.8)$$

n : rate of K channel activation.

$$\frac{dn}{dt} = \frac{1}{\tau_n(V)} (-n + N(V)) . \quad (13.9)$$

Equations (13.7)–(13.9) are all of the same type of relaxation equations, where M , H and N are the equilibrium values and τ_m , τ_h and τ_n are the corresponding relaxation times. All these quantities depend on V . A central problem is, of course, the determination of the mathematical forms of those functions. The functions chosen by Hodgkin and Huxley (1952) were biologically motivated curve-fits to the data, but they were all transcendental functions. A major task consists in simplifying these equations so that they become better tractable. A first important step was made by Rinzel (1985).

He observed that in (13.7) τ_m is so small that one may apply (in the language of dynamical systems) the adiabatic approximation. This implies that we may put $\frac{dm}{dt} = 0$, so that m can be put equal to its equilibrium value $M(V)$ and this value is inserted into (13.6). Furthermore, Rinzel's analysis revealed that in an excellent approximation

$$h = 1 - n . \quad (13.10)$$

This means that Na^+ channel closing, h , occurs at the same rate as but in the opposite direction to K^+ channel opening, n . This allows us to eliminate the equation for h , so according to Rinzel (1985) (13.6)–(13.9) can be reduced to two equations, namely

$$C \frac{dV}{dt} = -g_{Na} M(V)^3 (1 - R) (V - E_{Na}) - g_R R^4 (V - E_K) - g_{leak} (V - E_{leak}) + I . \quad (13.11)$$

The recovery variable R describes both the K^+ channel opening and the Na^+ channel closing. R obeys the equation

$$\frac{dR}{dt} = \frac{1}{\tau_R(V)} (-R + G(V)) , \quad (13.12)$$

where

$$\tau_R = 1 + 5 \exp \left(\frac{-(V + 60)^2}{55^2} \right) .$$

Note that R in (13.11) and (13.12) must not be mixed up with the gas constant R in (13.5).

According to dynamic systems theory, a minimum of two first-order differential autonomous equations are needed to produce oscillatory behavior, or, in the parlance of dynamic systems theory, a limit cycle. In other words, there is no possibility to further reduce the number of equations without losing this fundamental behavior.

It is not difficult to solve (13.11) and (13.12) on a computer using the forms $H(V)$ and $G(V)$ derived from the original Hodgkin–Huxley equations, but, as Wilson (1999) remarks, the mathematical forms for $M(V)$ and $G(V)$ are too complex to provide much analytical insight.

Wilson (1999) succeeded in considerably simplifying Rinzel's equations and retaining an excellent fit to their solutions. Wilson's equations read:

$$C \frac{dV}{dt} = -(17.81 + 47.71 V + 32.63 V^2) \cdot (V - 0.55) - 26.0 R (V + 0.92) + I \quad (13.13)$$

and

$$\frac{dR}{dt} = \frac{1}{\tau_R} (-R + 1.35 V + 1.03) , \quad (13.14)$$

where the capacitance $C = 0.8 \mu\text{F}/\text{cm}^2$ and $\tau_R = 1.9$ ms. The time scale is measured in milliseconds. To obtain the numerical parameter values, Wilson divided the voltage by 100 to keep the parameter values close to unity. Accordingly, the equilibrium potentials are $E_{Na} = 0.55$ (or +55 mV) and $E_K = -0.92$ (or -92 mV), which are the same values as used in (13.11). The input current I is in hundredths of microamperes. For all comparisons with Hodgkin–Huxley’s results the solutions of (13.13) and (13.14) must be multiplied by 100.

A final remark may be in order. In the parlance of synergetics, I plays the role of a control parameter. Depending on its size, the system may show quite different types of behavior, such as resting state or spiking.

Looking at the mathematical structure of the r.h.s., we readily note that the r.h.s. of (13.13) is a polynomial in V up to the third order, while the r.h.s. of (13.14) is a linear function both in R and V . But why do (13.13) and (13.14), which describe a fundamental physical process, describe spiking? To this end, let us consider equations derived later by FitzHugh as well as Nagumo that have a structure quite similar to (13.13) and (13.14), though in that case the physicochemical underpinning is not so evident.

13.2 FitzHugh–Nagumo Equations

The FitzHugh–Nagumo equations read

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \gamma_V \left(V - \frac{V^3}{3} - R + I_{\text{input}} \right), \quad \gamma_V = 10, \quad (13.15)$$

and

$$\frac{dR}{dt} = \gamma_R (-R + 1.25V + 1.5), \quad \gamma_R = 0.8, \quad (13.16)$$

where different authors use somewhat different parameters. In the following we will use those of Wilson. If there is no input,

$$I_{\text{input}} = 0, \quad (13.17)$$

one may show that there is only one equilibrium point for which

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = 0, \quad \frac{dR}{dt} = 0. \quad (13.18)$$

Using (13.18), (13.15) and (13.16), one may readily verify that this point lies at

$$V = -1.5, \quad R = -\frac{3}{8}. \quad (13.19)$$

The conventional stability analysis by means of linearization reveals that this point is stable. A key to the understanding of the behavior of the solutions

to (13.15) and (13.16) lies in the time constants that have a large ratio

$$\gamma_V/\gamma_R = 12.5. \quad (13.20)$$

This implies that V relaxes very quickly, whereas R does so only slowly. In an extreme case that we will discuss first we may assume

$$\frac{dR}{dt} \approx 0, \quad (13.21)$$

so that R in (13.15) may be considered as constant. Yet (13.15) remains a nonlinear equation, whose solutions seem to be difficult to discuss. But a little trick from physics helps a lot, namely we identify the behavior of V as that of the coordinate x of a particle that is subject to a force and whose damping is so large that we may ignore the acceleration term occurring in Newton's law. Actually, we used the same trick above, e.g. in Sect. 11.1. As is known from mechanics, the force can be written as the negative derivative of a potential function W so that we cast (13.15) into the form

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = -\gamma_V \frac{\partial W}{\partial V}. \quad (13.22)$$

As one may readily verify by comparison between (13.22) and (13.15), W is given by

$$W = -\frac{V^2}{2} + \frac{V^4}{12} + (R - I_{\text{input}})V. \quad (13.23)$$

For $I_{\text{input}} = 0$ and $R = -3/8$ (see (13.19)), W is plotted in Fig. 13.1, where the equilibrium value $V = -1.5$ is indicated. When I_{input} is increased, the curve $W(V)$ is tilted more and more to the right. When will the particle leave its left position in Fig. 13.1 and slide down to the right minimum? This requires that the slope

$$\frac{dW}{dV} = -V + \frac{V^3}{3} + (R - I_{\text{input}}) \quad (13.24)$$

is negative everywhere on the r.h.s. of the left minimum, at least until the right minimum of W is reached. To this end, let us look at the extrema of dW/dV . This is a condition on the size of $R - I_{\text{input}}$ that is considered as

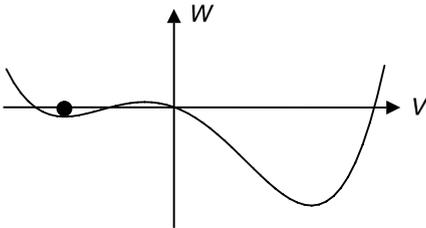


Fig. 13.1. The plot of W (13.23) versus V shows two valleys

a fixed parameter. Because dW/dV depends also on V , we must proceed in two steps. Since dW/dV must be < 0 in the required interval of V , we first determine the value(s) for which dW/dV reaches its maximum.

This maximum (or extremum) lies at (see Fig. 13.2b)

$$\frac{d^2W}{dV^2} = 0, \quad (13.25)$$

from which we deduce

$$V = \pm 1 \quad (13.26)$$

and we find the extremal value

$$\frac{dW}{dV} = \mp \frac{2}{3} + (R - I_{\text{input}}) \quad \text{for } V = \pm 1. \quad (13.27)$$

In the present case, we have to consider

$$V = -1, \quad \frac{dW}{dV} = \frac{2}{3} + (R - I_{\text{input}}). \quad (13.28)$$

The instability of the left position of the particle occurs if

$$\frac{dW}{dV} < 0. \quad (13.29)$$

This implies

$$\frac{2}{3} + R - I_{\text{input}} < 0, \quad (13.30)$$

or using the equilibrium value of R (13.19)

$$R = -\frac{3}{8}, \quad (13.31)$$

so that finally

$$I_{\text{input}} > \frac{7}{24} \approx 0.3. \quad (13.32)$$

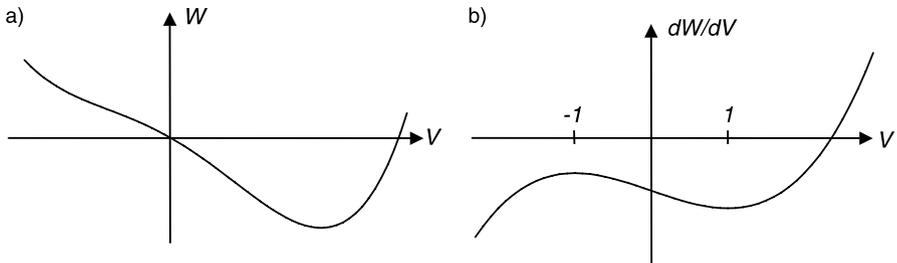


Fig. 13.2. a) For I_{input} large enough, only one valley of $W(V)$ remains. b) For $R - I_{\text{input}}$ sufficiently negative, $dW/dV < 0$ for $V < 1$

A comparison with the exact threshold value of I_{input} shows that (13.32) is of the correct order of magnitude. So let us consider a value of I_{input} that is large enough, and take as an example

$$I_{\text{input}} = 1.5. \quad (13.33)$$

In this case, we find only one steady state

$$V = 0, \quad R = 1.5 \quad (13.34)$$

that is, however, unstable. This can be easily seen by looking at Fig. 13.3. Now look what is happening in such a case. While R can be considered as practically constant, V will quickly move to its equilibrium value that is denoted by V_+ in the figure. As a consequence of this, the r.h.s. of (13.16) becomes large so that

$$\frac{dR}{dt} > 0. \quad (13.35)$$

R increases and this implies that, according to Fig. 13.4, the potential curve is tilted to the l.h.s. V will now move very quickly to V_- , in which case the r.h.s. of (13.16) becomes negative and R decreases

$$\frac{dR}{dt} < 0. \quad (13.36)$$

As a more detailed analysis shows, the changes of R need not be large so as to produce the switch from Fig. 13.2a to 13.4 and back again. On the other hand, the differences between V_+ and V_- may be large, i.e. the action potential can show large changes, or, in other words, spikes. Because the changes needed in R need not be large, in spite of the relatively small constant γ_R , the short time suffices to switch from Fig. 13.2a to Fig. 13.4 and back gain.

It should be noted that these switching times are different, because (13.16) is asymmetric with respect to V because of the additive constant $1.5\gamma_R$. Our above considerations are surely not an exact derivation of the behavior of the solution of the FitzHugh–Nagumo equations, but they may provide the reader with some insight into the origin of that behavior.

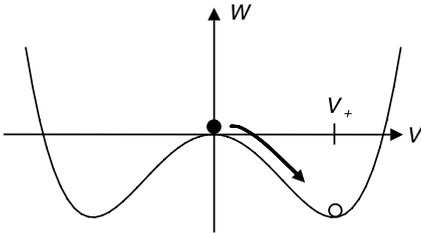


Fig. 13.3. $W(13.23)$ for $R = I_{\text{input}} = 1.5$

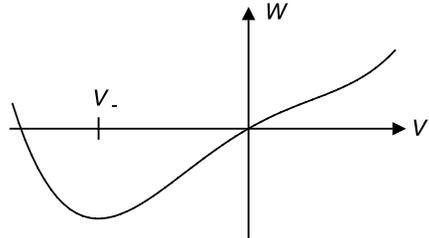


Fig. 13.4. $W(13.23)$ for $R \gg I_{\text{input}}$

13.3 Some Generalizations of the Hodgkin–Huxley Equations

Equations (13.13) and (13.14) provide an accurate and tractable description of the Hodgkin–Huxley equations for action potentials in the squid axon. However, the squid axon is unusual in having only one Na^+ and one K^+ current. As a consequence, the squid axon cannot fire at rates below about 175 spikes/s. It produces only a modest increase in spike rates with increasing input current. The vast majority of neurons in other animals also possess a rapid transient K^+ current that permits the cell to fire at very low spike rates with a long latency to the first spike when the input current is low. This current known as I_a was first characterized and added to the Hodgkin–Huxley model by Connor, Walter and McKown (1977). I_a currents are found in a wide range of neurons, including human and mammalian neocortical neurons. Mathematically speaking, we must alter the original equations (13.13) and (13.14) in such a way that there is a pronounced asymmetry in the switching between Figs. 13.2a and 13.4. It can be shown that this can be achieved by using a quadratic function G in (13.14). Thus, again following Wilson (1999), the corresponding equations read

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dV}{dt} = & - (17.81 + 47.58V + 33.8V^2) (V - 0.48) \\ & - 26R(V + 0.95) + I \end{aligned} \quad (13.37)$$

and

$$\frac{dR}{dt} = \frac{1}{\tau_R} (-R + 1.29V + 0.79 + 0.33(V + 0.38)^2), \quad (13.38)$$

where the constants are given by

$$C = 1.0 \mu\text{F}/\text{cm}^2, \quad \tau_R = 5.6 \text{ ms}. \quad (13.39)$$

We leave it to the reader as an exercise to discuss the effect of the additional quadratic term in (13.38) on switching the size of the r.h.s. of (13.38).

An interesting property of another class of neurons is neural bursting. There is a rapid sequence of spikes that is followed by a refractory period. Then again the same series of spikes is emitted and so on. Do we have any idea how to model that? To this end, consider the role of the input I_{input} . As we have seen before, there is a threshold below which there is no spiking, above which there is spiking. Thus if we let the neuron modulate its effective input, we would obtain just that behavior. In fact, such a behavior can be mimicked by adding a new term to the r.h.s. of (13.37)

$$C \frac{dV}{dt} = \{11.30\} - 0.54H(V + 0.92), \quad (13.40)$$

leaving (13.14) for R unchanged

$$\frac{dR}{dt} = \{13.14\}, \quad (13.41)$$

but introducing a dynamic equation for H in the form

$$\frac{dH}{dt} = \frac{1}{250}(-H + 9.3(V + 0.70)). \quad (13.42)$$

In (13.40), (13.41) we used the abbreviation $\{X\} = \text{r.h.s. of Eq. } (X)$. C in (13.40) is chosen to be 0.8 and the numerical factors in (13.40) differ slightly from those of (13.37). Because the relaxation time of H , 250 ms, is very large, H may change very slowly, which results in the desired slow modulation effect of the effective threshold.

13.4 Dynamical Classes of Neurons

According to Connors and Gutnick (1990), Gutnick and Crill (1995), as well as Gray and McCormick (1996) (see also Wilson (1999)), the mammalian cortex contains four classes of neurons that can be differentiated with respect to the spiking responses to sustained intercellular current injection.

1. Fast spiking cells that are described by (13.37) and (13.38) with $\tau_R = 2.1$ ms.
2. Regular spiking cells. These neurons show spike frequency adaptation, i.e. the spike rate rapidly decreases during continuous stimulation. This effect can be taken care of by adding a further term to (13.37) so that (13.43) results, whereas (13.38) remains unchanged (13.44).

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = \{11.30\} - 13H(V + 0.95), \quad (13.43)$$

$$\frac{dR}{dt} = \{11.31\}. \quad (13.44)$$

However, a new dynamic equation for H is required that has the form

$$\frac{dH}{dt} = \frac{1}{99.0}(-H + 11(V + 0.754)(V + 0.69)). \quad (13.45)$$

Here we used the abbreviation $\{X\}$ defined above.

3. Neocortical bursting cells.
4. Intrinsic bursting cells. Both (3) and (4) must be described by four first-order differential equations, where different parameters must be used to cover (3) or (4). For the purpose of this book it may suffice to quote the first model that is due to Chay and Keizer (1983) as shown above in (13.40)–(13.42). The four first-order differential equations are quite similar in structure to these equations.

13.5 Some Conclusions on Network Models

The classification of neurons makes it possible, at least to some extent, to discuss the approximations that we made in devising the model equations for the neural network. Obviously the fast spiking cells, as described by (13.37) and (13.38), obey the model assumptions quite well. The dynamics of bursting cells can be modelled by treating an individual burst as a thick spike that then in some approximation can be represented again as a thin spike provided the relaxation rates of the process are large compared to the spike width. It should be not too hard to mimic also spike frequency adaptation, though this is beyond the scope of the present book.

14. Conclusion and Outlook

An obvious question for the conclusion may be: What did the reader learn from this book? At the core of it there were two approaches to pulse-coupled neural nets: the lighthouse model and integrate and fire models. I tried a systematic exposition, which made all calculations explicit. So I am sure the reader could follow step by step. Let us first recapitulate our results on the *lighthouse model*. We established the phase-locked state, whereby an important issue is the stability of that state when various parameters are changed. Such parameters are the external (sensory) signals, the synaptic strengths, which may lead to excitatory or inhibitory interactions, and the various delay times. The lighthouse model had the advantage that all the calculations could be done rather easily. In this way, we could discuss the stability limits and also the effect of pulse shortening. The phase-locked state was established by means of a specific initial condition that does not seem unrealistic. We then studied the kind of stability, whether marginal or asymptotic. We recognized that this feature depends on the kind of perturbations, where we studied those that lead only to marginal stability as well as those that lead to asymptotic stability. The *integrate and fire models*, of which we presented several versions, are mathematically more involved. We focussed our attention on the phase-locked or synchronized state that could be evaluated for all the versions presented. We could also solve the more difficult task of determining the stability that in the present case was of asymptotic nature. This implies that once an initial state is close to a synchronized state it will be fully pulled into that state. We discussed the dependence of the stability on the various parameters that are essentially the same as those of the lighthouse model.

An interesting outcome of the study of all these models was the fact that the requirements for the establishment of a steady synchronized state are rather stringent, in particular the sensory signals must be assumed to be the same. This makes the system highly sensitive to the detection of such coincidences. It may also be a reason why in practice no steady states are observed but only transients. All in all we should bear in mind that in brain functioning we are mostly dealing with episodes rather than with steady states.

The reader may further have noted that there is some dichotomy between synchrony on the one hand and associative memory on the other. In our

analysis, the associative memory could be shown to act when we averaged over a number of pulses, i.e. when we looked at *pulse rates*. While for synchronized states we needed the same sensory inputs, in the case of associative memory, at least in general, *different* inputs are needed to obtain, for instance in the visual system, a highly informative image.

Future research may focus on the coexistence or cooperation between synchronized states and those of the associative memory. A first step towards this goal was taken in Sect. 8.12, where we studied the coexistence of synchronized and unsynchronized neuronal groups.

While this was written in the first edition of this book, in the present new edition we carried the treatment of the relationship between synchronization and pattern recognition an important step further. I extended the neural network models treated in the first edition so that synchronization and pattern recognition are covered by the same approach. This new model takes care of the saturation of pulse production, originally described by the Naka–Rushton formula, by a second-order nonlinearity. As we have shown, the phenomenon of synchronization is again covered. However, a special form of the nonlinearity guarantees the existence of attractors, which are essential for a precise discrimination of patterns in their recognition. Taking our results together, we arrive at the following conclusion: While synchronization (or more generally, phase locking) indicates the existence of (roughly) the same features in different visual fields, synchronization breaks down when a precise discrimination between different patterns is needed. Here then the attractor (or quasi-attractor) mechanism must take over.

Besides models resting on axonal spikes, we also treated models referring to spike rates, as well as those which use a sinusoidal coupling. Synchronization seems not only to be an important process in the visual cortex, but also in other parts of the brain causing, e.g. Parkinson's disease. Here progress has been made in its study and, at least partly, in its treatment.

Figure 14.1 shows some more recent remarkable results due to Tass et al. (1999).

In conclusion I may state that some important first steps have been taken towards the exploration of the fascinating phenomenon of spike-synchronization, but also that the field is wide open for further experimental and theoretical research. We must also be aware of the fact that spike-synchronization is just *one* aspect of a wealth of cooperative effects in the neural networks of human and animal brains and that we still need much wider perspectives. To this end, I include a few references for further reading.

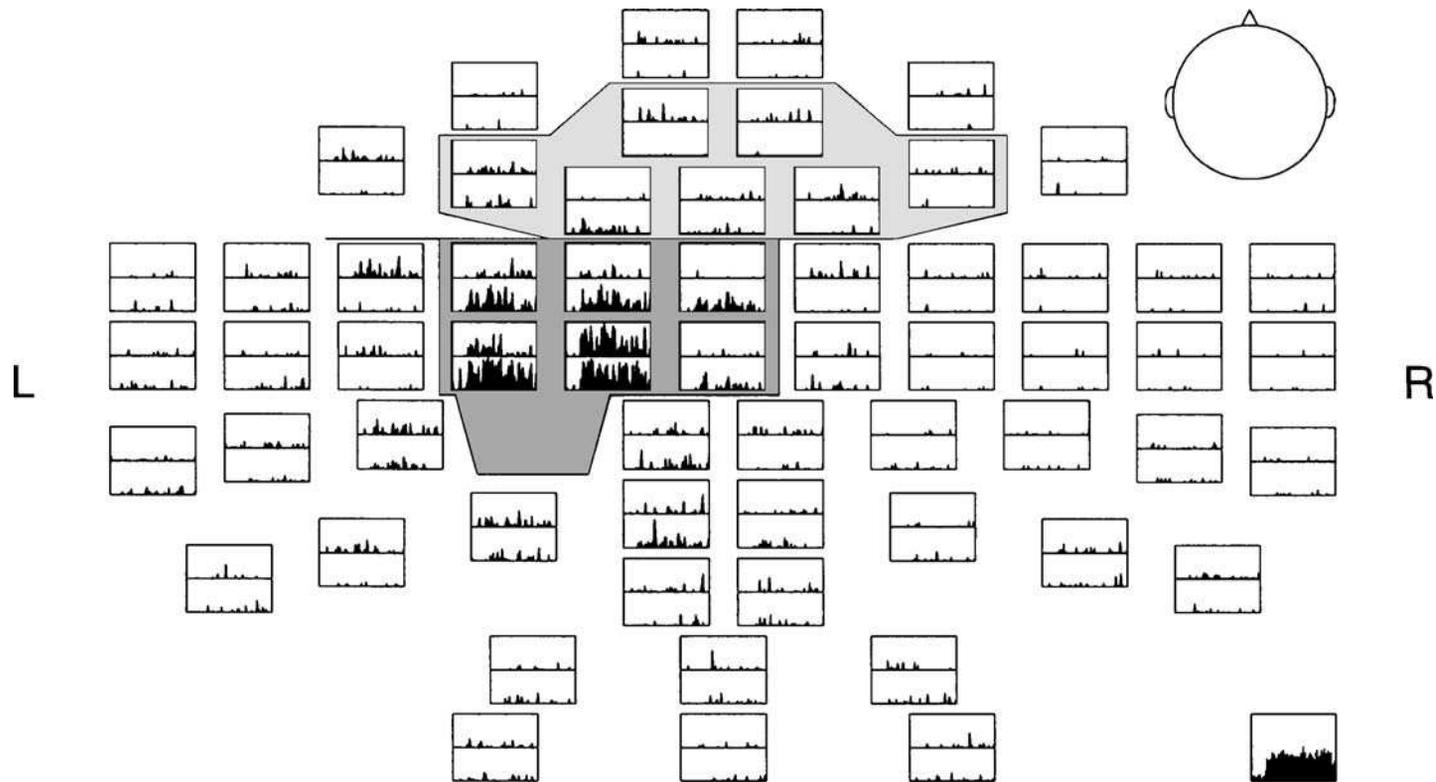


Fig. 14.1. MEG measurements of the cortex during Parkinson tremor. The *shaded areas* exhibit a strong correlation in the sense of phase locking (after Tass et al. (1998))

15. Solutions to Exercises

Section 4.4, Exercise

This problem is a special case of Exercise 1 in Sect. 7.3.

Section 4.7, Exercise

In (4.113) we exchange the integrations and the average $\langle \dots \rangle$ and use (4.109) so that

$$(4.113) = \int_{t_0}^t d\sigma \int_{t_0}^{t'} d\sigma' e^{-\gamma(t-\sigma)} e^{-\gamma'(t-\sigma')} \delta(\sigma - \sigma') Q, \quad (1.1)$$

where δ is the Dirac function.

For $t \geq t'$ we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} &= e^{-\gamma(t+t')} \int_{t_0}^t e^{2\gamma\sigma} d\sigma Q \\ &= \frac{Q}{2\gamma} \left(e^{-\gamma(t-t')} - e^{-\gamma(t+t'-2t_0)} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (1.2)$$

For $t, t' \gg t_0$ we obtain (4.114). For $t' \geq t$ the same result is obtained with t and t' exchanged.

Section 4.8.3, Exercise

We eliminate $n_2 = 1 - n_1$ from (4.121)

$$\frac{dn_1}{dt} = w_{12} - (w_{21} + w_{12})n_1 + F_1(t). \quad (1.1)$$

The general solution of (1.1) reads

$$n_1(t) = n_1(t_0) e^{-(w_{21} + w_{12})(t - t_0)} + \int_{t_0}^t e^{-(w_{21} + w_{12})(t - \tau)} (w_{12} + F_1(\tau)) d\tau, \quad (1.2)$$

which under steady-state conditions, i.e. $t \gg t_0$, reduces to

$$n_1(t) = \int_{t_0}^t e^{-(w_{21} + w_{12})(t - \tau)} (w_{12} + F_1(\tau)) d\tau. \quad (1.3)$$

We use $J = e^{\frac{dn_1}{dt}}$, the fact that $\frac{dn_1}{dt}$ is given by the right-hand-side (r.h.s.) of (1.1) and form

$$K = \langle J(t_1) J(t_2) \rangle. \quad (1.4)$$

We obtain

$$K/e^2 = I + II + III, \quad (1.5)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \langle (w_{12} + F_1(t_1)) (w_{12} + F_1(t_2)) \rangle, \\ II &= (w_{12} + w_{21})^2 \langle n_1(t_1) n_1(t_2) \rangle, \\ III &= -(w_{21} + w_{12}) \langle (w_{12} + F_1(t_1)) n_1(t_2) \\ &\quad + (w_{12} + F_1(t_2)) n_1(t_1) \rangle. \end{aligned} \quad (1.6)$$

Using results analogous to the exercise in Sect. 4.7, we obtain (for $t_1 > t_2$)

$$I = w_{12}^2, \quad (1.7)$$

$$II = w_{12}^2 + \frac{1}{2} Q_{11} (w_{21} + w_{12}) e^{-(w_{21} + w_{12})(t_1 - t_2)} \quad (1.8)$$

and

$$III = -2 w_{12}^2. \quad (1.9)$$

The following intermediate results are needed.

From (4.128) and $\langle n_1 \rangle + \langle n_2 \rangle = 1$ we obtain

$$\langle n_1 \rangle = \frac{w_{12}}{w_{21} + w_{12}} \quad (1.10)$$

and from (4.126) and (1.9)

$$Q_{11} = \frac{2 w_{21} w_{12}}{w_{12} + w_{12}}. \quad (1.11)$$

All together, (1.5) becomes

$$K/e^2 = w_{21} w_{12} e^{-(w_{21} + w_{12})(t_1 - t_2)} \text{ for } t_1 > t_2. \quad (1.12)$$

The case $t_2 > t_1$ is obtained from (1.12) by exchanging t_1 and t_2 .

According to (1.12), the correlation function of the current is given by the product of the rates in, w_{12} , and out, w_{21} , e^2 (the electric charge squared) and a relaxation function. The correlation function contains a singularity at $t_1 = t_2$ which is omitted here.

Section 4.9.3, Exercise 1

We use $\cos(\alpha + \beta) = \cos \alpha \cos \beta - \sin \alpha \sin \beta$ in (4.157), where we identify (in each term)

$$\alpha = \omega k t, \beta = \phi_k. \quad (1.1)$$

We obtain

$$x(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} c_k \cos \phi_k \cos(\omega k t) - \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} c_k \sin \phi_k \sin(\omega k t). \quad (1.2)$$

a_k, b_k and c_k are related by the equations

$$a_k = c_k \cos \phi_k, b_k = -c_k \sin \phi_k \quad (1.3)$$

as well as by their inverse

$$a_k^2 + b_k^2 = c_k^2, \phi_k = \arccos(a_k/c_k). \quad (1.4)$$

Section 4.9.3, Exercise 2

We want to evaluate

$$P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\cos(\Omega\tau + \phi)}{\tau - t} d\tau. \quad (2.1)$$

We make the substitution

$$\Omega\tau + \phi = \sigma, \quad (2.2)$$

which leads to

$$(2.1) = P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\cos \sigma}{\sigma - (\Omega t + \phi)} d\sigma. \quad (2.3)$$

We compare (2.1) with (4.164) and conclude that in (4.171) we have to replace t by $\Omega t + \phi$ everywhere.

Section 4.9.3, Exercise 3

In

$$P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\cos \sigma}{\sigma} d\sigma \quad (3.1)$$

we replace the integration variable $\sigma \rightarrow -\sigma$. This yields

$$-P \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{\cos \sigma}{\sigma} d\sigma. \quad (3.2)$$

On the other hand, a change of integration variable does not change the value of the integral. Thus,

(3.2) = (3.1),
 which requires that (3.1) = 0.

Section 4.9.3, Exercise 4We use for $x(t)$ the explicit form (4.157) and for each term (4.171).**Section 4.11, Exercise**

To solve (4.216) we use the method of separation of variables, putting

$$\dot{r} = \frac{dr}{dt} \approx \frac{\Delta r}{\Delta t}, \quad \lim \Delta t \rightarrow 0.$$

We obtain

$$\frac{dr}{(r-a)r} = -dt.$$

We integrate both sides over dr and dt , respectively, where we use

$$\frac{1}{(r-a)r} = \frac{1}{a} \left(\frac{1}{r-a} - \frac{1}{r} \right)$$

and obtain

$$\frac{1}{a} \cdot (\ln(r-a) - \ln r - \ln(r_0-a) + \ln(r_0)) = -(t-t_0)$$

or

$$\ln \left(\frac{r-a}{r} \right) - \ln \left(\frac{r_0-a}{r_0} \right) = -a(t-t_0).$$

Exponentiation of both sides and solving the resulting equation yield (4.217).

Section 5.3, Exercise

(a) We insert

$$\dot{\chi}(t_n + \varepsilon) = e^{-\gamma t_n} \cdot \eta_n \quad (1.1)$$

in (5.40);

$$e^{-\gamma t_{n+1}} \eta_{n+1} = e^{-\gamma t_n} \eta_n e^{-\gamma(t_{n+1}-t_n)} + A. \quad (1.2)$$

We multiply both sides by $e^{+\gamma(t_{n+1}-\varepsilon)}$ and rearrange

$$\eta_{n+1} - \eta_n = a_{n+1}, \quad (1.3)$$

where

$$a_{n+1} = A e^{\gamma(t_{n+1}+\varepsilon)}.$$

We sum both sides of (1.3) over $n = 0, \dots, N-1$ and obtain

$$\eta_N - \eta_0 = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} a_{n+1} \quad (1.4)$$

or explicitly

$$\eta_N = A \cdot \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} e^{\gamma t_{n+1}} + \eta_0. \quad (1.5)$$

(b) Using (1.5), we identify α in

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} e^{-\alpha n} \quad \text{as} \\ \alpha = -\gamma \Delta \quad (1.6)$$

so that eventually

$$\dot{\chi}(t_n) = A e^{-\gamma t_n} (1 - e^{\gamma \Delta n}) (1 - e^{\gamma \Delta})^{-1} e^{\gamma \Delta}, \quad t_n = n \Delta, \eta_0 = 0. \quad (1.7)$$

To obtain the steady state, we let

$$n = t_n / \Delta \rightarrow \infty,$$

which yields (5.43).

Section 6.4, Exercise 1

We form on both sides of (6.58) the scalar product with \mathbf{v}_ν^+ :

$$(\mathbf{v}_\nu^+ \mathbf{w}) = \sum_{\mu} \alpha_{\mu} (\mathbf{v}_\nu^+ \mathbf{v}_\mu)$$

which because of (6.57) reduces to (6.60) with ν replacing μ .

The same procedure with (6.59) leads to (6.61).

Section 6.4, Exercise 2

We insert (6.58) and (6.59) on both sides of (6.54)

$$(1 - \tilde{A}) \sum_{\mu} \alpha_{\mu} \mathbf{v}_{\mu} = \sum_{\mu} \beta_{\mu} \mathbf{v}_{\mu}, \quad (2.1)$$

pull $(1 - \tilde{A})$ under the sum and use (6.53):

$$\sum_{\mu} \alpha_{\mu} (1 - \lambda_{\mu}) \mathbf{v}_{\mu} = \sum_{\mu} \beta_{\mu} \mathbf{v}_{\mu}. \quad (2.2)$$

Multiplying both sides by \mathbf{v}_{ν}^+ and using (6.56) yields (6.62) with the solution (6.63).

Section 6.11, Exercise 1

We recall the definition and use of a Green's function in the case of a differential equation of the form

$$L K(t, t') = \delta(t - t'), \quad (1.1)$$

where L is a linear differential operator, e.g. of the form $L = \frac{d}{dt} + \gamma$ or $L = (\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma_1)(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma_2)$ etc. Then the solution $g(t)$ of the inhomogeneous equation

$$Lg(t) = f(t), \quad (1.2)$$

where $f(t)$ is an arbitrary function, can be written as

$$g(t) = \int_{t_0}^t K(t, t') f(t') dt. \quad (1.3)$$

Depending on the initial conditions a solution of the homogeneous equation

$$Lg(t) = 0 \quad (1.4)$$

must be added.

Now we turn to difference equations of the form

$$Lg_n = f_n \quad (1.5)$$

on discrete indices $n = 1, 2, \dots$, L is a linear operator which shifts indices, e.g. $g_n \rightarrow g_{n+m}$, multiplies by a constant and sums up.

An example is provided by (6.173) (where ξ is replaced by g):

$$Lg_n \equiv g_{n+1} - e^{-\gamma\Delta} g_n - a g_{n-M}. \quad (1.6)$$

Then the solution to

$$LG_{n,n'} = \delta_{n,n'} \quad (1.7)$$

is the wanted Green's function. It allows us to write the solution to (1.5) in the form

$$g_n = \sum_{n'} G_{n,n'} f_{n'} . \tag{1.8}$$

Section 6.11, Exercise 2

We use (6.206)–(6.209) and obtain from (6.200)

$$\langle \xi_N^{(\mu)} \xi_{N'}^{(\mu')} \rangle = Q^{(\mu,\mu')} \sum_{j,j'=1}^{M+1} d_{j,\mu} d_{j',\mu'} \bullet \beta_{j,\mu}^{N-(n+1)} \beta_{j',\mu'}^{N'-(n+1)} . \tag{2.1}$$

Section 6.11, Exercise 3

In (6.171) we choose in $K = (K_{mm'})$

$$K_{mm'} = \delta_{l,m} \delta_{l',m'} , \tag{3.1}$$

which yields on the left-hand side (l.h.s.) of (6.171)

$$\langle \xi_{N,l} \xi_{N',l'} \rangle , \tag{3.2}$$

which, of course, includes the special case $l = l'$. On the r.h.s. of (6.171) we first obtain

$$(\mathbf{v}_\mu K \mathbf{v}_{\mu'}) \equiv \sum_{mm'} v_{\mu m} K_{mm'} v_{\mu' m'} = v_{\mu l} v_{\mu' l'} . \tag{3.3}$$

The final result is

$$(3.2) = \sum_{\mu \mu'} v_{\mu l} v_{\mu' l'} \langle \xi_N^{(\mu)} \xi_{N'}^{(\mu')} \rangle , \tag{3.4}$$

where (2.1) can be inserted.

Section 6.12, Exercise

We have to solve the differential equation

$$\frac{dt}{dn} = \frac{2\pi}{(A - 2\pi\gamma)n + const} . \tag{1.1}$$

Separation of variables leads to

$$dt = \frac{2\pi \, dn}{(A - 2\pi\gamma)n + const} \tag{1.2}$$

and after integration on both sides over dt and dn , respectively, to

$$t - t_0 = \frac{2\pi}{(A - 2\pi\gamma)} \ln ((A - 2\pi\gamma)n + \text{const}) - C,$$

which for large n (i.e. $(A - 2\pi\gamma)n \gg \text{const}$) and a slight rearrangement of terms leads to (6.227) with $t = t_n$.

Section 7.3, Exercise 1

The desired equation reads

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma_1\right) \left(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma_2\right) K(t, t_0) = \delta(t - t_0), \quad (1.1)$$

where K must be differentiable and thus continuous everywhere. For the proof we put

$$K(t, t_0) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < t_0 \\ A e^{-\gamma_1 t} + B e^{-\gamma_2 t} & \text{for } t \geq t_0 \end{cases}. \quad (1.2)$$

For $t < t_0$, $K = 0$ fulfills the homogeneous (1.1) trivially.

For $t \geq t_0$ we have

$$\left(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma_1\right) \left(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma_2\right) e^{-\gamma_2 t} = \left(\frac{d}{dt} + \gamma_1\right) \cdot 0 = 0$$

and for $e^{-\gamma_1 t}$ correspondingly.

To determine A and B in (1.2) we integrate both sides of (1.1) over the interval

$$t \in (t_0 - \varepsilon, t_0 + \varepsilon), \quad \varepsilon \rightarrow 0.$$

On the l.h.s. of (1.1) the individual terms read

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{t_0 - \varepsilon}^{t_0 + \varepsilon} \frac{d^2}{dt^2} K(t, t_0) dt &= \frac{dK(t, t_0)}{dt} \Big|_{t_0 - \varepsilon}^{t_0 + \varepsilon} \\ &= A(-\gamma_1) e^{-\gamma_1 t_0} + B(-\gamma_2) e^{-\gamma_2 t_0}, \end{aligned} \quad (1.3)$$

$$\begin{aligned} (\gamma_1 + \gamma_2) \int_{t_0 - \varepsilon}^{t_0 + \varepsilon} \frac{d}{dt} K(t, t_0) dt &= (\gamma_1 + \gamma_2) K(t, t_0) \Big|_{t_0 - \varepsilon}^{t_0 + \varepsilon} \\ &= (\gamma_1 + \gamma_2) (A e^{-\gamma_1 t_0} + B e^{-\gamma_2 t_0} - 0) \end{aligned} \quad (1.4)$$

and

$$\gamma_1 \gamma_2 \int_{t_0 - \varepsilon}^{t_0 + \varepsilon} K(t, t_0) dt \propto \varepsilon \rightarrow 0. \quad (1.5)$$

The r.h.s. of (1.1) yields (definition of the δ -function!)

$$\int_{t_0-\varepsilon}^{t_0+\varepsilon} \delta(t-t_0) dt = 1. \quad (1.6)$$

Because of the continuity of K everywhere, (1.4) must vanish

$$(\gamma_1 + \gamma_2)(Ae^{-\gamma_1 t_0} + Be^{-\gamma_2 t_0}) = 0. \quad (1.7)$$

Then (1.3) + (1.5) must equal (1.6), which leads to

$$-\gamma_1 A e^{-\gamma_1 t} - \gamma_2 B e^{-\gamma_2 t} = 1. \quad (1.8)$$

The (unique) solution to (1.7) and (1.8) reads

$$A = \frac{1}{\gamma_2 - \gamma_1} e^{\gamma_1 t_0}, \quad B = -\frac{1}{\gamma_2 - \gamma_1} e^{\gamma_2 t_0} \quad (1.9)$$

so, eventually,

$$K(t, t_0) = \frac{1}{\gamma_2 - \gamma_1} \left(e^{-\gamma_1(t-t_0)} - e^{-\gamma_2(t-t_0)} \right), \quad t \geq t_0. \quad (1.10)$$

Section 7.3, Exercise 2

We use (1.10) of the foregoing exercise, put $1/\tau_j = \gamma_j$ and let $\gamma_1 \rightarrow \gamma_2 = \gamma$. To this end we differentiate numerator and denominator with respect to γ_1 and obtain

$$K(t, t_0) = (t - t_0) e^{-\gamma(t-t_0)} \text{ for } t \geq t_0, \quad = 0 \text{ for } t < t_0.$$

Section 7.3, Exercise 3

We start from (6.1) for the dendritic currents $\psi_m(t)$ without fluctuating forces and delays, τ_{mk} . The solution to (6.1) reads

$$\psi_m(t) = \int_0^t e^{-\gamma(t-t')} \sum_k a_{mk} P_k(t') dt'. \quad (3.1)$$

We put $a_{mk} = a'_{mk} \gamma$, a'_{mk} finite, and consider the limit $\gamma \rightarrow \infty$. We claim that

$$g(t) \equiv \lim_{\gamma \rightarrow \infty} \gamma e^{-\gamma(t-t')} dt \stackrel{!}{=} \delta(t-t'), \quad t \geq t'. \quad (3.2)$$

Proof:

$$1. \quad g(t) = 0 \text{ for } (t - t') \neq 0 \quad (3.3)$$

$$2. \quad \gamma \int_{t-\varepsilon}^t e^{-\gamma(t-t')} dt' = 1 - e^{-\varepsilon\gamma} \rightarrow 1 \text{ for } \gamma \rightarrow \infty \quad (3.4)$$

Using $P_k = \delta(t - t_{kj})$ and (3.2) in (3.1) yields

$$\psi_m(t) = \int_0^t (t - t') \sum_k a'_{mk} \sum_n \delta(t' - t_{nk}) dt', \quad (3.5)$$

$$= \sum_k a'_{mk} \delta(t - t_{nk}), \quad (3.6)$$

which contain the desired result as a special case.

Section 7.3, Exercise 4

$$\begin{aligned} & \dot{\phi}_2 + \gamma' \phi_j - 2\pi\gamma' \sum_{n \geq 1} H(\phi_j - 2\pi n) \\ &= \sum_{k \neq j} \sum_{n \geq 1} A_{jk} (H(\phi_k - 2\pi n) - H(\phi_j - 2\pi(n+1))) + p. \end{aligned}$$

Section 8.5, Exercise 1

Consult the solution to Exercise 2 in Sect. 10.2.

Section 8.8, Exercise

It is sufficient to consider

$$\frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1}. \quad (1.1)$$

We expand

$$\frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1} = - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (\beta e^{\gamma\Delta})^n \quad \text{if } |\beta e^{\gamma\Delta}| < 1 \quad (1.2)$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma\Delta} - 1} &= \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma\Delta}} \frac{1}{1 - (\beta e^{\gamma\Delta})^{-1}} \\ &= \frac{1}{\beta e^{\gamma\Delta}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (\beta e^{\gamma\Delta})^{-n} \quad \text{if } |\beta e^{\gamma\Delta}| > 1. \end{aligned} \quad (1.3)$$

Equation (1.2) or (1.3) contains expressions of the type (8.174).

Section 8, Appendix 2, Exercise

1. The fractal derivative of $(x - c)^{-n}$, $n > 0$, is obtained by the substitution $x - c = z$, application of the “hint”, using $\frac{d^\alpha}{dx^\alpha} \frac{d^{n-1}}{dx^{n-1}} = \frac{d^{\alpha+n-1}}{dx^{\alpha+n-1}}$ and reversing the substitution $x - c = z$:

$$\frac{d^\alpha}{dx^\alpha} (x - c)^{-n} = (-1)^{\alpha+n-1} (\alpha + n - 1) x^{-\alpha-n}. \quad (1.1)$$

2. We make the substitution

$$x - c = z, \quad (x - c)^{-1} e^{-ax} \rightarrow z^{-1} e^{-az} e^{-ac}, \quad \frac{d^\alpha}{dx^\alpha} \rightarrow \frac{d^\alpha}{dz^\alpha} \quad (1.2)$$

apply (8.190),

$$e^{-ac} z^{-\alpha-1} \int_{-\infty}^{\lambda/z} y^\alpha e^y dy, \quad (1.3)$$

and reverse the substitution:

$$\frac{d^\alpha}{dx^\alpha} (x - c)^{-1} e^{-ax} = e^{-ac} (x - c)^{-\alpha-1} \int_{-\infty}^{\lambda/(x-c)} y^\alpha e^y dy. \quad (1.4)$$

3. We decompose $(x - c_1)^{-1} (x - c_2)^{-1}$ into

$$(c_1 - c_2)^{-1} \left((x - c_1)^{-1} - (x - c_2)^{-1} \right)$$

and apply step 2.

Section 9.4, Exercise, Example 1

Here we choose the prototype patterns as individual points along a line or on a grid, where the label j denotes the individual pixels on the grid:

$$v_j^k = \delta_{kj} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } k = j \\ 0 & \text{for } k \neq j \end{cases}. \quad (1.1)$$

The adjoint vectors are given by

$$v_j^{k+} = \delta_{kj}. \quad (1.2)$$

Clearly (1.1) and (1.2) fulfill the normalization condition

$$\sum_j \delta_{kj}^2 = 1 \quad (1.3)$$

and the orthonormality conditions

$$\sum_j \delta_{kj} \delta_{k'j} = \delta_{kk'}, \quad (1.4)$$

as well as

$$\sum_k \delta_{kj} \delta_{kj'} = \delta_{jj'}. \quad (1.5)$$

Inserting (1.1) and (1.2) into our standard equation

$$\dot{q}_j = q_j \left(\lambda - \sum_{k,j'} v_j^{k+} q_{j'} \right) + C \sum_k v_j^k \left(\sum_{j'} v_{j'}^{k+} q_{j'} \right)^2, \quad (1.6)$$

we obtain

$$\dot{q}_j = q_j \left(\lambda - \sum_{j'} q_{j'} \right) + C q_j^2. \quad (1.7)$$

A comparison with our previous results, (9.41), shows that q_j replaces x_k . In particular we find the stable fixed points

$$q_{j_0} = \frac{\lambda}{1-C}, \text{ all other } q_j = 0. \quad (1.8)$$

Here the index j_0 may be any of the pixel indices. As one may show by solving (1.7), a diffuse initial distribution $q_j(0)$ with its center at some pixel point j_0 reduces in the course of time to just the corresponding fixed point. This example shows how precise the discrimination properties of the synergetic computer of type II are.

Section 9.4, Exercise, Example 2

The adjoint vectors (v_j^{k+}) must obey

$$\sum_{j=0}^{L-1} v_j^{k+} v_j^{k'} = \delta_{kk'} \quad (2.1)$$

and read

$$v_j^{0+} = -\frac{2}{L} \sum_{k=1}^{L-1} \cos(\hat{k}j) + \frac{1}{L} \tag{2.2}$$

and

$$v_j^{k+} = \frac{2}{L} \cos(\hat{k}j), \quad k \geq 1. \tag{2.3}$$

Sums as in $\sum_{k=0}^{L-1} v_j^{k+}$, (1.9), etc. can easily be evaluated by decomposing the function

$$\cos kj = \frac{1}{2}(e^{ikj} + e^{-ikj}),$$

and using

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=0}^{L-1} a^k &= (a^L - 1)(a - 1)^{-1} \quad \text{for } a \neq 1 \\ &= L \quad \text{for } a = 1. \end{aligned}$$

The equations for \dot{q}_j read

$$\dot{q}_j = q_j \left(\lambda - \frac{1}{L} \sum_{j'=0}^{L-1} q_{j'} \right) + C \sum_k v_j^k \left(\sum_{j'} v_{j'}^{k+} q_{j'} \right)^2, \tag{2.4}$$

where the last sum over k can also be explicitly evaluated to yield

$$\frac{C}{L} \sum_{j',j''=0}^{L-1} q_{j'} q_{j''} \delta_{\pm j \pm j' \pm j'', 0}. \tag{2.5}$$

Note that because of the Kronecker δ only few terms in (2.5) contribute.

Section 9.5, Exercise 1

We put

$$g_j(t') = q_j(t) \tag{1.1}$$

and differentiate both sides with respect to t' .

$$\frac{dg_j(t')}{dt'} = \frac{dq_j(t)}{dt} \cdot \frac{dt}{dt'} = \frac{dq_j(t)}{dt} e^{\gamma t}. \tag{1.2}$$

Inserting (9.94) on the r.h.s. of (1.2) and using (9.99) we obtain

$$(1.2) = \sum_{j'} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'} g_{j'}(t') + \gamma t' \sum_{j'j''} \tilde{\lambda}_{jj'j''} g_{j'} g_{j''},$$

i.e. (9.100).

Section 9.5, Exercise 2

We assume, as everywhere in this book, that the matrix $A = (\lambda_{jj'})$ can be diagonalized with eigenvectors \mathbf{v}^k and their adjoints \mathbf{v}^{k+} as well as with eigenvalues λ_k .

$$\lambda_{jj'} = \sum_k \lambda_k v_j^k v_{j'}^{k+}. \quad (2.1)$$

The vectors \mathbf{v}^{k+} , \mathbf{v}^k are orthonormal and complete.

$$(\mathbf{v}^{k+} \mathbf{v}^{k'}) \equiv \sum_j v_j^{k+} v_j^{k'} = \delta_{kk'}, \quad \sum_k v_j^{k+} v_{j'}^k = \delta_{jj'}. \quad (2.2)$$

We define the order parameters ξ_k by means of the scalar product

$$\xi_k = (\mathbf{v}^{k+} \mathbf{g}) = \sum_j v_j^{k+} g_j. \quad (2.3)$$

Because of (2.2), the inverse of (2.3) is given by

$$\mathbf{g}(t') = \sum_k \xi_k(t') \mathbf{v}^k. \quad (2.4)$$

We insert (2.4) on the r.h.s. of (9.100), then multiply both sides of (9.100) by \mathbf{v}^{k+} and sum over k on both sides of the resulting equation.

Using (2.2)–(2.4) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\xi_k(t')}{dt'} &= \sum_j v_j^{k+} \sum_{k'} \sum_{j'} v_j^{k'} \lambda_k v_{j'}^{k'+} g_{j'} + \gamma t' \sum_j v_j^{k+} \\ &\quad \times \sum_{j'j''} \lambda_{jj'j''} \sum_{k'} \xi_{k'} v_{j'}^{k'} \sum_{k''} \xi_{k''} v_{j''}^{k''}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.5)$$

In the first expression on the r.-h.s. of (2.5) we apply (2.2, 3), in the second expression we introduce the abbreviation

$$G_{kk'k''} = \gamma \sum_{jj'j''} v_j^{k+} v_{j'}^{k'} v_{j''}^{k''} \lambda_{jj'j''}. \quad (2.6)$$

We obtain as final result

$$\frac{d\xi_k(t')}{dt'} = \lambda_k \xi_k + t' \sum_{k'k''} G_{kk'k''} \xi_{k'} \xi_{k''}. \quad (2.7)$$

Note: In the spirit of Synergetics we speak of order parameters only, if the corresponding λ_k are nonnegative ($\lambda_k \geq 0$), which is implicitly assumed here. If $\lambda_k < 0$ we are dealing with “enslaved modes”.

Section 9.5, Exercise 3

In the case of a single order parameter, (9.100) reads (cf. (2.7)) with index k dropped

$$\frac{d\xi}{dt'} = \lambda\xi + t'G\xi^2. \quad (3.1)$$

According to exercise 5 below, the solution to (3.1) is given by

$$\xi(t') = e^{\lambda t'} f_1(t') \quad (3.2)$$

where in (5.3) we have to identify t with t' and C' with $-G$.

Section 9.5, Exercise 4

Under the assumption

$$x_2 < x_1 \quad (4.1)$$

we may use

$$D \approx x_1 \quad (4.2)$$

so that (*) and (**) acquire the forms

$$\dot{x}_1 = x_1(\lambda - C'x_1) \quad (4.3)$$

and

$$\dot{x}_2 = x_2(\lambda - x_1), \quad (4.4)$$

where

$$0 < C' \equiv 1 - C < 1. \quad (4.5)$$

Making the hypothesis

$$x_j(t) = e^{\lambda t} f_j(t), \quad (4.6)$$

we transform (4.3) and (4.4) into

$$\dot{f}_1 = -C' e^{\lambda t} f_1^2 \quad (4.7)$$

and

$$\dot{f}_2 = -e^{\lambda t} f_1 f_2. \quad (4.8)$$

Recalling that

$$\dot{f}_j \equiv \frac{df_j}{dt}, \quad (4.9)$$

we obtain by separation of variables

$$\frac{df_1}{f_1^2} = -C' e^{\lambda t} dt \quad (4.10)$$

and after integration over df_1 and dt , respectively,

$$-\frac{1}{f_1} + \frac{1}{f_1(0)} = -C' \frac{1}{\lambda} (e^{\lambda t} - 1). \quad (4.11)$$

Solving (4.11) for f_1 yields

$$f_1(t) = \frac{1}{C'/\lambda(e^{\lambda t} - 1) + 1/f_1(0)}, \quad (4.12)$$

so that in particular

$$t = 0: x_1 = x_1(0) \quad (4.13)$$

and

$$t = \infty: x_1 = \frac{\lambda}{C'}. \quad (4.14)$$

We turn to the calculation of f_2 . In close analogy to the previous steps we obtain

$$\frac{\dot{f}_2}{f_2} = -e^{\lambda t} f_1 \quad (4.15)$$

and

$$\ln f_2 - \ln f_2(0) = - \int_0^t e^{\lambda t'} \frac{1}{C'/\lambda(e^{\lambda t'} - 1) + 1/f_1(0)} dt' \quad (4.16)$$

The integral is easily evaluated by means of the substitution

$$e^{\lambda t} = y. \quad (4.17)$$

The final result reads

$$f_2(t) = f_2(0) (e^{\lambda t} - 1 + \lambda/(C' f_1(0)))^{-1/C'} (C' f_1(0)/\lambda)^{-1/C'}. \quad (4.18)$$

In particular it follows

$$t = 0: x_2 = x_2(0), \quad (4.19)$$

and, most importantly,

$$t \rightarrow \infty: x_2(t) \rightarrow 0. \quad (4.20)$$

All in all we may state that for $t \rightarrow \infty$ the fixed point

$$(x_1, x_2) = \left(\frac{\lambda}{C'}, 0 \right) \quad (4.21)$$

is reached, which means that the pattern 1 is recognized.

Section 9.5, Exercise 5

Our starting point is (*) and (**). In complete analogy to our procedure in Exercise 4 we obtain

$$\frac{df_1}{2f_1^2} = -tC'e^{\lambda t}, \quad (5.1)$$

$$-\frac{1}{f_1} + \frac{1}{f_1(0)} = -C' \left(-\frac{1}{\lambda^2}(e^{\lambda t} - 1) + \frac{1}{\lambda}te^{\lambda t} \right) \quad (5.2)$$

and

$$f_1 = \left(C' \left(-\frac{1}{\lambda^2}(e^{\lambda t} - 1) + \frac{t}{\lambda}e^{\lambda t} \right) + 1/f_1(0) \right)^{-1}. \quad (5.3)$$

For $t = 0$ we obtain

$$t = 0: x_1 = f_1(0) \equiv x_1(0). \quad (5.4)$$

By contrast to Exercise 4 the asymptotic behavior is somewhat different. The proper limit is now for $\lambda t \gg 1$

$$x_1 \approx \frac{\lambda}{C't} \quad (5.5)$$

and because of the limit $t = 1$

$$x_1 \approx \lambda/C'. \quad (5.6)$$

We now turn to x_2 and thus f_2 . The procedure is now familiar and we obtain

$$\frac{\dot{f}_2}{f_2} = -e^{\lambda_1 t} t f_1 \quad (5.7)$$

and

$$\ln(f_2/f_2(0)) = - \int_0^t e^{\lambda t'} \frac{t'}{C'/\lambda(e^{\lambda t'} - 1) + 1/f(0)} dt'. \quad (5.8)$$

The evaluation of the integral is somewhat tedious so for the moment we study the asymptotic behavior for $\lambda t \gg 1$. The integral on the r.h.s. of (5.8) then reads

$$\frac{\lambda}{C'} \int_0^t t' dt' = \frac{\lambda}{2C'} t^2, \quad (5.9)$$

so

$$f_2 = f_2(0) e^{-\lambda/(2C')t^2} \quad (5.10)$$

and

$$x_2(t) = x_2(0) e^{\lambda t - \lambda/(2C')t^2}. \quad (5.11)$$

For $t = 1$ (and $\lambda t \gg 1$) we find

$$x_2 = x_2(0)e^{\lambda(1-1/(2C'))} \quad (5.12)$$

and thus

$$x_2 \rightarrow 0 \text{ for } \lambda \gg 1 \quad (5.13)$$

provided that also

$$(1 - 1/(2C')) < 0. \quad (5.14)$$

Section 9.5, Exercise 6

In this exercise we establish a direct relation between x_1 and x_2 which allows us to determine the asymptotic behavior of x_2 quite generally and provides us even with an explicit expression for $x_2(t)$ once $x_1(t)$ is known.

We start from

$$\dot{x}_1 = x_1(\lambda - tC'x_1) \quad (6.1)$$

and

$$\dot{x}_2 = x_2(\lambda - tx_1). \quad (6.2)$$

Using

$$x_j(t) = e^{\lambda t} f_j(t), \quad (6.3)$$

we obtain (as in the previous exercises)

$$\dot{f}_1 = -tC'e^{\lambda t} f_1^2 \quad (6.4)$$

and

$$\dot{f}_2 = -t e^{\lambda t} f_1 f_2. \quad (6.5)$$

Using

$$\frac{df}{dt} \approx \frac{\Delta f}{\Delta t} \quad (6.6)$$

and assuming Δf and Δt as finite but small, we may eliminate Δt from (6.4) and (6.5) and obtain

$$\frac{df_1}{df_2} = C' \frac{f_1}{f_2} \quad (6.7)$$

or after separation of variables

$$\frac{df_1}{f_1} = C' \frac{df_2}{f_2}. \quad (6.8)$$

The solution is

$$\ln(f_2(t)/f_2(0)) = \frac{1}{C'} \ln(f_1(t)/f_1(0)) \quad (6.9)$$

and thus our final result reads

$$f_2(t) = f_2(0) (f_1(t)/f_1(0))^{1/C'}. \quad (6.10)$$

If $x_1(t)$ is bounded from above, i.e.

$$x_1(t) < B, \quad (6.11)$$

we find

$$x_2(t) < x_2(0) B^{1/C'} e^{\lambda t(1-1/C')} x_1(0)^{-1/C'} \quad (6.12)$$

and thus

$$x_2(t) \rightarrow 0 \text{ for } \lambda t \gg 1. \quad (6.13)$$

Using the solutions f_1 of Exercises 4 and 5 we now have the explicit expressions for $x_2(t)$ in both cases. In particular we can thus show that in the limit $\lambda t \gg 1$ both models possess the same fixed point. All the results of Exercises 4–6 can be generalized to many $x_j, j = 1, \dots, M$, in a straightforward way by keeping $j = 1$, but replacing x_2 by $x_k, k = 2, \dots, M$. In other words the fixed point is retained in the whole x_1, \dots, x_M space.

Section 9.6, Exercise

On the l.h.s. of (9.113) we insert (9.112)

$$(\hat{\mathbf{v}}^{k+\tilde{\mathbf{q}}}) = \left(\hat{\mathbf{v}}^{k+\mathbf{q}} - \hat{\mathbf{v}}^{k+} \sum_{K'=K+1}^N \hat{\mathbf{v}}^{k'} (\hat{\mathbf{v}}^{k'+} \mathbf{q}) \right), \quad (1.1)$$

which because of $(\hat{\mathbf{v}}^{k+\hat{\mathbf{v}}^{k'}}) = \delta_{kk'}$ reduces to the r.h.s. of (9.113).

Section 10.1, Exercise

We insert A_m in (*):

$$\sum_{m=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{m+1} a^m \frac{1}{(\gamma\Delta)^{m-1}}. \quad (1.1)$$

Changing $m \rightarrow n+1$ yields

$$(1.1) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+2} a^{n+1} \frac{1}{(\gamma\Delta)^n} \quad (1.2)$$

and thus

$$(1.1) = a \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n (a/(\gamma\Delta))^n. \quad (1.3)$$

We identify

$$x = (-1)(a/(\gamma\Delta))$$

and obtain

$$(*) = a \frac{\gamma\Delta}{\gamma\Delta + a}$$

Section 10.2, Exercise 1

We make use of the properties of the Heaviside function

$$\phi \bmod 2\pi = \phi - 2\pi \sum_{n \geq 1} H(\phi - 2\pi n) \quad (1.1)$$

and similarly

$$\begin{aligned} & (\phi + \xi) \bmod 2\pi - \phi \bmod 2\pi \\ &= \phi + \xi - \phi - 2\pi \sum_{n \geq 1} \{H(\phi + \xi - 2\pi n) - H(\phi - 2\pi n)\}. \end{aligned} \quad (1.2)$$

Under the assumption that ξ is a small quantity we may write the curly brackets in the form

$$\{\dots\} = \frac{dH}{d\phi} \xi. \quad (1.3)$$

According to (1.1) the Heaviside function has its jumps at

$$\phi(t_n) = 2\pi n. \quad (1.4)$$

Instead of ϕ we may introduce the variable t , which allows us to write

$$\frac{dH(\phi - 2\pi n)}{d\phi} = \frac{dH(t - t_n)}{dt} \frac{dt}{d\phi}. \quad (1.5)$$

Making use of

$$\frac{dt}{d\phi} = \frac{1}{d\phi/dt} = \dot{\phi}(t_n)^{-1}, \quad (1.6)$$

we obtain the final result for (1.2), namely

$$(1.2) = \xi(t) - 2\pi \dot{\phi}(t_n)^{-1} \sum_{n \geq 1} \delta(t - t_n) \xi(t_n). \quad (1.7)$$

Assuming stationarity we may replace $\dot{\phi}(t_n)$ by $\dot{\phi}(t_0)$.

Section 10.2, Exercise 2

We evaluate

$$\varepsilon_k(t) = \int_0^t K(t, \sigma) \{f(\phi(\sigma') + \xi_k(\sigma')) - f(\phi(\sigma'))\} d\sigma, \quad (2.1)$$

where we use the abbreviation

$$\sigma' = \sigma - \tau \quad (2.2)$$

with an infinitesimally small τ . The evaluation of

$$f(\phi(\sigma) + \xi_k(\sigma)) - f(\phi(\sigma)) \quad (2.3)$$

is somewhat tricky because f contains δ -functions according to its general definition, namely

$$(2.3) = \left(\dot{\phi}(\sigma) + \dot{\xi}_k(\sigma) \right) \underbrace{\delta(\phi(\sigma) + \xi_k(\sigma) - 2\pi n)}_I - \dot{\phi}(\sigma) \underbrace{\delta(\phi(\sigma) - 2\pi n)}_{II}. \quad (2.4)$$

We assume as everywhere in this book

$$\phi(t_n) = 2\pi n, \quad n \text{ integer}, \quad (2.5)$$

and assume for illustration

$$\xi_k(\sigma) > 0. \quad (2.6)$$

When ϕ reaches $2\pi n$ at time t_n , $\phi + \xi$ must reach this value $2\pi n$ at an earlier time, which we denote by t_n^- :

$$\phi(t_n^-) + \xi_k(t_n^-) = 2\pi n. \quad (2.7)$$

We subtract (2.7) from (2.5), which yields

$$\phi(t_n) - \phi(t_n^-) = \xi_k(t_n), \quad (2.8)$$

where neglecting higher-order terms, we made the replacement

$$\xi(t_n^-) = \xi(t_n). \quad (2.9)$$

The l.h.s. of (2.8) can be approximately evaluated as

$$\dot{\phi}(t_n)(t_n - t_n^-). \quad (2.10)$$

Inserting (2.10) into (2.8), we obtain

$$(t_n - t_n^-) = \xi(t_n) / \dot{\phi}(t_n). \quad (2.11)$$

We now have to establish a relationship between the time variable t and the phase variable ϕ . Because of

$$\begin{aligned}\phi(\sigma) &= t', \\ \dot{\phi}d\sigma &= dt', \\ \phi(t_n) &= 2\pi n\end{aligned}\tag{2.12}$$

(zero of δ -function)

we immediately verify that

$$\dot{\phi}(\sigma)\delta(\phi(\sigma) - 2\pi n)d\sigma\tag{2.13}$$

can be replaced by

$$\delta(t' - t_n)dt'\tag{2.14}$$

with a corresponding change of integration variables. In order to transform

$$(\phi + \xi)\delta(\phi + \xi - 2\pi n)d\sigma\tag{2.15}$$

in a similar fashion we put

$$\begin{aligned}\phi + \xi &= t', \\ (\dot{\phi} + \dot{\xi})d\sigma &= dt',\end{aligned}\tag{2.16}$$

which transforms (2.15) into

$$\delta(t' - t'_n)dt,\tag{2.17}$$

where the time $t' = t'_n$ is defined via

$$t' = t'_n = t_n^-\tag{2.18}$$

Using the transformations from (2.13) to (2.14) and from (2.15) to (2.17) we finally find

$$f(\phi(\sigma) + \xi_k(\sigma)) - f(\phi(\sigma)) = \delta(t' - t'_n) - \delta(t' - t_n).\tag{2.19}$$

To complete our analysis we write

$$t_n^- = t_n - s, \quad s > 0,\tag{2.20}$$

where s is a small quantity going to zero. This allows us to write (2.19) as a derivative of the δ -function in the form

$$\delta(t' - t_n + s) - \delta(t' - t_n) = \frac{d}{dt'}\delta(t' - t_n)s.\tag{2.21}$$

In order to use all these results to evaluate (2.21) we must make the final substitutions

$$t' \rightarrow \sigma, \quad s = \xi(t_n)/\dot{\phi}(t_n).\tag{2.22}$$

All in all we have obtained the important intermediate

$$\varepsilon_k = \int_0^t K(t, \sigma) \sum_n \frac{d}{d\sigma} \delta(\sigma - t_n - \tau) d\sigma \xi_k(t_n) \dot{\phi}(t_n)^{-1},\tag{2.23}$$

where because of the stationarity we may assume

$$\dot{\phi}(t_n) = \dot{\phi}(t_0).\tag{2.24}$$

The further evaluation of ε_k and the derivation of the linear stability equations will be performed in the solution to Exercise 3.

Section 10.2, Exercise 3

In order to evaluate ε_k (2.23), Exercise 2 in Sect. 10.2, we consider

$$\int_0^t K(t, \sigma) \frac{d}{d\sigma} \delta(\sigma - t_n - \tau) d\sigma, \quad (3.1)$$

which we evaluate by means of partial integration according to

$$\int_0^t uv' d\sigma = uv \Big|_0^t - \int_0^t u'v d\sigma. \quad (3.2)$$

By identifying

$$K(t, \sigma) = u, \quad \delta(\sigma - t_n - \tau) = v, \quad (3.3)$$

we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} (3.1) &= K(t, t)\delta(t - t_n - \tau) - K(t, 0)\delta(0 - t_n - \tau) \\ &\quad - \int_0^t \frac{d}{d\sigma} K(t, \sigma) \cdot \delta(\sigma - t_n - \tau) d\sigma \end{aligned} \quad (3.4)$$

which can be further simplified because of,

$$K(t, t) = 1, \quad (3.5)$$

$$\frac{d}{d\sigma} K(t, \sigma) = \gamma K(t, \sigma) \quad (3.6)$$

and

$$\delta(0 - t_n - \tau) = 0 \text{ because } t_n + \tau \neq 0, \quad (3.7)$$

so we obtain

$$(3.1) = \delta(t - t_n - \tau) - \gamma K(t, t_n + \tau). \quad (3.8)$$

Thus, (2.23) reduces to

$$\varepsilon_k = \sum_n (\delta(t - t_n - \tau) - \gamma K(t, t_n + \tau)) \xi_k(t_n) \dot{\phi}(t_0)^{-1}. \quad (3.9)$$

We are now in a position to treat (10.44) in more detail, which because of (1.7) and (10.50) we cast into the form

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\xi}_j(t) + \gamma' \xi_j &= \underbrace{\gamma' 2\pi \dot{\phi}(t_0)^{-1}}_{\hat{\gamma}} \sum_{n \geq 1} \delta(t - t_n) \xi_j(t_n) \\ &\quad + \sum_k \tilde{\lambda}_{jk} \varepsilon_k + \sum_{kl} \tilde{\lambda}_{jkl} (X_k \varepsilon_l + X_l \varepsilon_k). \end{aligned} \quad (3.10)$$

We insert (3.9) as well as

$$X_k = X = e^{-\gamma(t \bmod \Delta)} W \quad (3.11)$$

into (3.10) and integrate this differential equation by means of its Green's function. We then obtain

$$\xi_j(t) = I + II + III, \quad (3.12)$$

where the individual parts on the r.h.s. are defined as follows

$$I = \int_0^t e^{-\gamma'(t-\sigma)} \hat{\gamma} \sum_{n \geq 1} \delta(\sigma - t_n) d\sigma \xi_j(t_n), \quad (3.13)$$

$$\begin{aligned} II &= \sum_k \tilde{\lambda}_{jk} \int_0^t e^{-\gamma'(t-\sigma)} \sum_n (\delta(\sigma - t_n - \tau) - \gamma K(\sigma, t_n + \tau)) \\ &\quad \cdot \xi_k(t_n) \dot{\phi}(t_0)^{-1} \end{aligned} \quad (3.14)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} III &= \int_0^t e^{-\gamma'(t-\sigma)} 2 \sum_{kl} \tilde{\lambda}_{jkl} e^{-\gamma(\sigma \bmod \Delta)} W \\ &\quad \cdot \sum_n (\delta(\sigma - t_n - \tau) - \gamma K(\sigma, t_n + \tau)) d\sigma \xi_k(t_n) \dot{\phi}(t)^{-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.15)$$

I (3.13) can be immediately evaluated to yield

$$I = \hat{\gamma} e^{-\gamma' t} \sum_{n \geq 1} e^{\gamma' t_n} \xi_j(t_n), \quad (3.16)$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} t_n^{\leq} t, \\ t_{\max} = [t]_{\Delta} = N. \end{aligned} \quad (3.17)$$

To evaluate II (3.14) we consider

$$\int_0^{t_N} e^{-\gamma'(t_N-s)} \left(\delta(s - t_n - \tau) - \int_0^s \gamma e^{-\gamma(s-\sigma)} \delta(\sigma - t_n - \tau) \right) d\sigma, \quad (3.18)$$

which we split into

$$\equiv z_1 + z_2, \quad (3.19)$$

where

$$z_1 = \int_0^{t_N} e^{-\gamma'(t_N-s)} \delta(s - t_n - \tau) ds = e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n - \tau)} \quad (3.20)$$

and

$$z_2 = -\gamma \int_0^{t_N} e^{-\gamma'(t_N-s)} ds \int_0^s e^{-\gamma(s-\sigma)} \cdot \delta(\sigma - \tau - t_n) d\sigma. \quad (3.21)$$

The evaluation of (3.21) is straightforward and yields

$$z_2 = -\frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(e^{-\gamma(t_N-t_n)} - e^{-\gamma'(t_N-t_n)} \right), \quad (3.22)$$

so altogether we obtain

$$z_1 + z_2 = \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(\gamma' e^{-\gamma'(t_N-t_n)} - \gamma e^{-\gamma(t_N-t_n)} \right). \quad (3.23)$$

Thus, we obtain our intermediate result

$$II = -\dot{\phi}(t_0)^{-1} \sum_k \tilde{\lambda}_{jk} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \xi_k(t_n) \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \cdot \left(\gamma e^{-\gamma(t-t_n)} - \gamma' e^{-\gamma'(t-t_n)} \right). \quad (3.24)$$

We evaluate *III* and consider more generally for $L \geq 1$:

$$\int_0^{t_N} e^{-\gamma'(t_N-s)} ds X(s)^L \left(\underset{(a)}{\delta(s - t_n - \tau)} - \int_0^s \underset{(b)}{\gamma e^{-\gamma(s-\sigma)} \delta(\sigma - \tau - t_n)} d\sigma \right). \quad (3.25)$$

Because of the δ -function and the explicit form of X (3.11) we readily obtain

$$(a) \rightarrow e^{-\gamma'(t_N-t_n)} X(t_n)^L, \quad (3.26)$$

with

$$X(t_n) = 1 \cdot \frac{1}{1 - e^{-\gamma\Delta}}. \quad (3.27)$$

We evaluate the second part of (3.25), i.e. (b) in several steps. Starting from

$$(b) = -\gamma \int_0^{t_N} e^{-\gamma'(t_N-s)} X(s)^L ds \int_0^s e^{-\gamma(s-\sigma)} \delta(\sigma - \tau - t_n) d\sigma, \quad (3.28)$$

we exchange the sequence of integrations which because of the δ -function yields

$$(b) = -\gamma e^{-\gamma' t_N} e^{\gamma(t_n+\tau)} f(t_n), \quad (3.29)$$

where we used the abbreviation

$$f(t_n) = \int_{t_n}^{t_N} e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)s} X(s)^L ds \quad (3.30)$$

and X is defined by (3.11). As a special case we obtain for $L = 0$

$$f(t_n) = \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma} \left(e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)t_N} - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)t_n} \right). \quad (3.31)$$

We treat the general case. We have to consider

$$f(t_n) = \int_{t_n}^{t_N} e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)s} e^{-\gamma L(s \bmod \Delta)} ds W^L, \quad (3.32)$$

where the limits of integration are still more explicitly given by

$$\int_{n\Delta}^{N\Delta} \dots \quad (3.33)$$

In order to calculate $s \bmod \Delta$ in (3.32) appropriately we split the total integral over a sum of Δ size intervals according to

$$= \sum_{m=n}^{N-1} \int_{m\Delta}^{(m+1)\Delta} e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)s} e^{-L\gamma(s \bmod \Delta)} ds W^L. \quad (3.34)$$

Making the substitution

$$s \rightarrow s + m\Delta, \quad (3.35)$$

we obtain

$$= \sum_{m=n}^{N-1} e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)m\Delta} \int_0^{\Delta} e^{(\gamma' - (L+1)\gamma)s} ds W^L. \quad (3.36)$$

The evaluation of the integral is straightforward and yields

$$= \sum_{m=n}^{N-1} e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)m\Delta} \left\{ \frac{1}{\gamma' - (L+1)\gamma} \left(e^{(\gamma' - (L+1)\gamma)\Delta} - 1 \right) \right\} W^L. \quad (3.37)$$

The substitution

$$m \rightarrow m + n \quad (3.38)$$

transforms (3.37) into

$$= \sum_{m=0}^{N-1-n} e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)m\Delta} \cdot e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)n\Delta} \cdot \{ \} W^L. \quad (3.39)$$

The summation can immediately be performed to yield

$$= \frac{1 - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)(N-n)\Delta}}{1 - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta}} e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)n\Delta} \{ \} W^L, \quad (3.40)$$

where the curly brackets in (3.39) and (3.40) are identical to that of (3.37). Choosing the explicit form of that curly bracket, we obtain

$$f = \frac{e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)n\Delta} - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)N\Delta}}{1 - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta}} \frac{1}{\gamma' - (L+1)\gamma} \left(e^{(\gamma' - (L+1)\gamma)\Delta} - 1 \right) W^L. \quad (3.41)$$

Inserting this intermediate result into (b) (3.29), we obtain

$$= -\gamma \frac{e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n)} - e^{-\gamma(t_N - t_n)}}{\gamma' - (L+1)\gamma} \cdot \frac{e^{(\gamma' - (L+1)\gamma)\Delta} - 1}{1 - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta}} W^L. \quad (3.42)$$

Thus, we are able to cast (3.25) into its final form by adding (a) (3.26) and (b) (3.42) to yield

$$a + b = \left\{ e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n)} \left(1 + \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - (L+1)\gamma} \frac{e^{(\gamma' - (L+1)\gamma)\Delta} - 1}{e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta} - 1} \right) - e^{-\gamma(t_N - t_n)} \frac{\gamma}{\gamma' - (L+1)\gamma} \frac{e^{(\gamma' - (L+1)\gamma)\Delta} - 1}{e^{(\gamma' - \gamma)\Delta} - 1} \right\} W^L. \quad (3.43)$$

This intermediate result can be used to write III (3.15) in its final form (10.58), where we just have to specialize (3.43) to the case $L = 1$.

Section 10.5, Exercise

We evaluate

$$\frac{d^{\alpha(L+1)}}{d(-\gamma_1)^\alpha \dots d(-\gamma_L)^\alpha d(-\gamma_0)^\alpha} \left(\int_0^{t_N} e^{-\gamma'(t_N - s)} ds e^{-(\gamma_1 + \gamma_2 + \dots + \gamma_L)(s \bmod \Delta)} \left(\delta(s - t_n - \tau) - \int_0^s \gamma_0 e^{-\gamma_0(s - \sigma)} \delta(\sigma - t_n - \tau) d\sigma \right) \right) W_{\gamma_1} \dots W_{\gamma_L} \quad (1.1)$$

$\gamma_0 = \gamma.$

In analogy to our procedure of Exercise 3 in Sect. 10.4 the following steps can be made. We first evaluate the integrals. Using the abbreviation (cf. (3.32))

$$f(t_n) = \int_{t_n}^{t_N} e^{(\gamma' - \gamma_0)s} e^{-(\gamma_1 + \dots + \gamma_L)(s \bmod \Delta)} ds, \quad (1.2)$$

we obtain (cf. (3.36))

$$f(t_n) = \sum_{m=n}^{N-1} e^{(\gamma' - \gamma_0)n\Delta} \int_0^{\Delta} e^{(\gamma' - (\gamma_1 + \dots + \gamma_L + \gamma_0)s)} ds \quad (1.3)$$

and (cf. (3.37))

$$f(t_n) = \sum_{m=n}^{N-1} e^{(\gamma' - \gamma_0)m\Delta} \{\dots\}, \quad (1.4)$$

where

$$\{\dots\} = \frac{1}{\gamma' - (\gamma_1 + \dots + \gamma_L + \gamma_0)} \left(e^{(\gamma' - (\gamma_1 + \dots + \gamma_0)\Delta)} - 1 \right). \quad (1.5)$$

Furthermore,

$$\sum_{m=n}^{N-1} e^{(\gamma' - \gamma_0)m\Delta} = \frac{e^{(\gamma' - \gamma_0)n\Delta} - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma_0)N\Delta}}{1 - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma_0)\Delta}}. \quad (1.6)$$

The whole expression (1.1) contains a contribution in the large bracket that stems from the function $\delta(s - t_n - \tau)$ and yields

$$a) = e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n)}, \quad (1.7)$$

whereas the remaining contribution reads

$$b) = -\gamma_0 e^{-\gamma' t_N} e^{\gamma_0(t_n + \tau)} \frac{e^{(\gamma' - \gamma_0)n\Delta} - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma_0)N\Delta}}{1 - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma_0)\Delta}} \cdot \frac{1}{\gamma' - (\gamma_1 + \dots + \gamma_L + \gamma_0)} \left(e^{(\gamma' - (\gamma_1 + \dots + \gamma_0)\Delta)} - 1 \right). \quad (1.8)$$

Thus the entire integral in (1.1) but without the differentiation procedure yields

$$e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n)} - \gamma_0 \frac{e^{-\gamma'(t_N - t_n)} - e^{-\gamma_0(t_N - t_n)}}{1 - e^{(\gamma' - \gamma_0)\Delta}} \cdot \frac{1}{\gamma' - \gamma_0 - \Gamma_L} \left(e^{(\gamma' - \Gamma_L - \gamma_0)\Delta} - 1 \right), \quad (1.9)$$

$$\Gamma_L = \gamma_1 + \gamma_2 + \dots + \gamma_L,$$

from which (10.130) follows.

The further evaluation of (1.1) of this exercise requires the execution of the differentiations. Since lengthy expressions may result, we explicitly treat only special cases. For instance only γ_1 and γ_2 are present.

For any function F (we always assume in this book that they are sufficiently often differentiable) we have

$$\frac{d^{2\alpha}}{d(-\gamma_1)^\alpha d(-\gamma_2)^\alpha} F(\gamma_1 + \gamma_2) = \frac{d^{2\alpha}}{d(-\Gamma)^{2\alpha}} F(\Gamma) \Big|_{\Gamma = \gamma_1 + \gamma_2}. \quad (1.10)$$

In this way, the equation for the pulse interval Δ (10.28) in Sect. 10.1 is generalized to

$$2\pi = \left(A \frac{\alpha!}{\gamma^{\alpha+1}} + B \frac{(2\alpha)!}{(2\gamma)^{2\alpha+1}} \right) e^{-\gamma'\Delta} + \frac{p}{\gamma'} \left(1 - e^{-\gamma'\Delta} \right). \quad (1.11)$$

Similarly, relations occurring in the stability analysis can be evaluated.

Section 12.6, Exercise 1

The Fourier transformation of a function $g(t)$ reads

$$g(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(\omega) e^{i\omega t} d\omega, \quad (1.1)$$

where $f(\omega)$ is the Fourier coefficient. Differentiation of both sides of (1.1) yields

$$\frac{dg(t)}{dt} = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} i\omega f(\omega) e^{i\omega t} d\omega, \quad (1.2)$$

i.e. the Fourier coefficient is multiplied by $i\omega$.

A time shift of $g(t) \rightarrow g(t + t')$ yields

$$g(t + t') = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(\omega) e^{i\omega t'} e^{i\omega t} d\omega, \quad (1.3)$$

i.e. the Fourier coefficient is multiplied by $e^{i\omega t'}$.

Spatial Fourier transformation:

$$\begin{aligned} g(x, y) &= \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(k_x, k_y) e^{ik_x x + ik_y y} dk_x dk_y, \\ &\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} \right) g(x, y) \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} (-k_x^2 - k_y^2) f(k_x, k_y) e^{ik_x x + ik_y y} dk_x dk_y. \end{aligned}$$

References

Preface

- Haken, H., *Synergetics, an introduction*. 3rd ed., Springer, Berlin 1983
Haken, H., *Principles of brain functioning. A synergetic approach to brain activity, behavior and cognition*, Springer, Berlin 1996
Wilson, H.R., *Spikes, decisions and actions. Dynamical foundations of neuroscience*, Oxford University Press 1999

Introduction

Goal

Epileptic Seizures:

- Babloyantz, A., Strange attractors in the dynamics of brain activity. In: *Complex systems – operational approaches*. Haken, H. (ed.), Springer, Berlin 1985
Friedrich, R., Uhl, C.: Synergetic analysis of human electro-encephalograms: Petit-mal epilepsy. In: *Evolution of dynamical structures in complex systems*, R. Friedrich, A. Wunderlin (eds.), Springer, Berlin 1992

Binding Problem:

- Singer, W. (1999): Time as coding space? *Curr. Opin. Neurobiol.* **9**, 189–194
Singer, W. (1999): Neuronal synchrony: a versatile code for the definition of relations? *Neuron* **24**, 49–65
Singer, W., Gray, C.M. (1995): Visual feature integration and the temporal correlation hypothesis. *Ann. Rev. Neurosci.* **18**, 555–586
Gray, C.M. (1999): The temporal correlation hypothesis: still alive and well. *Neuron* **24**, 31–47

Some authors, such as Crick, F. and Koch, C., consider synchronization as a basic mechanism for consciousness; see, for instance:

- Wakefield, J. (2001): A mind for consciousness, *Sci. American* **285**, 26–27

Recent work on Parkinsonian tremor:

- Tass, P., *Phase resetting in medicine and biology – stochastic modelling and data analysis*. Springer, Berlin 1999
Tass, P., Rosenblum, M.G., Weule, J., Kurths, J., Pikovsky, A.S., Volkmann, J., Schnitzler, A., Freund, H.J. (1998): Detection of $n : m$ phase locking from noisy data: Application to magnetoencephalography. *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **81**, 3291–3294

Brain: Structure and Functioning. A Brief Reminder

- Adelman, G., Smith, B.H. (eds.), *Elsevier's encyclopedia of neuro-science*, Elsevier Science, Amsterdam 1999
- Arbib, M.A. (ed.), *The handbook of brain theory and neural networks*. MIT Press, Cambridge 2000
- Bonhoeffer, T., Grinvald, A. (1996): Optical imaging based on intrinsic signals: The methodology. In: Toga, A., Masiotta, J.C. (eds.), *Brain mapping: The methods*. Academic Press, San Diego, CA., 55–97
- Grinvald, A., Lieke, E., Frostig, R.D., Gilbert, C.D., Wiesel, T.N. (1986): Functional architecture of cortex revealed by optical imaging of intrinsic signals. *Nature* **324**, 361–364

Network Models

- Bresloff, P.C., Coombes, S. (1998): *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **81**, 2168, 2384
- Ernst, U., Pawelzik, K., Geisel, T. (1995): Synchronization induced by temporal delays in pulse-coupled oscillators. *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **74**, 1570

Lighthouse model:

- Haken, H. (2000): Phase locking in the lighthouse model of a neural net with several delay times. In: Robnik, M., Aizawa, Y., Hasegawa, H., Kuramoto, Y. (eds.). *Progr. of Theor. Physics, Supplement* **139**, 96–111
- Haken, H., Associative memory of a pulse-coupled noisy neural network with delays: The lighthouse model. *Proceedings of traffic and granular flow*, Springer, Berlin 2000
- Haken, H., *Laser theory. Encyclopedia of physics XXV/2c*, 2nd ed., Springer, Berlin 1984
- Jirsa, V.K., Haken, H. (1996): Field theory of electromagnetic brain activity, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **77**, 960–963; (1996): Derivation of a field equation of brain activity, *Journal of Biol. Physics* **22**, 101–112
- Kelso, J.A.S. (1990): Phase transitions: Foundations of behavior. In: Haken, H., Stadler, M. (eds.), *Synergetics of cognition*, 249–295, Springer, Berlin
- Kelso, J.A.S., *Dynamic patterns: The self-organization of brain and behavior*, MIT Press, Boston 1995
- Kuramoto, Y., *Chemical oscillations, waves, and turbulence*, Springer, Berlin 1984
- Kuramoto, Y., Nishikawa, I. (1987): *J.Stat. Phys.* **49**, 569
- Kuramoto, Y. (1991): *Physica D* **50**, 15
- Mirollo, R.E., Strogatz, S.H. (1990): Synchronization of pulse-coupled biological oscillators. *SIAM J. Appl. Math.* **50**, 1645–1662
- Nunez, P.L. (1974): The brain wave equation: A model for the EEG, *Mathematical Biosciences* **21**, 279–297
- Nunez, P.L., *Electric fields of the brain*, Oxford University Press 1981
- Nunez, P.L., *Neocortical dynamics and human EEG rhythms*, Oxford University Press 1995
- Peskin, C.S. (1975): Mathematical aspects of heart physiology, Courant Institute of Mathematical Sciences, New York University, New York, 268–278

For reviews on synchronization mechanisms in the brain cf.:

Strogatz, S.M. (2000): From Kuramoto to Crawford: exploring the onset of synchronization in populations of coupled oscillators, *Physica D* **143**

Sturz, A.K., König, P. (2001): Mechanisms for synchronization of neuronal activity, *Biol. Cybern.* **84**, 153

Viterbi, A.J., *Principles of coherent communication*, McGraw Hill, New York 1966

Wilson, H.R. and Cowan, J.D. (1972): Excitatory and inhibitory interactions in localized populations of model neurons, *Biophysical Journal*, **12**, 1–24

Winfree, A.T. (1967): *J. Theor. Biol.* **16**, 15

Winfree, A.T., *The Geometry of biological time*, Springer, Berlin; 2nd ed. to be published 2001

For a general survey on phase synchronization cf. the papers in the volumes 10, Ns. 10 and 11 (2000) in the *Int. J. of Bifurcation and Chaos*, on phase synchronization and its applications. Guest editor: Jürgen Kurths

In the context of our book, the contribution by Freeman is of particular interest:

Freeman, W.J. (2000): Characteristics of the synchronization of brain activity imposed by finite conduction velocities of axons, *Int. J. Bifurcation and Chaos* **10**, 2307–2322

The Neuron – Building Block of the Brain

Structure and Basic Functions

Bullock, T.H., Orkland, R., Grinnell, A., *Introduction to nervous systems*, Freeman, W.H. and Co., San Francisco 1977

Dowling, J.E., *Neurons and networks. An introduction to neuroscience*. Harvard University Press, Cambridge 1992

Kandel, E.R., Schwartz, J.H., Jessel, T.M., *Principles of neural sciences*. 4th ed., McGraw Hill, N.Y. 2000

For the more recent method of optical imaging cf.:

Malonek, D., Grinvald, A. (1996): Interactions between electrical activity and cortical microcirculation revealed by imaging spectroscopy: implications for functional brain mapping, *Science* **272**, 551–554

Synapses – The Local Contacts

For a recent detailed study cf.

Llinas, R.R., *The squid giant synapse. A model for chemical transmission*, University Press, Oxford 1999

Naka–Rushton Relation

Albrecht, D.G., Hamilton, D.B. (1982): Striate cortex of monkey and cat: contrast response function. *J. Neurophys.* **48**, 217–237

Naka, K.I., Rushton, W.A. (1966): S-potentials from colour units in the retina of fish. *J. Physiol.* **185**, 584–599

Learning and Memory

Hebb, D.O., *The organization of behavior*, Wiley, New York 1949

Neuronal Cooperativity

Abeles, M., *Local cortical circuits. An electrophysiological study*. Springer, Berlin 1982

Hubel, D.H., Wiesel, T.N. (1962): Receptive fields, binocular interaction and functional architecture in the cat's visual cortex. *J. Physiol. (London)* **160**, 106–154

Hubel, D.H., Wiesel, T.N. (1977): Functional architecture of macaque monkey visual cortex. *Proc. R. Soc. Lond. B.* **198**, 1–59

Hubel, D.H. (1982): Cortical neurobiology: a slanted historical perspective. *Ann. Rev. Neurosci.* **5**, 363–370

Hubel, D.H., *Eye, brain and vision*, Freeman, W.J., New York 1995

Interlude: A Minicourse on Correlations

Komatsu, Y., Nakajima, S., Toyama, K., Fetz, E. (1988): Intracortical connectivity revealed by spike-triggered averaging in slice preparations of cat visual cortex. *Brain Res.* **442**, 359–362

Krüger, J. (ed.), *Neuronal cooperativity*, Springer, Berlin 1991

Toyama, K. (1991): The structure-function problem in visual cortical circuitry studied by cross-correlation techniques and multi-channel recording, 5–29, in: Krüger, J., l.c.

Mesoscopic Neuronal Cooperativity

Eckhorn, R., Bauer, R., Jordan, W., Brosch, M., Kruse W., Munk, M., Reitboeck, H.J. (1988): Coherent oscillations: a mechanism of feature linking in the visual cortex? Multiple electrode and correlation analyses in the cat. *Biol. Cybern.* **60**, 121–130

Eckhorn, R., Reitboeck, H.J., Arndt, M., Dicke, P. (1990): Feature linking among distributed assemblies: Simulations and results from cat visual cortex. *Neural Computation* **2**, 293–306

Eckhorn, R. (1991): Stimulus-specific synchronization in the visual cortex: linking of local features into global figures? 184–224, in: Krüger, J., see below

Eckhorn, R., Principles of global visual processing of local features can be investigated with parallel single-cell and group-recordings from the visual cortex. In: *Information processing in the cortex, experiments and theory*, Aertsen, A., Braitenberg, V. (eds.), Springer, Berlin 1992

Eckhorn, R., Obermueller, A. (1993): Single neurons are differently involved in stimulus-specific oscillations in cat visual cortex. *Experim. Brain Res.* **95**, 177–182

Eckhorn, R. (1994): Oscillatory and non-oscillatory synchronizations in the visual cortex and their possible roles in associations of visual features. *Prog. Brain Res.* **102**, 404–426

Eckhorn, R., Cortical processing by fast synchronization: high frequency rhythmic and non-rhythmic signals in the visual cortex point to general principles of spatiotemporal coding. In: *Time and Brain*, Miller, R. (ed.), Gordon and Breach, Lausanne, Switzerland 2000

- Engel, A.K., König, P., Singer, W. (1991): Direct physiological evidence for scene segmentation by temporal coding. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* **88**, 9136–9140
- Engel, A.K., König, P., Schillen, T.B. (1992): Why does the cortex oscillate? *Curr. Biol.* **2**, 332–334
- Freeman, W.J. (1979a): EEG analysis gives model of neuronal template-matching mechanism for sensory search with olfactory bulb. *Biol. Cybern.* **35**, 221–234
- Freeman, W.J. (1979b): Nonlinear dynamics of paleocortex manifested in the olfactory EEG. *Biol. Cybern.* **35**, 21–37
- Gray, C.M., Singer, W. (1987): Stimulus-dependent neuronal oscillations in the cat visual cortex area 17. *IBRO Abstr. Neurosci. Lett. Suppl.* **22**, 1301
- Gray, C.M., Singer, W. (1989): Stimulus-specific neuronal oscillations in orientation columns of cat visual cortex. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA* **86**, 1698–1702
- Gray, C.M., König, P., Engel, A.K., Singer, W. (1989): Oscillatory responses in cat visual cortex exhibit inter-columnar synchronization which reflects global stimulus properties. *Nature* **338**, 334–337
- Gray, C.M., Engel, A.K., König, P., Singer, W. (1990): Stimulus-dependent neuronal oscillations in cat visual cortex: receptive field properties and feature dependence. *Eur. J. Neurosci.* **2**, 607–619
- Gray, C.M., Maldonado, P.E., Wilson, M., McNaughton, B. (1995): Tetrodes markedly improve the reliability and yield of multiple single-unit isolation from multi-unit recordings in cat striate cortex. *J. Neurosci. Methods* **63**, 43–54
- Jürgens, E., Eckhorn, R. (1997): Parallel processing by a homogeneous group of coupled model neurons can enhance, reduce and generate signal correlations. *Biol. Cybern.* **76**, 217–227
- König, P., Schillen, T.B. (1991): Stimulus-dependent assembly formation of oscillatory responses. I. Synchronization. *Neural Comput.* **3**, 155–166
- Krüger, J. (ed.), *Neuronal cooperativity*, Springer, Berlin 1991
- Legatt, A.D., Arezzo, J., Vaughan, Jr., H.G. (1980): Averaged multiple unit activity as an estimate of phasic changes in local neuronal activity. *J. Neurosci. Methods* **2**, 203–217
- Mitzdorf, U. (1987): Properties of the evoked potential generators: current source density analysis of visually evoked potentials in the cat cortex. *Int. J. Neurosci.* **33**, 33–59
- Singer, W. (1991): The formation of cooperative cell assemblies in the visual cortex, 165–183, in: Krüger, J., l.c.

Spikes, Phases, Noise: How to Describe Them Mathematically? We Learn a Few Tricks and Some Important Concepts

Kicks – Random Kicks or a Look at Soccer Games

For this kind of approach cf.

- Haken, H. (1983): *Synergetics, an introduction*, 3rd. ed., Springer, Berlin
- Schottky, W. (1918): *Ann. Phys. (Leipzig)* **57**, 541 (studied this kind of “shot noise”.)

Noise Is Inevitable. Brownian Motion and Langevin Equation

- Einstein, A. (1905): *Ann. Physik (Leipzig)* **17**, 549
Gardiner, C.W., *Handbook of stochastic methods for physics, chemistry and the natural sciences*, 4th print, Springer, Berlin 1997
Haken, H. (1983): l.c. (sect. 4.4)
Langevin, P. (1908): *Comptes rendue* **146**, 530

Noise in Active Systems

For a comprehensive survey see

- Haken, H., *Laser theory*, Springer, Berlin 1970

The Concept of Phase

How To Determine Phases From Experimental Data?

Hilbert-Transform

Using the Hilbert-transform, the “analytic signal” (4.152), (4.153) was constructed by

- Gabor, D. (1946): *Theory of communication*, J.IEE London **93** (3), 429–457

Phase Noise

Origin of Phase Noise

see e.g.

- Haken, H., *Laser theory*, Springer, Berlin 1970

The Lighthouse Model. Two Coupled Neurons

- Haken, H. (1999): What can synergetics contribute to the understanding of brain functioning?. In: Uhl, C. (ed.) (1999): *Analysis of neuro-physiological brain functioning*, 7–40, Springer, Berlin
Haken, H. (2000): Quasi-discrete dynamics of a neural net: the lighthouse model. *Discrete Dynamics in Nature and Society* **4**, 187–200
Haken, H. (2000): In: Broomhead, D.S., Luchinskaya, E.A., McClintock, P.V.E., Mullin, T. (eds.), *Stochaos, stochastic and chaotic dynamics in the lakes*. American Institute of Physics, Woodbury, N.Y.

The Lighthouse Model. Many Coupled Neurons

- Haken, H. (2000): Phase locking in the lighthouse model of a neural net with several delay times, in: Robnik, M., Aizawa, Y., Hasegawa, H., Kuramoto, Y., eds., *Progr. Theor. Physics Supplement* **139**, 96–111
Haken, H. (2000): Effect of delay on phase locking in a pulse coupled neural network, *Eur. Phys. J. B* **18**, 545–550
Haken, H. (2000): Quasi-discrete dynamics of a neural net: the lighthouse model. *Discrete Dynamics in Nature and Society* **4**, 187–200

Integrate and Fire Models (IFM)

The General Equations of IFM

These models have been treated by a number of authors. See also Sect. 7.2 and Chap. 8:

- Kuramoto, Y. (1991): *Physica D* **50**, 15
 Abbott, L.F., van Vreeswijk, C. (1993): *Phys. Rev. E* **48**, 1483
 Treves, A. (1993): *Network* **4**, 256
 Gerstner, W., van Hemmen, J.L. (1993): *Phys. Rev. Lett* **71**, 312
 Gerstner, W. (1995): *Phys. Rev. E* **51**, 738

There are numerous further publications on the theory of spiking neurons by W. Gerstner and L.J. van Hemmen, and we refer the reader to the home pages of these authors.

Peskin's Model

- Peskin, C.S. (1975): *Mathematical aspects of heart physiology*, Courant Institute of Mathematical Sciences, New York University, New York, 268–278
 Mirollo, R.E., Strogatz, S.H. (1990): *Synchronization of pulse-coupled biological oscillators*. *SIAM J. Appl. Math.* **50**, 1645–1662

Many Neurons, General Case, Connection with Integrate and Fire Model

The results of this chapter are based on unpublished work by the present author.

The Phase-Locked State

Stability of the Phase-Locked State: Eigenvalue Equations

For an alternative approach cf.:

- Bressloff, P.C., Coombes, S. (1998): *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **81**, 2168
 Bressloff, P.C., Coombes, S. (1998): *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **81**, 2384

For earlier work in which the firing times are considered as the fundamental dynamical variables, cf.

- Keener, J.P., Hoppenstadt, F.C., Rinzel, J. (1981): *SIAM J. Appl. Math.* **41**, 503
 van Vreeswijk, C. (1996): *Phys. Rev. E* **54**, 5522

Some extensions of integrate and fire models with mean field coupling:

Impact of periodic forcing:

- Coombes, S., Bressloff, P.C. (1999): *Mode locking and Arnold tongues in integrate and fire neural oscillators*, *Phys. Rev. E* **60**, 2086–2096

Impact of dynamic synapses

Bressloff, P.C. (1999): Mean-field theory of globally coupled integrate-and-fire oscillators with dynamic synapses. *Phys. Rev. E* **60**, 2160–2170

Details concerning the dendritic tree

Bressloff, P.C. (1996): New mechanism for neural pattern formation, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **76**, 4644–4647

Bressloff, P.C., Coombes, S. (1997): Physics of the extended neuron. *Int. J. Mod. Phys. B.* **11**, 2343–2392 contains many further references

Pattern Recognition Versus Synchronization: Pattern Recognition

A Reminder of Pattern Recognition by the Synergetic Computer and an Alternative Approach

Haken, H., *Synergetic computers and cognition*, Springer, Berlin 1990

Phase Locking via Sinusoidal Couplings

Coupling Between Two Neurons

Phase oscillator concept of neurons:

Cohen, A.H., Holmes, P.J., Rand, R.H. (1982): The nature of the coupling between segmental oscillators of the lamprey spinal generator for locomotion: a mathematical model. *J. Math. Biology* **13**, 345–369

Kuramoto, Y., *Chemical oscillations, waves and turbulence*, Springer, Berlin 1984

Radio-engineering:

Viterbi, A.J., *Principles of coherent communication*, McGraw Hill, N.Y. 1966

Laser-physics:

Haken, H., *Laser theory*, Springer, Berlin 1970

A Chain of Coupled Phase Oscillators

Cohen, A.H., Ermentrout, G.B., Kiemel, T., Kopell, N., Sigvardt, K.A., and Williams, T.L. (1992): Modelling of intersegmental coordination in the lamprey central pattern generator for locomotion. *TINS* **15**, 434–438

Gray, J., *Animal locomotion*. Weidenfield and Nicolson, London 1968

Grillner, S. (1996): Neural networks for vertebrate locomotion. *Sci. Am.* **274**, 64–69

Grillner, S., Deliagina, T., Ekeberg, Ö., El Manira, A., Hill, R.H. (1995): Neural networks that coordinate locomotion in lamprey. *TINS* **18**, 270–279

Wilson, H.R., *Spikes, decisions and actions*, Oxford University Press 1999

Coupled Finger Movements

- Haken, H. (1983): Synopsis and introduction, in Başar, E., Flohr, H., Haken, H., Mandell, A.J. (eds.): *Synergetics of the brain*, Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, 3–25
- Kelso, J.A.S. (1984): Phase transitions and critical behavior in human bimanual coordination, *American Journal of Physiology: Regulatory, Integrative and Comparative Physiology* **15**, R 1000–R 1004
- Haken, H., Kelso, J.A.S., Bunz, H. (1985): A theoretical model of phase transitions in human movement, *Biol. Cybern.* **53**, 247–257
- Schöner, G., Haken, H., Kelso, J.A.S. (1986): A stochastic theory of phase transitions in human movement, *Biol. Cybern.* **53**, 247–257

Quadruped Motion

- Schöner, G., Yiang, W.Y., Kelso, J.A.S. (1990): A synergetic theory of quadrupedal gaits and gait transitions, *J. Theor. Biol.* **142**, 359–391
- Lorenz, W. (1987): Nichtgleichgewichtsphasenübergänge bei Bewegungskoordination, Diplom Thesis, University of Stuttgart
- Collins, J.J., Stewart, I.N. (1993): Coupled nonlinear oscillators and the symmetries of animal gaits, *J. Nonlinear Sci.* **3**, 349–392
- Hoyt, D.F., Taylor, C.R. (1981): Gait and the energetics of locomotion in horses, *Nature* **292**, 239

Populations of Neural Phase Oscillators

- Tass, P., Haken, H. (1996): Synchronization in networks of limit cycle oscillators. *Z. Phys. B* **100**, 303–320
- Tass, P., Haken, H. (1996): Synchronized oscillations in the visual cortex – a synergetic model. *Biol. Cybern.* **74**, 31–39
- Tass, P. (1997): Phase and frequency shifts in a population of phase oscillators. *Phys. Rev. E* **56**, 2043–2060
- Tass, P., *Phase resetting in medicine and biology – stochastic modelling and data analysis*. Springer, Berlin 1999
- Tass, P. (1996): Resetting biological oscillators – a stochastic approach. *J. Biol. Phys.* **22**, 27–64
- Tass, P. (1996): Phase resetting associated with changes of burst shape. *J. Biol. Phys.* **22**, 125–155
- Tass, P. (2001): Effective desynchronization by means of double-pulse phase resetting. *Europhys. Lett.* **53**, (1), 15–21

Pulse-Averaged Equations

Survey

- Nunez, P.L., *Neocortical dynamics and human EEG rhythms*, Oxford University Press, New York, Oxford (with further contributions by Cuttillo, B.A., Gevins, A.S., Ingber, L., Lopes da Silva, F.H., Pilgreen, K.L., Silberstein, R.B.) 1985

The Wilson-Cowan Equations

- Wilson, H.R., Cowan, J.D. (1972): Excitatory and inhibitory interactions in localized populations of model neurons. *Biophysical Journal* **12**, 1–24
- Wilson, H.R., Cowan, J.D. (1973): A mathematical theory of the functional dynamics of cortical and thalamic nervous tissue. *Kybernetik* **13**, 55–80
- Wilson, H.R., *Spikes, decisions and actions*, Oxford University Press 1999

Cortical Dynamics Described by Wilson-Cowan Equations

- Ermentrout, B. (1998): Neural networks as spatio-temporal pattern-forming systems. *Rep. Prog. Phys.* **61**, 353–430
- Wilson, H.R., Cowan, J.D. (1973): A mathematical theory of the functional dynamics of cortical and thalamic nervous tissue. *Kybernetik* **13**, 55–80

Visual Hallucinations

- Ermentrout, G.B. and Cowan, J.D. (1979): A mathematical theory of visual hallucination patterns. *Biol. Cybernetics* **34**, 137–150
- Tass, P. (1995): Cortical pattern formation during visual hallucinations. *J. Biol. Phys.* **21**, 177–210
- Tass, P. (1997): Oscillatory cortical activity during visual hallucinations. *J. Biol. Phys.* **23**, 21–66

Jirsa-Haken-Nunez Equations

- Jirsa, V.K., Haken, H. (1997): A derivation of a macroscopic field theory of the brain from the quasi-microscopic neural dynamics. *Physica D* **99**, 503–516
- Nunez, P.L. (1974): The brain wave equation: A model for the EEG, *Mathematical Biosciences* **21**, 279–297
- Nunez, P.L., *Electric fields of the brain*, Oxford University Press 1981
- Nunez, P.L., *Neocortical dynamics and human EEG rhythms*, Oxford University Press 1995

An Application to Movement Control

- Jirsa, V.K., Haken, H. (1997): l.c.
- Haken, H., *Principles of brain functioning*, Springer, Berlin 1996
- Kelso, J.A.S., *Dynamic patterns: The self-organization of brain and behavior*, MIT Press, Boston 1995

Experiments:

- Kelso, J.A.S., Bressler, S.L., Buchanan, S., DeGuzman, G.C., Ding, M., Fuchs, A., Holroyd, T. (1991): Cooperative and critical phenomena in the human brain revealed by multiple SQUID's. In: *Measuring chaos in the human brain*, Duke, D., Pritchard, W. (eds.), World Scientific, Singapore
- Kelso, J.A.S., Bressler, S.L., Buchanan, S., DeGuzman, G.C., Ding, M., Fuchs, A., Holroyd, T. (1992): A phase transition in human brain and behavior, *Physics Letters A* **169**, 134–144

Theory:

- Friedrich, R., Fuchs, A., Haken, H. (1992): Spatio-temporal EEG-patterns. In: *Rhythms in biological systems*, Haken, H., Köpchen, H.P. (eds.), Springer, Berlin

Fuchs, A., Kelso, J.A.S., Haken, H. (1992): Phase transitions in the human brain: Spatial mode dynamics, *International Journal of Bifurcation and Chaos* **2**, 917–939

Jirsa, V.K., Friedrich, R., Haken, H., Kelso, J.A.S. (1994): A theoretical model of phase transitions in the human brain, *Biol. Cybern.* **71**, 27–35

Jirsa, V.K., Friedrich, R., Haken, H.: Reconstruction of the spatio-temporal dynamics of a human magnetoencephalogram (unpublished)

The Single Neuron

Hodgkin-Huxley Equations

Hodgkin, A.L., Huxley, A.F. (1952): A quantitative description of membrane current and its application to conduction and excitation in nerve. *J. Physiol.* **117**, 500–544

Rinzel, J. (1985): Excitation dynamics: insights from simplified membrane models. *Fed. Proc.* **44**, 2944–2946

Wilson, H.R., *Spikes, decisions and actions*, Oxford University Press 1999

FitzHugh-Nagumo Equations

FitzHugh, R. (1961): Impulses and physiological states in models of nerve membrane. *Biophys. J.* **1**, 445–466

Nagumo, J.S., Arimoto, S., Yoshizawa, S. (1962): An active pulse transmission line simulating a nerve axon. *Proc. IRE* **50**, 2061–2070

Wilson, H.R., *Spikes, decisions and actions*, Oxford University Press 1999

Some Generalization of the Hodgkin-Huxley Equations

Connor, J.A., Walter, D., and McKown, R. (1977): Neural repetitive firing: modifications of the Hodgkin-Huxley axon suggested by experimental results from crustacean axons. *Biophys. J.* **18**, 81–102

Wilson, H.R. (1999): Simplified dynamics of human and mammalian neocortical neurons, *J. Theor. Biol.* **200**, 375–388

Wilson, H.R., *Spikes, decisions and actions*, Oxford University Press 1999

Dynamical Classes of Neurons

Chay, T.R. and Heizer, J. (1983): Minimal model for membrane oscillations in the pancreatic beta-cell. *Biophys. J.* **42**, 181–189

Connors, B.W. and Gutnick, M.J. (1990): Intrinsic firing patterns of diverse neocortical neurons. *TINS* **13**, 99–104

Gray, C.M. and McCormick, D.A. (1996): Chattering cells: superficial pyramidal neurons contributing to the generation of synchronous oscillations in the visual cortex. *Science* **274**, 109–113

Gutnick, M.J. and Crill, W.E. (1995): The cortical neuron as an electrophysiological unit. In: *The cortical neuron*, ed. Gutnick, M.J. and Moody, I., 33–51, Oxford University Press, New York

Wilson, H.R. (1999): Simplified dynamics of human and mammalian neocortical neurons, *J. Theor. Biol.* **200**, 375–388

Wilson, H.R., *Spikes, decisions and actions*, Oxford University Press 1999

Some Conclusions on Network Models

Wilson, H.R., *Spikes, decisions and actions*, Oxford University Press 1999

Conclusion and Outlook

Study of Parkinsonian tremor:

Tass, P., Rosenblum, M.G., Weule, J., Kurths, J., Pikovsky, A., Volkmann, J., Schnitzler, A., Freund, H.J. (1998): Detection of $n : m$ phase locking from noisy data: Application to magnetoencephalography. *Phys. Rev. Lett* **81**, 3291–3294

Wider perspectives:

Crick, F. (1984): Function of the thalamic reticular complex: The searchlight hypothesis. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **81**, 4586–4590

Freeman, W.J., *Societies of brain*, Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Mahwah, N.Y. 1995

Freeman, W.J., *How brains make up their minds?* Columbia University Press 1999

Haken, H., *Principles of brain functioning*, Springer, Berlin 1996

Pikovsky, A., Rosenblum, M., Kurths, J. (2000): Phase synchronization in regular and chaotic systems, *Int. J. Bifurcation and Chaos* **10**, 2291–2305

Scott, A.C., *Stairway to the mind*, Copernicus-Springer, N.Y. 1995

Index

- action potential 10, 11, 13, 141, 152, 273
- active transient mode 260
- activity centers 23
- all or nothing signal 11
- α -band 25
- area 17 20, 31
- area striata 20
- associative memory 88, 109, 109 ff.
 - weak 113
- autocorrelations 32
- autocorrelogram 29
- average 26
- axon 9, 10, 77
- axon hillock 10
- axon membrane 11
- axonal pulse rates
 - elimination of 263
- axonal pulses 261
 - generation of 273

- binding problem 3
- brain 3
 - functioning 4
 - structure 4
- Bresloff 6
- Brownian motion 54 ff., 58

- camels 247
- capacitance C 273
- capacitor 273
- cats
 - decerebrate 242
- cells
 - complex 21
 - simple 21
- central pattern generator 242
- Chay 281
- chiasma opticum 19
- Cohen 239
- coincidences of spikes 28
- columns 21, 23

- complex plane 64
- complex variable 64
- cones 17
- Connor 280
- Connors 281
- control parameter 246
- Coombes 6
- coordinated movements 244
- corpus geniculatum laterale 19
- correlation 25 ff., 35
- correlation function 127
- correlation function for two times t, t' 53
- correlogram 28
- cortical column 31
- cortical dynamics 258 ff.
 - described by Wilson–Cowan equations 258
- coupled-phase oscillators 242 ff.
 - chain of 242
- coupling coefficient 151
- Cowan 6, 251, 260, 261
- Crill 281
- critical fluctuations 247
- critical slowing down 247
- crosscorrelation function 29, 30

- damping constant 151
- delay 167
- delay between two neurons 98 ff.
- delay times 104, 152
 - many different 123
- δ -function 37
- dendrites 9, 16 ff., 77, 142
- dendritic current $\psi_m(t)$ 103
- dendritic currents 77, 153 ff., 261
 - elimination of 262
 - response of 153
- dendritic damping 103
- dendritic responses 219 ff.
- depolarization 10, 11, 13
- desynchronization 3

- different sensory inputs 107
- Dirac 37
- dissipation–fluctuation theorem 56
- dynamics of dendritic currents 261

- Eckhorn 31, 35
- EEG 16, 24
- eigenvalue equations 156 ff.
- Einstein 56
- electric current across the membrane 273
- electric fields 16
- electroencephalograms 5, 16, 24
- epileptic seizures 3
- Ermentraut 261
- event 25
- excitatory 262
- external signal 104

- field equation 268 ff.
- finger movements
 - coupled 244 ff.
- FitzHugh–Nagumo equations 276 ff.
- fluctuating forces 54, 59, 104, 152
- fluctuations 58
 - relative phase 94
- fMRI 23
- Fourier series 65
- fractal derivatives 177 ff.
- free running 241
- Freeman 31
- frequency locking 62
- frequency of events 26
- frequency pulling 86 ff.
- friction force 83
- Fuchs 266
- functional magnetic resonance imaging 23

- gaits 244
 - transitions 247
- ganglion cell 17, 19
 - on-center 18
- Gaussian bell-shaped curve 37
- Geisel 6
- Gennari stripe 20
- Gestalt 113
 - good 113
- grandmother cells 23
- Gray 31, 281
- Green’s function 50, 142, 143, 153, 155, 264
 - biophysical meaning 153
- Grinvald 24

- Gutnick 281

- Haken 6
- Haken–Kelso–Bunz model 244
- hallucinations 261
- hearing 5
- Heaviside functions
 - sum of 92
- Heaviside (step-) function 40
- Hebb 16
- Hilbert 65
- Hilbert transform 64, 67
- histogram 26
- Hodgkin 273, 274
- Hodgkin–Huxley equations 5, 273 ff.
 - generalizations of 280 ff.
- horses 247
- Hubel 21
- Huxley 273, 274
- hyper-column 21, 23
- hyper-complex 23
- Hysteresis 246

- IFM 141
 - general equations 141
- information 12
- information transmission 10
- inhibitory neurons 262
- instability 149
- integrate and fire models 141 ff., 151 ff., 283
 - basic equations including delay and noise 151
- ion channels 12
- ions 10

- Jirsa 6, 261, 266
- Jirsa–Haken–Nunez equations 261 ff.

- Kandel 16
- Kanisza figure 110
- Karhunen–Loève expansion 266
- Keizer 281
- Kelso 6, 244
- Kelso experiment 265 ff.
- kicks 48
- Kuramoto 5, 239, 249

- lamprey 242
- Langevin equation 54 ff.
- lateral geniculate body 19
- learning 5, 16
- LFP 35

- lighthouse 78
- lighthouse model 103 ff., 283
 - alternative interpretation 100
 - basic equations 103
 - many coupled neurons 103 ff.
 - two coupled neurons 77 ff.
- limit cycle oscillations 242
- local population activities 35
- lock-in states 34
- long relaxation times of synaptic and dendritic responses 145 ff.

- magnetic fields 16
- magnetic resonance imaging 5, 23
- magnetoencephalograms 5, 16, 24
- many ion channels
 - many two-state systems 58
- McCormick 281
- McKown 280
- mean field approximation 249
- MEG 16, 24
- MEG measurements
 - during Parkinson tremor 285
- membrane 12, 17
- membrane channel
 - with an ion as a two-state system 57
- memory 16
- mental activity 23
- Mirollo 6, 143
- motor cortex 4
- motor program 247
- movement control 5, 265 ff.
- movement coordination 247
- movement patterns 244
- moving excitations 21
- MRI 23
- MUA 35

- Naka–Rushton relation 14 ff.
- Nernst equation 274
- nerve fibre 10
- nerve pulse 11, 12
- network models 5 ff.
- neural code 12 ff.
- neural net 4
- neural phase oscillators 249 ff.
 - populations of 249 ff.
- neuro-transmitters 13
- neuronal cooperativity 17 ff.
 - mesoscopic 31
- neurons 3, 9 ff.
 - dynamical classes of 281
 - firing 3
- NMR 23
- noise 37 ff., 54 ff., 56 ff., 167
 - active systems 56 ff.
- nonequilibrium phase transition 265
- Nunez 6, 251, 261
- Nyquist theorem 56

- ocular dominance columns 21
- off-cells 19
- Ohm’s law 273
- on-cells 19
- optical imaging 24
- optical nerve 19
- oscillatory correlations 33

- $P_k(t - \tau)$ 103
- parametric excitation 269
- Parkinsonian tremor 3
- Parkinson’s disease 249
- patch clamp experiments 12
- pattern filter 109 ff.
- pattern recognition 181 ff.
 - basic equations 182 ff.
 - two pathways 234, 235
- pendulum 60
- periodic stimulation 250
- Peskin 6, 143
- Peskin’s model 143 ff.
- PET 23
- phase 5, 37 ff., 60 ff., 63, 79, 104
 - angle 61, 78, 152
 - diffusion 69
 - jump 90
 - locking 62, 63, 227 ff.
 - noise 68 ff., 126 ff.
 - noise, origin of 71 ff.
 - oscillators 5, 247
 - plane 61
 - relaxation 94 ff.
 - relaxation, impact of noise 94 ff.
 - shift 61
 - space 61
 - transitions 244
- phase locking 167 ff., 241
 - partial 167 ff.
 - via sinusoidal couplings 239 ff.
- phase waves in a two-dimensional neural sheet 124
- phase-locked state 125 ff., 134 ff., 155, 156 ff.
 - fully nonlinear treatment 134
 - of N neurons 116 ff.

- of N neurons, two delay times 116 ff.
- stability limits of 125
- stability of 118, 156
- stable 94
- phase-locked state I 161 ff.
 - stability of 161 ff.
- phase-locked state II 162 ff.
 - eigenvalues of the integrate and fire model 162
 - stability of 162
- phases of two coupled neurons 80 ff.
 - basic equations 80 ff.
- plasticity 5
- positron emission spectroscopy 5
- positron emission tomography 23
- postsynaptic potential 10
- postsynaptic side 13
- potential landscape 246
- presynaptic side 13
- primary visual cortex 19, 20
- pulse-averaged equations 251
 - derivation 168
- pulse rate 133
- pulse stimulation 249
- pulse train 77
- pulses, limit of dense 193 ff.
- Purkinje cell 9
- pyramidal cell 9

- quadruped gaits 247
- quadruped movement 247 ff.
- quasi-attractors 200 ff.

- (Rall's) α -function 50
- random kicks 52 ff.
- rate equations 57
- receptive fields 19, 21, 31
- receptors 13
- relative frequency 26
- resting potential 10
- retinas 17, 19
- rhodopsin 17
- rhythmic states 34
- rods 17

- saturation 139, 256, 257
- Schoener 248
- seeing 5
- self-organization 247
- sensory cells 12
- sensory cortex 4
- sensory inputs
 - time-dependent 166
- sensory-motor feedback loop 267 ff.
- sensory signals 86
- several delay times 165
- Shik 242
- Singer 31
- single neuron 77, 273 ff.
- sinusoidal phase-coupling 239
- slow-wave field potentials 35
- soccer ball 48
- sodium–potassium pump 11
- soma 9
- spatially localized oscillatory activity 260
- speech production 5
- spike 10–12, 25, 37 ff., 60, 77
 - rates 15
 - trains 3
- spike trains
 - regular 63 ff.
 - synchronous 28
- spike-triggered averaging 26, 27
- spinal cord 242
- stability 149
 - behaviors 91
 - equations 89
 - neutral (marginal) 94
 - of the fixed points 255
- stationary phase-locked state
 - stability limit of the 118
- statistics 25
- steady synchronized state 283
- step functions
 - perturbed 43 ff.
- stereovision 20
- stochastic force 103
- striate cortex 31
- striped cortex 20
- Strogatz 5, 6, 143
- strong coupling limit 130 ff.
- structural organization 17
- superthreshold depolarization 14
- symmetric index finger movement 245
- synapses 9, 13 ff., 14, 142
 - chemical 13
 - excitatory 14
 - inhibitory 14
- synaptic gap 13
- synaptic strengths 103
- synchronization 3, 32, 207 ff.
 - among groups of neurons 31
- synchronization patterns 249
- synchrony 28, 62
- synergetic computer 185 ff.

- of type II 188 ff.
- tactile sensations 5
- Tass 249, 250, 261, 284, 285
- temporal correlations 25
- the command signal 242
- thermal noise 57
- threshold 15, 104
- time delay τ 98
- tractus opticus 19
- transition rates 57
- travelling waves 242
 - in response to brief local stimulation 260
- triple recording 35
- two neurons 82 ff., 86 ff.
 - mutual activation 86 ff.
 - solution of the phase-locked state 82 ff.
- two-state systems 57
- vesicles 13, 78
- visual cortex 23
- visual hallucinations 260 ff.
- visual pathway 19
- visual system 17
- Walter 280
- wave equation 265
- weak associative memory 113, 113 ff.
- Wiesel 21
- Wilson 6, 242, 251, 259, 276, 280, 281
- Wilson-Cowan equations 252 ff., 261, 263
- Winfree 5